The Antarctic Treaty

Measures adopted at
the Forty-second Consultative Meeting
held at Prague, Czech Republic, 1 – 11 July 2019

Presented to Parliament
by the Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs
by Command of Her Majesty
June 2020

CP 247

This publication is available at www.gov.uk/official-documents

Any enquiries regarding this publication should be sent to us at Treaty Section, Foreign and Commonwealth Office, King Charles Street, London, SW1A 2AH

ISBN 978-1-5286-1977-6

CCS0620708530 06/20

Printed on paper containing 75% recycled fibre content minimum

Printed in the UK by the APS Group on behalf of the Controller of Her Majesty's Stationery Office

MEASURES ADOPTED AT THE FORTY-SECOND ANTARCTIC TREATY CONSULTATIVE MEETING

Prague, Czech Republic 1 – 11 July 2019

The Measures[1] adopted at the Forty-second Antarctic Treaty Consultative Meeting are reproduced below from the Final Report of the Meeting.

In accordance with Article IX, paragraph 4, of the Antarctic Treaty, the Measures adopted at Consultative Meetings become effective upon approval by all Contracting Parties whose representatives were entitled to participate in the meeting at which they were adopted (i.e. all the Consultative Parties). The full text of the Final Report of the Meeting, including the Decisions and Resolutions adopted at that Meeting and colour copies of the maps found in this command paper, is available on the website of the Antarctic Treaty Secretariat at www.ats.aq.

The approval procedures set out in Article 6 (1) of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty[2] apply to Measures 1 to 11 (2019).

The approval procedures set out in Article 8 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty apply to Measure 12 (2019).

---

1 As defined in Decision 1 (1995), published in Miscellaneous No. 28 (1996) Cm 3483
2 Treaty Series No. 15 (2006) Cm 6855

The texts of the Antarctic Treaty together with the texts of the Recommendations of the first three Consultative Meetings (Canberra 1961, Buenos Aires 1962 and Brussels 1964) have been published in Treaty Series No. 97 (1961) Cmnd. 1535 and Miscellaneous No. 23 (1965) Cmnd. 2822. The text of the Environmental Protocol to the Antarctic Treaty has been published in Treaty Series No. 6 (1999) Cm 4256. The text of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty has been published in Treaty Series No. 15 (2006) Cm 6855.

The Recommendations of the Fourth to Eighteenth Consultative Meetings, the Reports of the First to Sixth Special Consultative Meetings and the Measures adopted at the Nineteenth and the Measures adopted at the Twenty-sixth, Twenty-seventh, Twenty-eighth, Twenty-ninth, Thirtieth, Thirty-first, Thirty-second, Thirty-third, Thirty-fourth, Thirty-fifth, Thirty-sixth, Thirty-seventh, Thirty-eighth, Thirty-ninth, Fortieth and Forty-first Consultative Meetings were also published as Command Papers. No Command Papers were published for the Twentieth to Twenty-fifth Consultative Meetings.

Measures Adopted at the XLII Consultative Meeting held at Prague, Czech Republic 1 – 11 July 2019

Measure 1 (2019) Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 123 (Barwick and Balham Valleys, Southern Victoria Land): Revised Management Plan

Page 6

Measure 2 (2019) Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 128 (Western shore of Admiralty Bay, King George Island, South Shetland Islands): Revised Management Plan

Page 21

Measure 3 (2019) Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 141 (Yukidori Valley, Langhovde, Lützow-Holm Bay): Revised Management Plan

Page 47

Measure 4 (2019) Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 142 (Svarthamaren): Revised Management Plan

Page 61

Measure 5 (2019) Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 151 (Lions Rump, King George Island, South Shetland Islands): Revised Management Plan

Page 74

Measure 6 (2019) Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 154 (Botany Bay, Cape Geology, Victoria Land): Revised Management Plan

Page 94

Measure 7 (2019) Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 161 (Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea): Revised Management Plan

Page 114

Measure 8 (2019) Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 171 (Narębski Point, Barton Peninsula, King George Island): Revised Management Plan

Page 137

Measure 9 (2019) Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 173 (Cape Washington and Silverfish Bay, Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea): Revised Management Plan

Page 161

Measure 10 (2019) Antarctic Specially Managed Area No 4 (Deception Island): Revised Management Plan

Page 185

Measure 11 (2019) Antarctic Specially Managed Area No 7 (Southwest Anvers Island and Palmer Basin): Revised Management Plan

Page 233

Measure 12 (2019) Revised List of Antarctic Historic Sites and Monuments: the Wreck of Sir Ernest Shackleton's vessel Endurance and C.A. Larsen Multiexpedition cairn

Page 291

Measure 1 (2019)

Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 123 (Barwick and Balham Valleys, Southern Victoria Land): Revised Management Plan

The Representatives,

Recalling Articles 3, 5 and 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, providing for the designation of Antarctic Specially Protected Areas ("ASPA") and approval of Management Plans for those Areas;

Recalling

- Recommendation VIII-4 (1975), which designated Barwick Valley, Victoria Land as Site of – Special Scientific Interest ("SSSI") No 3 and annexed a Management Plan for the Site;
- Recommendations X-6 (1979), XII-5 (1983), XIII-7 (1985), Resolution 7 (1995) and Measure 2 (2000), which extended the expiry date of SSSI 3;
- Decision 1 (2002), which renamed and renumbered SSSI 3 as ASPA 123;
- Measures 1 (2002), 6 (2008) and 3 (2013), which adopted revised Management Plans for ASPA 123;

Recalling that Recommendations VIII-4 (1975), X-6 (1979), XII-5 (1983), XIII-7 (1985) and Resolution 7 (1995) were designated as no longer current by Decision 1 (2011);

Recalling that Measure 2 (2000) did not become effective and was withdrawn by Measure 5 (2009);

Noting that the Committee for Environmental Protection ("CEP") has endorsed a revised Management Plan for ASPA 123:

Desiring to replace the existing Management Plan for ASPA 123 with the revised Management Plan;

Recommend to their Governments the following Measure for approval in accordance with paragraph 1 of Article 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty:

That:

1. the revised Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 123 (Barwick and Balham Valleys, South Victoria Land), which is annexed to this Measure, be approved; and
2. the Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 123 annexed to Measure 3 (2013) be revoked.

Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area (ASPA) No. 123

BARWICK AND BALHAM VALLEYS, SOUTHERN VICTORIA LAND

Introduction

The Barwick and Balham Valleys are located within Antarctic Specially Managed Area (ASMA) No. 2 McMurdo Dry Valleys, Victoria Land, Ross Sea. The Area is centered at 160° 57' E, 77° 21' S and is approximately 423 km^2 in area. The Barwick and Balham Valleys are rarely visited and are an important reference area for comparing changes in other Dry Valley ecosystems which are regularly visited for scientific purposes. The Area contains examples of a wide variety of the environments found in the polar desert ecosystem. Some of the best examples of the physical surface features associated with this unique and extreme environment are found on the valley floors, where there are also fine examples of microbial life, lichens, as well as soil and lake microflora.

Barwick and Balham Valleys were originally designated as Site of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI) No. 3 through Recommendation VIII-4 (1975) after a proposal by the United States of America. A number of Recommendations extended the Management Plan expiry dates (Recommendation X-6 (1979), Recommendation XII-5 (1983), Recommendation XIII-7 (1985), and Resolution 7 (1995)). Measure 2 (2000) advanced the expiry date of the management plan from 31 December 2000 until 31 December 2005. Decision 1 (2002) renamed and renumbered SSSI No. 3 as Antarctic Specially Protected Area No. 123. Measure 1 (2002) designated the Area for an indefinite period, enlarged the original Area to include more of the Balham Valley catchment and rationalized it to exclude the Victoria Upper Glacier catchment. Measure 6 (2008) amended the Management Plan to include additional provisions to reduce the risk of microbial and vegetation introductions from soils at other Antarctic sites or from regions outside Antarctica. Measure 3 (2013) updated literature, improved the map of the Area, and made minor adjustments to provisions on aircraft access. The boundary was adjusted to follow the Barwick / Balham catchments more precisely. Soil geochemistry analyses on samples collected in 2015 revealed low-level contamination present at a former soil pit near Lake Vashka. However, the low absolute levels overall and the very limited spatial extent of contamination observed suggest that the pristine nature of the Area is being maintained and its value as a reference site remains valid.

The Area is classified as Environment S – McMurdo - South Victoria Land geologic based on the Environmental Domains Analysis for Antarctica (Resolution 3 (2008)) and is classified as Region 9 – South Victoria Land under the Antarctic Conservation Biogeographic Regions (ACBR) classification (Resolution 3 (2017)).

1. Description of values to be protected

An area of 325 km^2 at Barwick Valley, including part of adjacent Balham Valley, was originally designated in Recommendation VIII-4 (1975, SSSI No. 3) after a proposal by the United States of America on the grounds that it was "one of the least disturbed and contaminated of the Dry Valleys of Victoria Land" and was important as a reference base against which to measure changes in comparable ecosystems of the other Dry Valleys where scientific investigations were being regularly conducted. The site remains distant from field stations and has not been subjected to intensive visitation or research. The Barwick Valley was first visited in 1958 and several subsequent expeditions were conducted in the 1960s through to 1975, after which time visits have been few because of the designation of the SSSI. Although some human impacts from these early expeditions were visible within the region in 1993-94, Barwick and Balham Valleys are believed to remain one of the least impacted areas in the McMurdo Dry Valleys region of Antarctica. Soil samples collected in 2015 showed evidence of low levels of metals and hydrocarbon contamination at one previously disturbed site near Lake Vashka. However, given the low magnitude and very limited spatial extent of contamination observed, as well as very low absolute levels of contaminants observed in samples taken nearby, the largely pristine nature of the Area is being maintained and its value as a reference site is considered to remain valid.

The boundaries of the original Area were re-designed in Measure 1 (2002) so they followed the Barwick and Balham catchments more truthfully, resulting in a total area of 418 km^2 (correction from 480 km^2, an error in Measure 1 (2002)), which were again adopted without change in Measure 6 (2008). The catchment boundaries were refined further in 2013 based on improved mapping, resulting in an increase in total area from 418 km^2 to 423 km^2. The boundary remains unchanged in the current Management Plan.

The McMurdo Dry Valleys have a unique and extreme polar desert ecosystem. The Area contains examples of a wide variety of the environments found in this ecosystem, including desert pavements, sand dunes, patterned ground, glacial and moraine features, streams, freshwater and saline lakes, valleys and high-altitude ice-free ground. Some of the best examples of ventifact pavements and weathering-pitted dolerites are found on the valley floors, along with examples of chasmolithic lichens, layered communities of endolithic lichens, fungi, algae and associated bacteria, and populations of soil and lake microflora. Special protection of the Area provides the opportunity to conserve a relatively pristine example of this ecosystem as a baseline for future reference. Protection on a catchment basis serves to provide greater representation of the ecosystem features, and also facilitates management of the Area as a geographically distinct and integrated ecological system. The high ecological values, as well as the scientific, aesthetic and wilderness values derived from the isolation and relatively low level of human impact are important reasons for special protection at Barwick and Balham Valleys.

2. Aims and objectives

Management at Barwick and Balham Valleys aims to:

- avoid degradation of, or substantial risk to, the values of the Area by preventing unnecessary human disturbance to the Area;

- conserve the natural ecosystem as a reference area largely undisturbed by direct human activities;
- allow scientific research on the natural ecosystem and physical environment in the Area provided it is for compelling reasons which cannot be served elsewhere;
- minimize human disturbance to the Area by preventing unnecessary sampling;
- prevent or minimize the introduction to the Area of alien plants, animals and microbes;
- allow visits for management purposes in support of the aims of the management plan.

3. Management activities

The following management activities shall be undertaken to protect the values of the Area:

- Notices showing the location of the Area (stating the special restrictions that apply) shall be displayed prominently, and a copy of this Management Plan shall be kept available, at permanent scientific stations located within the Ross Sea region;
- All pilots operating in the region shall be informed of the location, boundaries and restrictions applying to entry, overflight and landings within the Area;
- National programs shall take steps to ensure the boundaries of the Area and the restrictions that apply within are marked on relevant maps and nautical / aeronautical charts;
- Markers, signs or structures erected within the Area for scientific or management purposes shall be secured and maintained in good condition, and removed when no longer required;
- Any abandoned equipment or materials shall be removed to the maximum extent possible provided doing so does not adversely impact on the environment and the values of the Area;
- Visits shall be made as necessary to assess whether the Area continues to serve the purposes for which it was designated and to ensure management and maintenance measures are adequate;
- National Antarctic Programs operating in the region shall consult together with a view to ensuring the above management activities are implemented.

4. Period of designation

Designated for an indefinite period.

5. Maps

Map 1. ASPA No. 123 Barwick and Balham Valleys – topography and boundary. Map specifications: Projection: Lambert conformal conic; Standard parallels: 1st 77° 15' S; 2nd 77° 25' S; Central Meridian: 161° 10' E; Latitude of Origin: 78° 00' S; Spheroid and datum: WGS84.
Inset 1: Ross Sea region, showing the location of the McMurdo Dry Valleys and Inset 2.
Inset 2: McMurdo Dry Valleys and Ross Island, showing location of McMurdo Station (US) and Scott Base (NZ), Antarctic Specially Managed Area No. 2 McMurdo Dry Valleys (ASMA No.2).

6. Description of the Area

6(i) Geographical coordinates, boundary markers and natural features

- *General description*

Barwick Valley (161° 57' E, 77° 21' S) is situated about 65 km inland from the Ross Sea coast of southern Victoria Land (Map 1 and Insets). The Area includes Barwick and Balham Valleys and their respective catchments and is bordered on the south, west and north by the McKelvey Valley, the Willet Range and the divide between the Victoria and Barwick Valleys, respectively.

- *Boundaries and coordinates*

The boundary of the Area extends from its eastern extremity in the lower Barwick Valley (around the confluence of the Barwick, Victoria and McKelvey Valleys) several kilometers south towards the ridge leading SW to the summit of Mount Insel (1345 m, 161 30.74' E, 77 23.50' S), from where the boundary follows the high points of the ridge of the Insel Range over Halzen Mesa for 5.5 km before descending to a low pass between the McKelvey and Balham Valleys at the location of Bullseye Lake (722 m, 161° 14.41' E, 77° 24.78' S). The boundary crosses the lake before ascending the ridge to a further high point on Canfield Mesa on the Insel Range (approximately 1250 m), and continues over Green Mesa to follow Rude Spur to Mount Cassidy (1917 m) and onwards to the upper reaches of the Balham Valley. As the terrain becomes gentler in the upper Balham and approximately 6.5 km southeast of the summit of Shapeless Mountain (2736 m), the boundary extends northward at an elevation of between 1800 – 1900 m towards the Huka Kapo Glacier and Apocalypse Peaks. The boundary extends NW from the Huka Kapo Glacier for approximately 9 km towards a prominent ridge leading to the summit of Mount Bastion (2477 m, 160°29.39' E, 77°19.18' S). This ridge is followed in a northerly direction to the top of McSaveney Spur, thence follows the upper ridgeline of the cirque containing Webb Icefall to the summit of Vishniac Peak (2280 m, 160° 31.82'E, 77° 14.71' S). The boundary thence follows the main ridge northeast for 5 km to the summit of Skew Peak (2537 m, 160° 42.07'E, 77° 13.16' S), located at the head of the Barwick Valley. The boundary then descends along the east ridge of

Skew Peak above Webb Cirque, before following the catchment boundary in a more southerly direction to Parker Mesa. From Parker Mesa the boundary descends further to follow the upper ridge of The Fortress and the Cruzon Range, which is the dividing ridge between the catchments of the Victoria Upper Glacier and the Barwick Valley. The boundary extends east along this ridge for ~12 km via Loewenstein Peak (1539 m) and Shulman Peak (1400 m) to Sponsors Peak (1454 m, 161°24.4' E, 77°18.2' S). The boundary descends the SE ridge of Sponsors Peak and Nickell Peak (approximately 1400 m, 161° 28.25' E 77° 19.21' E) to the lower Barwick to the eastern extremity of the Area, which is about 4 km northwest of Lake Vida, Victoria Valley.

- *Physiography, glaciology, streams and lakes*

An extensive névé south of Skew Peak feeds the Webb Glacier in the upper Barwick Valley. Very little ice from the Polar Plateau flows over the scarp into the Barwick Valley, as flow vectors and debris cover patterns on the Webb Glacier indicate that this part of the glacier is almost stationary. The Barwick and Balham Valleys merge in the southeast of the Area, 9 km from where the Barwick joins the Victoria Valley. A series of lakes occupy the Barwick Valley, the largest being Webb Lake (approximate elevation 658 m) at the snout of Webb Glacier. Lake Vashka (approximate elevation 476 m), partially filling an unusually deep circular depression (Chinn 1993), is the second largest and 5.7 km down-valley from Webb Lake. Hourglass Lake (approximate elevation 617 m), the next largest, is approximately half way between Webb Lake and Lake Vashka. An intermittent stream connecting this series of lakes terminates at Lake Vashka, which has a level well below its overflow threshold. Early observations of the smooth surfaces of Lakes Webb and Vashka suggested that they are 'ice-block' lakes that contain no significant liquid water (Chinn 1993). However, liquid water up to several meters in depth was observed at the perimeter of Lake Vashka in December 1993. Recent studies on the physical features of any of the Barwick Valley lakes have not been made. Lake Balham, a small lake in a depression (671 m elevation) below Apocalypse Peaks, is the only lake in Balham Valley (generally around 800 m in elevation).

Multiple glaciations, mainly between 13 Ma and 3.5 Ma ago, have resulted in a thick ground moraine on both valley floors (Péwé 1960). These deposits are mantled by solifluction sheets at the head of Balham Valley. In addition, the valleys bear a small number of fresh and saline lakes on the drift surfaces. In many cases the lakes have evaporated to leave extensive salt deposits. The walls of Barwick and Balham Valleys display remnants of glacial benches at about 800 m and 1,200-1,500 m altitude (Bull *et al.* 1962). The soils near Lake Vashka consist of moraine debris derived largely from dolerite and sandstone, but granites, gneiss and schist make up as much as 35% of boulders locally (Claridge 1965). Weathering is often indicated by deep red staining due to oxidation of iron compounds, usually eroded by wind-driven sand on the boulders' windward side (Claridge & Campbell 1984). The valley floors are extensively covered with patterned ground of sand-wedge polygons, typical of permafrost areas in the Dry Valleys (Campbell & Claridge 1987). The majority is old (high centered), with young (hollow centered) polygons found in recent stream channels, and both typically measure 20 m across.

- *Terrestrial and animal ecology*

No invertebrates have been found in the dry soils of the Barwick Valley and there is little obvious vegetation (Freckman & Virginia 1998). Algal crusts and mats fringe the lakes and streams but the flora reported is essentially microbial: chasmolithic lichens are present in jagged screes of the Apocalypse Range and dense layered communities of endolithic lichens, fungi, algae and associated bacteria are occasionally found in boulders of Beacon Sandstone (Edwards *et al*. 1998, 2005). Black lichen growth is reported to be well developed in areas of sandstone on the valley floor of Balham Valley (Russell *et al*. 1998). Significant heterotrophic bacterial populations have been reported in sandy samples from Barwick Valley. The population contained lactose-fermenters, nitrate-reducers, nitrogen-fixers, yeasts and algae but no detectable filamentous fungi or Protozoa (Cowan *et al*. 2002).

While the Barwick and Balham Valleys are one of the most remote areas of the Dry Valleys, south polar skuas (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) are known to visit the Area, with about 40 carcasses found at Lake Vashka in 1959-60. The mummified carcasses of two seals have been found near the snout of Webb Glacier, and seven more, mainly crabeaters (*Lobodon carcinophagus*) were found near the Balham / Barwick Valley junction (Dort 1981).

- *Human activities / impacts*

Inspection of the Barwick and Balham Valleys in December 1993 from Bullseye Lake to Lake Vashka revealed evidence of prior human activity, particularly around Lake Vashka where field camps had been in use for scientific research in the 1960s. Impacts observed in the Lake Vashka vicinity included stone circles for tents at old camp sites, soil pits and a trench, remains of a wooden crate, a wooden box containing rocks and a paper poster, and a broken food cache partially submerged in the lake (Harris 1994). A poster recording names of visitors enclosed in a map roll at Lake Vashka was removed from the Area in 1993 because it was deteriorating (Harris 1994). Bamboo poles are situated near the snout of Webb Glacier and at Vashka Crag. Dynamite charges have been used in the vicinity of Lake Vashka and at least one other unknown location in the Barwick Valley. Remediation of the site was carried out in 1995/96 by a New Zealand team.

The spatial distribution of soils in the Barwick and Balham valleys was investigated in field work undertaken 6-13 January 2012 (McLeod & Bockheim 2012). Small, shallow excavations were made to determine soil properties, which were carefully remediated and their positions recorded by GPS (Antarctica NZ 2012). The team camped at a previously established site near Lake Vashka (161° 09.284' E, 77° 20.931' S) (Map 1). Walking routes and sampling sites were kept to the minimum to accomplish objectives and sensitive areas were avoided. Precautions were taken to minimize the risk of introduction of non-native species by cleaning equipment, and all wastes were removed. The team made observations of former soil excavations at three locations (161° 08.822' E, 77° 20.951' S; 161° 09.078' E, 77° 20.989' S; and 161° 09.085' E, 77° 20.989' S). No structures were observed within the Area and the team noted that the sites visited appeared to remain pristine.

To gain a quantitative understanding of baseline environmental conditions as well as possible impacts, Klein *et al.* (2019) collected soil samples along the western margin of Lake Vashka in November 2015 from four sites of past human activities reported previously (Harris 1994, McLeod & Bockheim 2012, Antarctica New Zealand 2012). The site on the shore of Lake Vashka where a broken and partially submerged food cache was found in 1993 was fully submerged several meters below the lake surface in 2015, and samples were not collected from this site directly but from the adjacent area above the present lake shoreline. All samples were analysed for polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons (PAHs) and a suite of 17 metals/metalloids to determine whether there were geochemical indications of human activities. An additional site was identified with evidence of ~12 shallow soil excavations scattered over an area approximately 20 m in diameter at 161° 10.422' E 77° 21.18' S, although this was not sampled.

Overall, the geochemical analyses revealed little evidence of contamination that could reasonably be associated with human activities in the Area. The majority of samples (18 of 24) showed no indication of contamination, with total PAHs lower than 6.5 ng/g and trace metals also showing levels consistent with expected baseline conditions. While no control site was sampled in 2015 to provide true baseline measurements, the overall consistent low level of contamination evident across all elements and the spatially distributed samples suggests that these 18 samples are likely to be a reasonable proxy for background baseline levels in the vicinity of Lake Vashka.

The results from four samples taken at one of the former soil excavation sites exhibited relatively elevated concentrations of both PAHs and a number of metals that are associated with human activities (Klein *et al.* 2019). The elements Ba, Cd, Fe, Hg, Mg, Pb, and Zn showed more than double the average concentrations observed at nearby sample sites, with mercury in particular being almost nine times the average. Total PAH at this former soil pit was also up to ~14 times the average levels across other sites. The results support the hypothesis that the spatial extent of any contamination present is very limited. While levels from this more contaminated soil pit site were much higher compared to the adjacent sampling sites, in the wider context of Antarctica the detected absolute concentrations overall are considered low and indicate limited human impact (Klein *et al.* 2019). Given the low measured concentrations and very limited spatial extent of contamination observed, as well as the very low baseline levels of contaminants observed in samples more generally, the largely pristine nature of this part of the Barwick Valley is confirmed and the value of the site as a reference area is considered to
Remain valid

6 (ii) Access to the area

The Area may be accessed by traversing over land or ice, or by air. Particular access routes have not been designated for entering the Area. Access restrictions apply within the Area, the specific conditions for which are set out in Section 7(ii) below.

6(iii) Location of structures within and adjacent to the Area

There are no structures within or near the Area.

6(iv) Location of other protected areas in the vicinity

Barwick Valley and Balham Valley lie within Antarctic Specially Managed Area (ASMA) No.2 McMurdo Dry Valleys. The nearest protected areas to Barwick and Balham Valleys are Linnaeus Terrace (ASPA No.138) 35 km south in the Wright Valley, and Canada Glacier (ASPA No.131) and Lower Taylor Glacier and Blood Falls (ASPA No. 172), both of which are approximately 45 km southeast in the Taylor Valley (Inset 2, Map 1).

6 (v) Special zones within the Area

There are no special zones within the Area.

7. Terms and conditions for entry permits

7 (i) General permit conditions

Entry into the Area is prohibited except in accordance with a permit issued by an appropriate national authority. Conditions for issuing a permit to enter the Area are that:

- it is issued for compelling scientific reasons that cannot be served elsewhere, or for reasons essential to the management of the Area;
- the actions permitted are in accordance with this Management Plan;
- the activities permitted will give due consideration via the environmental impact assessment process to the continued protection of the environmental, ecological, scientific, aesthetic and wilderness values of the Area, including the pristine value of the Area and its potential as a largely undisturbed reference site;
- the permit shall be issued for a finite period;
- the permit, or a copy, shall be carried when in the Area.

7(ii) Access to, and movement within or over, the Area

Access to and movement within the Area shall be on foot or by aircraft. Vehicles are prohibited within the Area.

- *Access on foot*

- Pedestrians are encouraged to access the Area at a practicable point closest to the site(s) they are visiting to minimize the amount of the Area that is traversed;

- Pedestrian routes should avoid lakes, ponds, stream beds, areas of damp ground and areas of soft sediments or dunes;
- Pedestrian traffic should be kept to the minimum necessary consistent with the objectives of any permitted activities and every reasonable effort should be made to minimize effects.

- *Access and overflight by piloted aircraft and Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS)*

- Overflight below 2000 ft (610 m) and landings within the Area by piloted aircraft, including by helicopters, are prohibited except in accordance with a permit issued by an appropriate national authority;
- Overflight below 2000 ft (610 m) and landings within the Area by Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS) are prohibited except in accordance with a permit issued by an appropriate national authority. RPAS use within the Area should follow the Environmental Guidelines for Operation of Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS) in Antarctica (Resolution 4 (2018)).

7(iii) Activities that may be conducted within the Area

- Compelling scientific research that cannot be undertaken elsewhere and will not jeopardize the values of the Area, or its pristine value and potential as a reference site;
- Essential management activities, including monitoring and inspection.

7(iv) Installation, modification or removal of structures / equipment

- No structures are to be erected within the Area except as specified in a permit;
- Permanent structures are prohibited;
- All structures, scientific equipment or markers installed in the Area shall be authorized by permit and clearly identified by country, name of the principal investigator, year of installation and date of expected removal. All such items should be free of organisms, propagules (e.g. seeds, eggs) and non-sterile soil, and be made of materials that can withstand the environmental conditions and pose minimal risk of contamination of the Area;
- Installation (including site selection), maintenance, modification or removal of structures or equipment shall be undertaken in a manner that minimizes disturbance to the values of the Area;
- Removal of specific structures / equipment for which the permit has expired shall be the responsibility of the authority which granted the original permit, and shall be a condition of the permit.

7(v) Location of field camps

Camping should generally be avoided within the Area, and two campsites outside of, but close to, the east and south boundaries are identified for access into the Area. One of these is at the confluence of the lower Barwick and Victoria Valleys (161° 41.25' E, 77° 21.75' S), while the other is close to Bullseye Lake in the McKelvey Valley (161° 13.13' E, 77° 25.67' S) (see Map 1). If deemed to be essential, camping should be at previously impacted sites, preferably on snow or ice-covered ground if available. One such previously established camp site is located on slopes ~150 m above the SW shore of Lake Vashka (161° 09.284' E, 77° 20.931' S) (Map 1), which is marked by a circle of stones, and this site should be used to meet research needs as appropriate. Researchers should consult with the appropriate national authority to obtain up-to-date information on any other sites where camping may be preferred.

7(vi) Restrictions on materials and organisms that may be brought into the Area

In addition to the requirements of the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, restrictions on materials and organisms which may be brought into the area are:

- Deliberate introduction of animals, plant material, micro-organisms and non-sterile soil into the Area is prohibited. Precautions shall be taken to prevent the accidental introduction of animals, plant material, micro-organisms and non-sterile soil from other biologically distinct regions (within or beyond the Antarctic Treaty area);
- Visitors shall ensure that scientific equipment, particularly for sampling, and markers brought into the Area are clean. To the maximum extent practicable, footwear and other equipment used or brought into the area (including backpacks, carry-bags and tents) shall be thoroughly cleaned before entering the Area. Visitors should also consult and follow as appropriate recommendations contained in the Committee for Environmental Protection Non-native Species Manual (Resolution 4 (2016); CEP 2017), and in the Environmental Code of Conduct for Terrestrial Scientific Field Research in Antarctica (Resolution 5 (2018)).;
- To reduce the risk of microbial contamination, the exposed surfaces of footwear, sampling equipment and markers should, to the greatest extent practical, be sterilized before use within the Area. Sterilization should be by an acceptable method, such as by washing in 70% ethanol solution in water or in a commercially available solution such as ‘Virkon’;
- No herbicides or pesticides shall be brought into the Area;
- The use of explosives is prohibited within the Area;
- Fuel, food, chemicals, and other materials shall not be stored in the Area, unless specifically authorized by permit and shall be stored and handled in a way that minimises the risk of their accidental introduction into the environment;
- All materials introduced shall be for a stated period only and shall be removed by the end of that stated period; and

- If release occurs which is likely to compromise the values of the Area, removal is encouraged only where the impact of removal is not likely to be greater than that of leaving the material *in situ*.

7(vii) Taking of, or harmful interference with, native flora or fauna

Taking of, or harmful interference with, native flora and fauna is prohibited, except in accordance with Annex II of the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty.

Where animal taking or harmful interference with animals is involved, this should, as a minimum standard, be in accordance with the SCAR Code of Conduct for the Use of Animals for Scientific Purposes in Antarctica.

7(viii) Collection or removal of anything not brought into the Area by the permit holder

Material may be collected or removed from the Area only in accordance with a permit and should be limited to the minimum necessary to meet scientific or management needs. Material of human origin likely to compromise the values of the Area, which was not brought into the Area by the permit holder or otherwise authorized, may be removed unless the impact of removal is likely to be greater than leaving the material *in situ*. If this is the case the appropriate authority must be notified and approval obtained.

7(ix) Disposal of waste

All wastes, including water used for any human purpose and including all human wastes, shall be removed from the Area.

7(x) Measures that may be necessary to continue to meet the aims of the Management Plan

Permits may be granted to enter the Area to:

- carry out monitoring and Area inspection activities, which may involve the collection of a small number of samples or data for analysis or review;
- install or maintain signposts, markers, structures or scientific equipment;
- carry out protective measures.

7(xi) Requirements for reports

- The principal permit holder for each visit to the Area shall submit a report to the appropriate national authority as soon as practicable after the visit has been completed in accordance with national procedures.
- Such reports should include, as appropriate, the information identified in the visit report form contained in the Guide to the Preparation of Management Plans for Antarctic Specially Protected Areas (Resolution 2 (2011)). If

appropriate, the national authority should also forward a copy of the visit report to the Party that proposed the Management Plan, to assist in managing the Area and reviewing the Management Plan.

- Parties should, wherever possible, deposit originals or copies of such original visit reports in a publicly accessible archive to maintain a record of usage, for the purpose of any review of the Management Plan and in organising the scientific use of the Area.
- The appropriate authority should be notified of any activities/measures undertaken, and / or of any materials released and not removed, that were not included in the authorized Permit.

8. Supporting documentation

Antarctica New Zealand 2012. Antarctic Specially Protected Area Visit Report. Unpublished report by M. McLeod on visit made to Barwick and Balham Valleys in January 2012. Antarctica NZ, Christchurch.

Bull, C., McKelvey, B.C. & Webb, P.N. 1962. Quaternary Glaciations in Southern Victoria Land, Antarctica. *Journal of Glaciology* **4** (31): 63-78.

Campbell, I.B. & Claridge, G.G.C. 1987. *Antarctica: Soils, weathering processes and environment. Developments in Soil Science* **16**. Elsevier Science Publishers, Amsterdam.

Chinn, T.J. 1993. Physical Hydrology of the Dry Valley Lakes. In Green, W.J. & Friedmann, E.I. (eds) Physical and biogeochemical processes in Antarctic Lakes. *Antarctic Research Series* **59**:1-51. American Geophysical Union, Washington, D.C.

Claridge, G.G.C. 1965. The clay mineralogy and chemistry of some soils from the Ross Dependency, Antarctica. *New Zealand Journal of Geology and Geophysics* **8** (2):186-220.

Claridge, G.G.C. & Campbell, I.B. 1984. Mineral transformations during the weathering of dolerite under cold arid conditions. *New Zealand Journal of Geology and Geophysics* **27**: 533-45.

CEP (Committee for Environmental Protection). 2017. Non-Native Species Manual: Revision 2017. Secretariat of the Antarctic Treaty, Buenos Aires.

Cowan, D.A., Russell, N.J., Mamais, A. & Sheppard, D.M. 2002. Antarctic Dry Valley mineral soils contain unexpectedly high levels of microbial biomass. *Extremophiles* **6** (5): 431-36.

Dort, W., Jr. 1981. The mummified seals of southern Victoria Land, Antarctica. In Parker, B., Ed. Terrestrial Biology III, *Antarctic Research Series* **30**: 123–54. American Geophysical Union, Washington, D.C.

Edwards, H.G.M., Moody, C.D., Jorge Villar, S.E. & Wynn-Williams, D.D. 2005. Raman spectroscopic detection of key biomarkers of cyanobacteria and lichen symbiosis in extreme Antarctic habitats: Evaluation for Mars lander missions. *Icarus* **174**: 560-71.

Edwards, H.G.M., Russell, N.C. & Wynn-Williams, D.D. 1997. Fourier Transform Raman spectroscopic and scanning electron microscopic study of cryptoendolithic lichens from Antarctica. *Journal of Raman Spectroscopy* **28** (9): 685–90.

Freckman, D.W. & Virginia, R.A. 1998. Soil Biodiversity and Community Structure in the McMurdo Dry Valleys, Antarctica. In Priscu, J., (ed). Ecosystem Dynamics in a Polar Desert, The McMurdo Dry Valleys, Antarctica. *Antarctic Research Series* **72**: 323–35. American Geophysical Union, Washington, D.C.

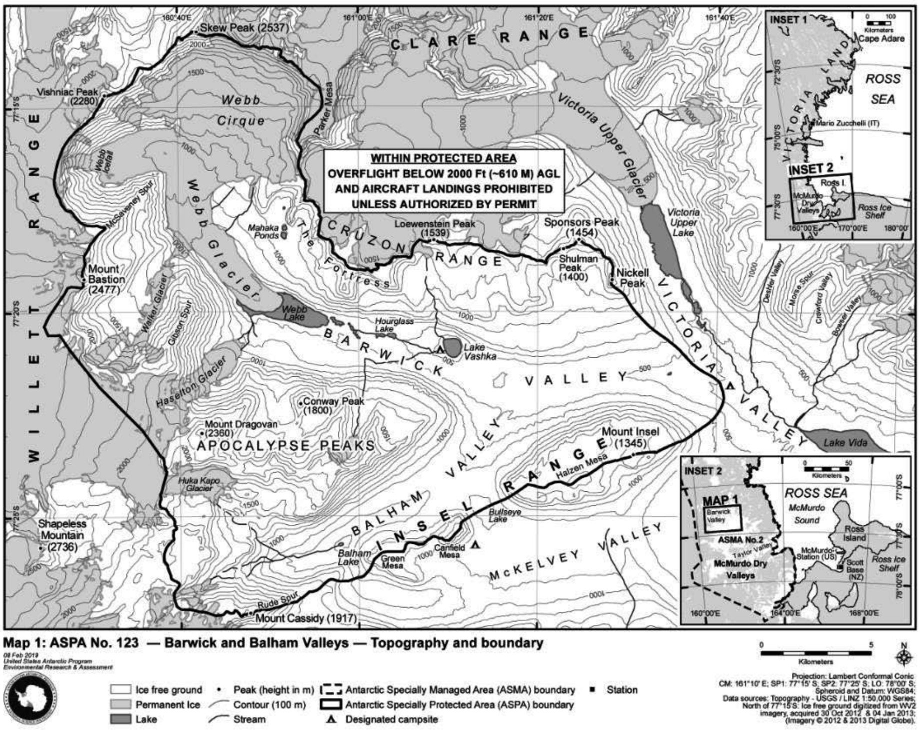
Harris, C.M. 1994. Ross Sea Protected Areas 1993/94 Visit Report. Unpublished report on inspection visits to protected areas in the Ross Sea. International Centre for Antarctic Information and Research, Christchurch.

Klein, A.G., Sweet, S.T., Wade, T.L., Sericano, J.L., Palmer, T. & Montagna, P. 2019. Report: B-518-M Barwick Valley Soil Analysis. Unpublished report prepared for the DOD-Army-COE-Engineer Research & Development Center, Cold Regions R&E Laboratory. Award No. W913E5-16-C-0006. Department of Geography, Texas A&M University, College Station.

McLeod, M. & Bockheim, J.G. 2012. A summary of K123A Antarctic field activities, 2011-2012. 25 January 2012. Unpublished field report prepared for Antarctica New Zealand.

Péwé, T.L. 1960. Multiple glaciation in the McMurdo Sound region, Antarctica – A progress report. *Journal of Geology* **68** (5): 498-514.

Russell, N.C., Edwards, H.G.M. and Wynn-Williams, D.D. 1998. FT-Raman spectroscopic analysis of endolithic microbial communities from Beacon sandstone in Victoria Land, Antarctica. *Antarctic Science* **10** (1): 63-74



Map 1: ASPA No. 123 — Barwick and Balham Valleys — Topography and boundary

Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 128 (Western shore of Admiralty Bay, King George Island, South Shetland Islands): Revised Management Plan

The Representatives,

Recalling Articles 3, 5 and 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, providing for the designation of Antarctic Specially Protected Areas ("ASPA") and approval of Management Plans for those Areas;

Recalling

- Recommendation X-5 (1979), which designated the Western shore of Admiralty Bay, King George Island as Site of Special Scientific Interest ("SSSI") No 8 and annexed a Management Plan for the Site;
- Recommendations X-6 (1979), XII-5 (1983), XIII-7 (1985) and Resolution 7 (1995), which extended the expiry date for SSSI 8;
- Measure 1 (2000), which adopted a revised Management Plan for SSSI 8;
- Decision 1 (2002), which renamed and renumbered SSSI 8 as ASPA 128;
- Measure 2 (2006), which designated Admiralty Bay, King George Island as Antarctic Specially Managed Area ("ASMA") No 1, within which ASPA 128 is located;
- Measure 4 (2014), which adopted a revised Management Plan for ASPA 128;

Recalling that Recommendations X-15 (1979), XII-5 (1983), XIII-7 (1985) and Resolution 7 (1995) were designated as no longer current by Decision 1 (2011);

Recalling that Measure 1 (2000) did not become effective and was withdrawn by Decision 3 (2017);

Noting Measure 14 (2014), which adopted a revised Management Plan for ASMA 1;

Noting that the Committee for Environmental Protection ("CEP") has endorsed a revised Management Plan for ASPA 128;

Desiring to replace the existing Management Plan for ASPA 128 with the revised Management Plan;

Recommend to their Governments the following Measure for approval in accordance with paragraph 1 of Article 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty:

That:

1. the revised Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 128 (Western shore of Admiralty Bay, King George Island, South Shetland Islands), which is annexed to this Measure, be approved; and
2. the Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 128 annexed to Measure 4 (2014) be revoked.

Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 128

WESTERN SHORE OF ADMIRALTY BAY, KING GEORGE ISLAND, SOUTH SHETLAND ISLANDS

Introduction

The Western Shore of Admiralty Bay is located on King George Island, South Shetland Islands, ~125 kilometers from the northern Antarctic Peninsula. Approximate area and coordinates: 16.8 km^2 (centered at 58° 27' 40" W, 62° 11' 50" S). The Area is wholly terrestrial, and the primary reasons for designation are its diverse avian and mammalian fauna and locally rich vegetation, providing a representative sample of the maritime Antarctic ecosystem. Long term scientific research has been conducted on the animals within the Area. The Area is relatively accessible to nearby research stations and tourist ships regularly visit Admiralty Bay, and the ecological and scientific values of the area need protection from potential disturbance.

The Area was originally designated as Site of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI) No. 8 in Recommendation X-5 (1979, SSSI No. 8) after a proposal by Poland. The SSSI designation was extended through Recommendation XII-5 (1983), Recommendation XIII-7 (1985) and Resolution 7 (1995). Revised Management Plans were adopted through Measure 1 (2000) and Measure 4 (2014). The site was renamed and renumbered as Antarctic Specially Protected Area (ASPA) No. 128 by Decision 1 (2002). The Area lies within Antarctic Specially Managed Area (ASMA) No. 1 Admiralty Bay, King George Island, South Shetland Islands, originally designated through Measure 2 (2006) and revised through Measure 14 (2014).

The biological and scientific values of the Area are vulnerable to human disturbance (e.g. oversampling, disturbance to wildlife, introduction of non-native species). Therefore, it is important that human activities in the Area are managed to minimize the risk of impacts. A small area of the introduced grass species *Poa annua* was noted within the Area, and this was given priority management attention in 2015 when the known plants were removed by hand, and this site continues to be monitored for potential recolonization. The Area is considered of sufficient size to protect the values for which special protection is required because it includes within the boundaries numerous examples of the features represented (e.g. plant and animal communities), which should ensure that the Area is able to withstand changes that could arise from local or regional pressures, particularly when considered in combination with other instruments that apply in the region such as Antarctic Specially Managed Area No.1 Admiralty Bay, the Convention on the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources (CCAMLR), and the Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels (ACAP).

Antarctic Important Bird Area No. 046 West Admiralty Bay is identified within the Area. The Area comprises environments within three of the domains defined in the Environmental Domains Analysis for Antarctica (Resolution 3 (2008)): Environment A – Antarctic Peninsula northern geologic; Environment E – Antarctic Peninsula, Alexander and other islands; and Environment G – Antarctic Peninsula offshore islands. Areas of ice-free ground classified as Region 3 – Northwest Antarctic Peninsula under the Antarctic Conservation Biogeographic Regions classification (Resolution 3 (2017)) lie within the Area.

1. Description of values to be protected

The western shore of Admiralty Bay possesses a diverse avian and mammalian fauna and locally rich vegetation which is representative of the maritime Antarctic terrestrial ecosystem. The breeding colonies of Adélie (*Pygoscelis adeliae*) and gentoo penguin (*Pygoscelis papua*) within the Area are among the largest on King George Island, and the site is one of only a few protected areas where all three *Pygoscelid* penguins are found breeding together at the same location. Ten other birds breed within the Area, including chinstrap penguins (*Pygoscelis antarcticus*), southern giant petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*), cape petrel (*Daption capense*), Wilson's storm petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus*), black-bellied storm petrel (*Fregetta tropica*), sheathbill (*Chionis alba*), south polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*), brown skua (*Stercorarius lonnbergi*), Dominican gull (*Larus dominicanus*), and Antarctic tern (*Sterna vittata*).

Elephant seals (*Mirounga leonina*), Antarctic fur seals (*Arctocephalus gazella*), Weddell seals (*Leptonychotes weddellii*) rest and/or breed on a number of beaches within the Area. Leopard seals (*Hydrurga leptonyx*) and crabeater seals (*Lobodon carcinophagus*) frequent Admiralty Bay, and are occasionally present on beaches within the Area.

Rich terrestrial plant communities exist within the Area, including one of the most extensive areas colonized by the Antarctic hairgrass *Deschampsia antarctica* and the pearlwort *Colobanthus quitensis* in Antarctica. Extensive stands of moss from the families Andreaeaceae, Bryaceae, Polytrichaceae, Pottiaceae and Grimmiaceae are present, particularly near the coast up to 60 m above sea level. Lichen assemblages are more dominant at higher elevations. Rich microbial communities are also represented, including algae (e.g *Prasiola*, *Phormidium*), mites (from the Orders / Suborders Prostigmata, Mesostigmata and Oribatida) and nematodes (e.g. *Plectus* and *Panagrolaimus*).

The values to be protected are those associated with the exceptionally diverse assemblage of plants and animals, which is a representative example of the Maritime Antarctic ecosystem, and the long-term scientific studies that have been undertaken within the Area, especially since 1976. In particular, scientific studies undertaken within the Area have been important in relation to documenting and interpreting large-scale regional shifts in pygoscelid penguin populations that have been observed on the Antarctic Peninsula and its offshore islands over recent decades.

Recent exposure of new areas of ice-free ground as a result of glacial recession offers opportunities for studies of colonisation processes, which represents an additional scientific value of the Area. Implementation of a program to eradicate the known population of the non-native species *Poa annua* on the deglaciated moraines near Ecology Glacier was successful in 2015, and the site continues to be systematically monitored for potential recolonization. The whole Area is also monitored for the presence of other unintentionally introduced species.

2. Aims and objectives

Management at the western shore of Admiralty Bay aims to:

- Avoid degradation of, or substantial risk to, the values of the Area by preventing unnecessary human disturbance;
- Allow scientific research on the ecosystem of the Area, in particular on the avifauna, pinnipeds and terrestrial ecology, while ensuring protection from oversampling or other possible scientific impacts;
- Allow other scientific research, scientific support activities and visits for educational and outreach purposes (such as documentary reporting (visual, audio or written) or the production of educational resources or services) provided that such activities are for compelling reasons that cannot be served elsewhere and will not jeopardise the natural ecological system in the Area;
- Minimize the possibility of introduction of additional alien plants, animals and microbes to the Area;
- Minimize the possibility of the introduction of pathogens that may cause disease in faunal populations within the Area;
- To continue the on-going eradication program of the non-native grass *Poa annua* in the Area, systematically monitor its results, and to coordinate these strategies with those developed for the management of non-native species within ASMA No. 1 Admiralty Bay more generally; and
- Allow visits for management purposes in support of the aims of the management plan.

3. Management activities

The following management activities shall be undertaken to protect the values of the Area:

- Notices showing the location of the Area (stating the special restrictions that apply) shall be displayed prominently, and a copy of this management plan shall be kept available, at all permanent scientific stations located within Admiralty Bay;
- Copies of this management plan shall be made available to all vessels and aircraft visiting the Area and/or operating in the vicinity of the adjacent stations, and all pilots and ship captains operating in the region shall be informed of the location, boundaries and restrictions applying to entry and overflight within the Area;
- National programs shall take steps to ensure the boundaries of the Area and

the restrictions that apply within are marked on relevant maps and nautical / aeronautical charts;

- Signs illustrating the location and boundaries with clear statements of entry restrictions should be installed, as appropriate, at or near the northern boundary of the Area to help avoid inadvertent entry from the vicinity of nearby Arctowski Station (Poland). As appropriate, signs may be installed at hut facilities within the Area to help avoid inadvertent entry to the Area;
- Markers, signs or structures erected within the Area for scientific or management purposes shall be secured and maintained in good condition, and removed when no longer required;
- National Antarctic programs operating in the Area should maintain a record of all new markers, signs and structures erected within the Area;
- The presence of, and / or recolonization by, the non-native species *Poa annua* within the Area near Ecology Glacier should monitored and the eradication program (mechanical removal by hand tools) continued as necessary, with reports on the effectiveness of any control and eradication measures, including on measures taken to mitigate against further introductions of non-native species, made by National Antarctic programs operating in the Area at least once every five years in support of management plan reviews;
- Instruction on the provisions and contents of the Management Plan is the responsibility of national programs, tour operators, independent visitors or appropriate national authorities that have personnel (national program staff, field expeditions, tourist expedition leaders, independent visitors and pilots) who will be in the vicinity of, accessing (only under the terms of “General permit conditions”) or flying over the Area.
- Visits shall be made as necessary (no less than once every five years) to assess whether the Area continues to serve the purposes for which it was designated and to ensure management and maintenance measures are adequate;
- National Antarctic Programs operating in the region shall consult together with a view to ensuring that the above provisions are implemented.

4. Period of designation

Designated for an indefinite period.

5. Maps and photographs

Map 1. ASPA No. 128 Western Shore of Admiralty Bay, King George Island – Regional overview.
Inset: Location of King George Island, South Shetland Islands, Antarctic Peninsula. Topography and coastlines provided by Proantar, Brasil. Bathymetry: International Bathymetric Chart of the Southern Ocean (IBCSO) v1 (2013). Other data supplied by Environmental Research & Assessment.

Projection: Lambert Conformal Conic; Standard parallels: 1st 62°00' S; 2nd 62°15' S; Central Meridian: 58°15' W; Latitude of Origin 64°00 S; Spheroid and horizontal datum: WGS84.

Map 2. ASPA No. 128 Western Shore of Admiralty Bay: access, facilities & wildlife. Map specifications: Projection: UTM Zone 21S; Spheroid and horizontal datum: WGS84. Topography and bathymetry provided by Proantar, Brasil. Coastline updated from WorldView-1 imagery (Mar 2008; imagery © Digital Globe). Streams digitized from orthophoto map by Pudelko (1979). Location of *Poa annua*, small boat landing sites, marker and HSM No.51 supplied by Polish Antarctic Program. Other data supplied by Environmental Research & Assessment.

6. Description of the Area

6(i) Geographical co-ordinates, boundary markers and natural features

- *General description*

The Area is situated on the western shore of Admiralty Bay on the south side of King George Island, which is the largest of the South Shetland Islands archipelago. Arctowski Station (Poland) is situated 0.5 km to the north. The Area comprises ice-free terrain including steep crags of up to 400 m in elevation with more gentle morainic slopes interspersed by several glaciers extending down to the coast. The shoreline consists of broad pebbly beaches interrupted by rocky headlands. The Area is ~17 km².

- *Boundaries and coordinates*

The eastern boundary of the Area follows the coastline on the western shore of Admiralty Bay from the SE extremity of Halfmoon Cove (58°27'49"W, 62°09'44"S) for ~ 6 km SSE to Demay Point (Map 2). The boundary thence follows the coastline SW around Paradise Cove and Uchatka Point approximately 3.5 km to Telefon (Patelnia) Point (58°28'28"W, 62°14'03"S). From Telefon Point the boundary extends northward in a straight line for ~2.3 km to The Tower (367 m; 58°28'48"W, 62°12'55"S), a distinctive peak above Tower Glacier. The boundary continues in this direction a further 5.3 km to Jardine Peak (285 m; 58°29'54"W, 62°10'03"S). The boundary descends eastward in a straight line from Jardine Peak for ~1.7 km to the highest point on Penguin Ridge, ~ 550 m from Arctowski Station. The boundary thence extends NE for ~0.3 km to the SE coast of Halfmoon Cove. A marker is placed in Halfmoon Cove on the northern boundary of the Area at 58°27'48.7" W 62°09'43.7" S, ~500 m southeast of Arctowski station (Map 2).

- *Climate*

The climate of the Area is typical of maritime Antarctica. Based on complementary data obtained at Arctowski Station (Poland) between 1977-2000 and from 2006 and at the Comandante Ferraz Station (Brazil) since 1984, the microclimate of Admiralty

Bay is characterized by an average annual temperature of around -l.8 °C and an average annual wind speed of approximately 6.5 m s^{-1}. Annual average precipitation equals 508.5 mm, humidity is 82% and pressure 991 hPa. The waters of Admiralty Bay have an annual temperature range of -1.8° to +4°C, being well mixed by tides and strongly influenced by currents and coastal upwelling (from ASMA No.1 Admiralty Bay Management Plan).

The climate has recently been changing under the influence of unstable pressure systems such as the Southern Annular Mode (SAM) and the El Nino Southern Oscillation (ENSO) (Bers *et al*. 2012). Rapid regional warming of air temperature on the Western Antarctic Peninsula (WAP) observed over the last 50 years is exceptional and unprecedented in comparison with the record from ice core data over the past 500 years (Vaughan and Doake 1996). The most recent reconstructions show a warming trend between 1957 - 2006 of 0.12 °C per decade for the whole Antarctic continent, and of 0.17 °C per decade for West Antarctica (Steig *et al*. 2009). Schloss *et al*. (2012) show the 50-year warming trend has yielded an average increase of air temperature of about 2.0° C in summer and 2.4° C in winter at nearby Carlini Station (Map 1). Kejna *et al*. (2013), analysing data from all available meteorological sources on King George Island and on Deception Island, showed a 1.2 °C increase in annual average air temperature and a 2.3 hPa decrease in atmospheric pressure over a comparable time period.

- *Geology, geomorphology and soils*

Geological investigations on King George Island prior to 1980 were performed by British, Argentinian, Russian and Chilean scientists, although the area within ASPA No. 128 was not described because it does not have any paternal lithostratigraphic rock sequences (for details see Birkenmajer 2003). The first geological map covering this area was presented by Birkenmajer (1980), republished with minor modifications in Birkenmajer (2003). The area of ASPA No.128 is included by Birkenmajer (2003) in the Warszawa tectonic block (terrane), that consists of Cretaceous, Paleocene, Eocene volcanic and pyroclastic rock with trace participation of sedimentary rocks. Volcanic rocks belong mainly to basalt, basaltic andesite, andesite intercalated with tuffs, scoria and volcanic breccia. Sediments bearing plant remains occur only in the thin horizon (<1 m) of the upper part of Zamek sections. Moreover, dispersed petrified wood is present in agglomerates of the Tower, and abundant fossil flora was present in reworked clastics of the Błaszczyk moraine. A rich collection of dicotyledonous leaf, represented mainly by the genus *Nothofagus* and by laurophyllos plant frond impressions as well as conifer shoot imprints, was gathered and described from this site (Birkenmajer & Zastawniak 1989; Zastawniak 1994; Dutra & Batten 2000). Several hypabyssal intrusions (plug, dykes, sills) of diversified patrographic and geochemical composition cut stratiform volcanic complexes of Warszawa Terrane (Barbieri *et al*. 1987). Isotopic analyses (^{40}Ar-^{39}Ar of rock and U-Pb of zircons) gave Eocene ages for most of the rocks from the Area considered previously as Cretaceous, including the fossil flora bearing formations (Nawrocki *et al*. 2011).

Poor tundra soils occurring in the maritime Antarctic climate are difficult to describe according to criteria used in traditional soil classification systems. The first ecological and intuitive soil classification covering the maritime Antarctic, including ASPA No.128, was proposed by Everett (1976). Schaefer *et al*. (2007) identified 20 soil-scape units in the Arctowski Station vicinity and classified them according to their vulnerability in a geo-environmental map, partly comparable to that of more formal soil units proposed by Blume *et al*. (2002). Particular attention has been focused in this region on coastal soils around penguin colonies, since their fertile ecosystems are highly productive and biologically diverse. Ornithogenic soils were fully described and mapped (or indicated on air photographs) in papers by Tatur & Myrcha (1984); Tatur (1989) and Tatur (2002). Ornithogenic soils of the maritime Antarctic were subdivided into: organic soils of the rookery (with hydroxyapatite); soils of the phosphatized zone (with Al-Fe phosphates bearing K and NH4 ions) and soils accumulated from inactive reworked phosphates. Moreover, relic soils at the locations of abandoned penguin colonies were distinguished and are an important feature in the Area. The phosphatization was described as a soil forming process, investigated also in other papers (e.g. Simas *et al*. 2007).

- *Glaciology, streams and lakes*

The Area is shaped by valley glaciers draining the Warszawa icefield, which are constrained at the sides by exposed bedrock. Isolated rocky hills are covered by rock rubble, with glaciers and glacial deposits filling depressions among them. Prominent early Holocene cliffs may be observed in the coastal zone. Holocene raised beaches (up to 16 m a.s.l.) and more recent beaches are comprised of sand with pebbles and boulders.

Several glaciers descend into the Area, flowing eastward from the Warszawa Icefield (Map 2). These have been in continuous retreat for at least the last 30 years, with former tidal glacier fronts retreating up to 900 m inland between 1997–2007 (Battke *et al*. 2001; Pudełko 2007), which is consistent with a global warming trend and a local reduction in the size of floating glaciers in Admiralty Bay (Braun & Gossmann 2002) . The ice-free area of ASPA No128 has increased from 20% in 1979 to more than 50% in 1999 (Battke *et al*. 2001) and continues to increase. Retreating glaciers deposited bands of ridges formed by fresh lateral moraines and ground moraines on the flat areas at the front of glaciers, often with brackish water lagoons collecting glacial meltwaters mixed with seawater (Ecology, Baranowski, and Windy glaciers). Newly exposed land and new water bodies are colonized by biota that create a unique opportunity to study succession processes in the Antarctic environment (Olech & Massalski 2001).

A number of small meltwater streams are present within the Area, mainly originating from the outlet glaciers flowing down from the Warszawa Icefield (Map 2).

- *Terrestrial ecology*

Vegetation typical of the maritime Antarctic has partially colonised the ice-free terrain within the Area. Dry areas and rocks are colonised by lichens, with flowering plants such as *Deschampsia antarctica* and *Colobanthus quitensis* locally numerous and occupying fairly large areas particularly in the vicinity of Arctowski Station. This constitutes one of the largest areas covered by these species in the Antarctic. Bryophyta and flowering plants dominate the vegetation from 0 to 60 m a.s.l., while lichens are more dominant above this elevation. Mosses can be found from the families Andreaeaceae, Bryaceae, Polytrichaceae, Pottiaceae and Grimmiaceae. Around penguin colonies the species richness and diversity is lower due to the high nitrate and ammonia content of the soil (Olech 2002; Victoria, Pereira, and Pinheiro 2009).

One alien species of grass, *Poa annua*, was observed in 2008-09 within the Area on the deglaciated moraines of the Ecology Glacier (Olech & Chwedorzewska 2011) (approximate location 58° 27' 54"W 62° 10' 7"S, Map 2). This species was first recorded outside of the Area, at Arctowski Station, in summer 1985-86 (Olech 1996), first in places where the soil structure had been disturbed by human activities and later within native vegetation communities (Olech unpublished, after Chwedorzewska 2008)). High genetic variability suggests several separate immigration events from different sources, including Europe and South America (Chwedorzewska 2008).

Recently, propagules and pollen of the rush *Juncus bufonius* were found in one location within the Area (Cuba-Diaz *et al*. 2012).

Three different types of mite are present in the Area: Prostigmata, Mesostigmata and Oribatida. Prostigmata is the dominant community and Oribatida is only found in ice free areas that have been ice-free for more than 30 years (Gryziak 2009).

Glacial recession has exposed new ice-free areas that are being successively colonized by microbial and invertebrate communities including algae, mites and nematodes, as well as lichens, mosses and vascular plants. The pioneer species that appeared first were the moss *Bryum pseudotriquetrum*, and then the grass *Deschampsia antarctica*. In the second stage of succession the dominance of *Colobanthus quitensis* was marked. The first rock-inhabiting lichens (*Caloplaca johnstoni*, *C. sublobulata, Lecanora* spp.) appeared in the third stage of succession. The substantial influence of penguin colonies, which occur in the Telefon (Patelnia) Point region, was revealed in the fourth stage. On rocks the ornithocoprophilous communities of epilithic lichens dominated, while on soil the grass *Deschampsia antarctica* with the nitrophilous algae (*Prasiola crispa*, *Phormidium* spp.) and mosses (e.g. *Syntrichia magellanica*) were prominent (Olech & Massalski 2001). The abundance of nematodes increases with the age of the ice free area and common species present are *Plectus* and *Panagrolaimus* (Ilieva-Makulec & Gryziak 2009).

- *Breeding birds*

Twelve bird species regularly breed within the Area, the most numerous of which are penguins. In 2017/18 there were 6136 breeding pairs of Adélie penguin (*Pygoscelis adeliae*), 666 breeding pairs of chinstrap penguin (*Pygoscelis antarcticus*) and 7087 breeding pairs of gentoo penguin (*Pygoscelis papua*) (unpublished data Polish Ecological Monitoring program, Korczak-Abshire pers. comm. 2019). Interannual variation in breeding pairs is large for all these species, with changes in some years in excess of 40% (Ciaputa & Sierakowski 1999). Significant decreases in average penguin breeding numbers were observed between the four-year periods of 1978-81 and 2014-18, when an average decrease of ~66% was observed for Adélie penguins and over 87% for chinstrap penguins, while gentoo penguins have increased by 216%. These trends are consistent with those observed for these species at other nearby colonies on King George Island, in particular those at Lions Rump (Korczak-Abshire *et al*. 2013), Turret Point (Korczak-Abshire *et al*. 2018) and Stranger Point (Carlini *et al*. 2009). Hinke *et al*. (2017) modelled future trends in the Copacabana Adélie penguin colony based on almost 30 years of historical data (1982-2011), finding a one in three probability of >90% declines in the local population over the next 30 years, and a near 100% probability for a decline of 50%, given status-quo conditions. New methods to monitor seabird breeding performance within the Area are being applied using autonomous time-lapse photography, which is an important component of the CCAMLR Ecosystem Monitoring Program to inform fisheries management (Hinke *et al*. 2018).

The regional trends and breeding data suggest differential over-winter survival between the species (Hinke *et al*. 2007, Carlini *et al*. 2009), which relates to influences remote from nesting sites within the Area. Therefore, the changes being observed in populations at breeding sites within the Area are not considered related to human pressures or impacts occurring within the Area.

Table 1: Four-year averages of numbers of penguin breeding pairs within ASPA 128 (based on data from Ciaputa & Sierakowski 1999, US AMLR program unpublished data, Polish Ecological Monitoring program - unpublished data, Korczak-Abshire - pers. comm. 2019).

Species	**Location**	**Census Period**				**Average change (1978-81 to 2009-12)**	**Percent change (1978-81 to 2009-12)**	**Average change (1978-81 to 2009-12)**	**Percent change (1978-81 to 2014-17)**
		1978-81	**1992-96**	**2009-2012**	**2014-2017**				
Pygoscelis adeliae	Llano Point	10859	6073	2454	2853	-8405		-8006	
	Point Thomas	11899	9886	4578	4740	-7321		-7159	
	Total	*22758*	*15959*	*7032*	*7593*	*-15726*	*-69.1%*	*-15165*	*-66.60%*
Pygoscelis antarcticus	Telefon Point	2029	1511	604	461	-1425		-1568	
	Uchatka Point	1944	909	292	236	-1652		-1708	
	Demay Point	819	263	52	15	-767		-804	
	Llano Point	347	8	2	10	-345		-337	
	Point Thomas	541	1	0	1	-541		-540	
	Total	*5681*	*2692*	*950*	*723*	*-4731*	*-83.3%*	*-4958*	*-87.21%*

Pygoscelis papua	Llano Point	2174	1765	4646	6162	2472		3988	
	Point Thomas	715	267	90	76	-625		-639	
	Total	*2889*	*2032*	*4736*	*6238*	*1847*	*+63.9%*	*3349*	*215.90%*

Nine other bird species breed within the Area: Southern giant petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*); cape petrel (*Daption capense*); Wilson's storm petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus*); black-bellied storm petrel (*Fregetta tropica*); American sheathbill (*Chionis alba*); Dominican gull (*Larus dominicanus*); Antarctic tern (*Sterna vittata*); south polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) and brown skua (*S. lonnbergi*) . Data for the latter two species show successful breeding was rare in the 2012-13 season (Table 2), when no south polar skua or mixed pairs bred. Despite the poor skua breeding performance in that season, numerous birds were present on territories (Hinke pers. comm. 2013, U.S. AMLR program). Recent data (Hinke pers. comm. 2018) show the number of breeding pairs has recovered since the low in 2012/13, and while still considerably fewer than in 2004/05 the total population is at a level similar to that in 1978/79.

Table 2: Skua breeding pair census (Carneiro *et al*. 2009, US AMLR program unpublished data Hinke pers. comm. 2018)

Location	**Brown Skua**			**South Polar Skua**			**Mixed Skua**			**Total**		
	2004-2005	2012-2013	2016-2017	2004-2005	2012-2013	2016-2017	2004-2005	2012-2013	2016-2017	2004-2005	2012-2013	2016-2017
Llano Point to Telefon Point	21	11	16	27	0	21	6	0	1	54	11	38
Point Thomas	21	7	12	45	0	14	10	0	2	76	7	28

Four other penguin species (king (*Aptenodytes patagonicus*), emperor (*Aptenodytes forsteri*), rockhopper (*Eudyptes chrysocome*) and Magellanic (*Spheniscus magellanicus*)) are occasionally observed within the Area. Other Antarctic bird species (e.g. snow petrel (*Pagodroma nivea*)) are also occasionally observed within the Area (Gryz *et al*. 2018, Sierakowski *et al*. 2017)).

Seven South American bird species have been observed within the Area as stray visitors that remained only temporarily: cattle egret (*Bubulcus ibis*), black-necked swan (*Cygnus melanocoryphus*), Chiloe wigeon (*Anas sibilatrix*), Yellow-billed pintail (*Anas georgica*), white-rumped sandpiper (*Calidris fuscicollis*), Wilson's phalarope (*Pharalopus tricolor*) and barn swallow (*Hirundo rustica*) (Poland 2002; Korczak-Abshire, Lees & Jojczyk 2011; Korczak-Abshire, Angiel & Wierzbicki 2011).

Antarctic Important Bird Area (IBA) No. 046 West Admiralty Bay lies within the Area, which was identified for its large colony of Gentoo penguins and the concentration of seabirds present (Harris *et al*. 2015). Dias *et al*. (2018) identified the adjacent marine area, including all of Admiralty Bay and extending ~20 km into

Bransfield Strait, as an important foraging ground for penguins breeding on the western shore of Admiralty Bay.

- *Breeding mammals*

Elephant seals (*Mirounga leonina*), Antarctic fur seals (*Arctocephalus gazella*) and Weddell seals (*Leptonychotes weddellii*) are present on beaches at numerous sites, although only elephant seals and occasionally Weddell seals breed within the Area. In 2009-10 six elephant seal harems with 238 pups were observed within the Area (Map 2), while in the same year the maximum number of fur seals exceeded 1290 individuals (Korczak-Abshire, pers. comm.). Four Weddell seal pups were observed in the Point Thomas area in 2011 (Korczak-Abshire, pers. comm. 2019). Annual seal censuses have been conducted by Poland year-round once every ten days since 1988 (Ciaputa 1996; Salwicka & Sierakowski 1998; Salwicka & Rakusa-Suszczewski 2002). A strong annual cycle in numbers is evident, with the number of elephant seals reaching a maximum from December to February and Antarctic fur seals showing a high peak around February and another lower peak around June. Leopard seals (*Hydrurga leptonyx*) and crabeater seals (*Lobodon carcinophagus*) are frequently seen on ice floes during the winter, although rarely come ashore (Salwicka & Rakusa-Suszczewski 2002).

- *Human activities / impacts*

The permanent year-round station Henryk Arctowski (Poland) (58°28'15"W, 62°09'34"S) situated 0.5 km north of the Area (Map 1) has been occupied continuously since 1977 and can host up to 70 people during the summer, and 20 during winter. Several other permanent national program stations are located nearby within Admiralty Bay, including Ferraz (Brazil) (~9.5 km from the Area), Machu Picchu (Peru) (~7.6 km from the Area) and Vincente (Ecuador) (~5.2 km from the Area). Activities of national programs operating with the region are coordinated under the management plan for ASMA No. 1 Admiralty Bay.

A semi-permanent summer-only field camp (US) (58°26'49"W, 62°10'46"S) is situated within the Area south of Llano Point (Map 2). Known as ‘Copacabana’, the field camp, which has capacity for up to six people, has been occupied by ornithologists every summer season since it was established in 1985.

A small (16 m^2, 4 berth) wooden refuge (Poland) (58°26'32"W, 62°13'03"S) is situated ~300 m NW of Uchatka Point near the shore of Paradise Cove. The hut is used mostly by researchers who study the pinniped and penguin colonies located in the southern part of the Area. The refuge also serves as a base camp for glaciologists, geologists and botanists working on Baranowski and Windy Glaciers.

Admiralty Bay has been a perennial destination for tourism due to its location, historic and ecological values, and the interest provided by permanent scientific stations. Arctowski Station has been particularly popular (Chwedorzewska & Korczak 2010), with a peak of over 5000 visitors in 2007/08, although in recent years the number of tourists visiting per season has been around one to two thousand

(Table 3). The principal activities conducted are station visits, with extended walks, kayaking and small boat cruises also being undertaken near to, but outside of, the Area.

Table 3: Number of tourist visits to Arctowski Station 2016-18 (Source: IAATO)

Season	Number of Tourists (landed and non-landed)	Number of Tourists Landed only	Number of Vessels
2016-17	871	871	5
2017-18	2106	2106	6

The level of visitation at Arctowski Station makes the Area relatively vulnerable to the introduction of non-native species. One such species, the grass *Poa annua*, has established a stable population at Arctowski Station (Olech 1996), and was present on a deglaciated moraine inside the Area (approximate location 58° 27' 54"W 62° 10' 7"S, Map 2). At the latter site approximately 70 individuals were reported spread over an area of 100 m^2 in 2011 (Olech and Chwedorzewska 2011). Poland is supporting further research on survival and dispersion of *Poa annua* in the region (Chwedorzewska *et al.* 2015, Wódkiewicz *et al.* 2017, Galera *et al.* 2018, Rudak *et al.* 2018), and since 2014/15 it has embarked on a systematic eradication/monitoring program (Galera *et al.* 2017). A survey grid was established in the vicinity of Arctowski Station over an area of 4.59 ha. Within this area, approximately 25% of the identified population of *Poa annua* was eradicated by experienced scientists in early 2015, accomplished by excavation up to 10 cm depth using hand tools (Galera *et al.* 2017). Within the Area and at the same time, all of the known population located in the glacial forefield near Ecology Glacier was removed.

Galera *et al.* (2017) estimated that the cumulative total excavated area was 0.1 m^2 at the Arctowski Station site and 0.0025 m^2 and Ecology Glacier site respectively, and therefore concluded that the magnitude and extent of disturbance to local ecosystems by the eradication process was thus far negligible. Plant removal sites were accurately mapped and marked in the field for subsequent monitoring. Work continues to remove the remaining invasive plants and to monitor for recolonization, although it is acknowledged that, owing to biological characteristics of the species, total eradication may be difficult to achieve (Galera *et al*. 2017).

A survey of moraines within the Area in the Ecology Glacier forefield was repeated in 2015/16. Three seedlings of *P. annua* were found, which were documented and removed by hand tools, with the sites marked for on-going monitoring (Poland 2016). This area was re-surveyed in March 2017 and no new *P. annua* seedlings were found (Poland 2017). Also in March 2017, additional *P. annua* plants were removed from the Arctowski Station vicinity (Poland 2017). Most recently, between January – April 2018 ~1500 more *P. annua* plants were removed by hand, together with roots and topsoil, from the vicinity of Arctowski Station. In this season several plants were also discovered and removed from within the Area (again in the glacial forefield of Ecology Glacier), indicating on-going monitoring for re-colonisation remains necessary and is planned to continue (Potocka pers. comm. 2018).

Historical, morphometric and genetic analyses revealed that the population in the vicinity of Arctowski Station had most likely originated from multiple introductions from Poland and perhaps also South America (Chwedorzewska *et al*. 2015; Galera *et al*. 2017), while the Ecology Glacier population within the Area had most likely been transferred directly from the station area by human activity rather than aerial dispersal (Wódkiewicz *et al*. 2017). Thus, eradication of the invasive species from the vicinity of Arctowski Station is important to preventing further and repeated introductions to the Area.

6(ii) Access to the Area

The Area may be accessed by traversing over land or sea ice, by sea or by air. Particular routes have not been designated for access to the Area. Small boat access, overflight and aircraft landing restrictions apply within the Area, the specific conditions for which are set out in Section 7(ii) below.

6(iii) Location of structures within and adjacent to the Area

Two structures are located within the Area (Map 2): Copacabana Field Camp (US)(58° 26' 49.27" W 62° 10' 45.89" S), located ~500 m south of Llano Point and consisting of three wooden huts to accommodate up to six people. A four-berth wooden refuge (Poland) (58° 26' 32.27" W 62° 13' 2.9" S) is located in Paradise Cove ~1.2 km SW of Demay Point.

6(iv) Location of other protected areas in the vicinity

ASPA No.125, Fildes Peninsula, King George Island (25 de Mayo), and ASPA No 150, Ardley Island, Maxwell Bay, King George Island (25 de Mayo), lie ~27 km west of the Area (Map 1). ASPA No.132, Potter Peninsula, , and ASPA No.171 Narebski Point, Barton Peninsula, lie ~15 km and ~19 km to the west respectively on King George Island (25 de Mayo). ASPA No.151, Lion's Rump, King George Island, lies ~20 km to the east of the Area (Map 1). Historic Monument No.51, consisting of the grave of Wlodzimierz Puchalski surmounted by an iron cross, is situated ~80 m outside of the northern boundary of the Area (Map 2).

The Area lies within Antarctic Specially Managed Area (ASMA) No. 1 Admiralty Bay, King George Island, South Shetland Islands (Map 1).

6(v) Special zones within the Area

There are no zones designated within the Area.

7. Terms and conditions for entry permits

7(i) General permit conditions

Entry into the Area is prohibited except in accordance with a Permit issued by an appropriate national authority. Conditions for issuing a permit for the Area are that:

- It is issued for scientific research, and in particular for research on the avifauna in the Area, or for compelling scientific, educational or outreach reasons that cannot be served elsewhere, or for reasons essential to the management of the Area;
- The actions permitted are in accordance with this Management Plan;
- The activities permitted will give due consideration via the environmental impact assessment process to the continued protection of the environmental and scientific values of the Area;
- Approach distances to fauna must be respected, except when the scientific projects may require otherwise and this is specified in the relevant permits;
- The Permit shall be issued for a finite period;
- The Permit, or a copy, shall be carried when in the Area.

7(ii) Access to, and movement within or over, the Area

Access into the Area is permitted on foot, by small boat or by aircraft. Vehicles are prohibited within the Area. Access to bird breeding areas during the breeding season (01 October to 31 March) is restricted to visitors conducting or supporting scientific research, carrying out educational or outreach activities consistent with the aims and objectives of the management plan, or undertaking essential management activities.

- *Foot access and movement within the Area*

Persons on foot should at all times avoid disturbance to birds and seals, and damage to vegetation. Pedestrians entering the Area from the vicinity of nearby Arctowski Station should be particularly mindful of the potential to transfer plant material or seeds of the invasive non-native grass *Poa annua* and observe the precautions set out below in Section 7(v) to minimize the risk of further spread.

Pedestrians should maintain the following minimum approach distances from wildlife, unless it is necessary to exceed these for purposes allowed for by the permit:

- Southern giant petrels (*Macronectes giganteus*) – 50 m
- breeding/moulting other birds and seals, and Antarctic fur seals (for personal safety) – 15 m
- non-breeding birds and seals – 5 m.

Pilots, air, or boat crew, or other people in boats or aircraft are prohibited from moving on foot beyond the immediate vicinity of their landing site or the hut facilities unless specifically authorised by Permit. Visitors should move carefully so as to minimize disturbance to flora, fauna, and soils, and should walk on snow or rocky terrain where practical and avoid vegetated areas. Where possible avoid moist ground where foot traffic can easily damage sensitive soils, plant and algal communities, and degrade water quality. Pedestrian traffic should be kept to the minimum consistent with the objectives of any permitted activities and every reasonable effort should be made to minimize effects.

- *Small boat access*

Access from the sea is permitted only by small boat. Access to the beach area between Llano Point and Sphinx Hill (Map 2) from the sea is prohibited in order to avoid interference with animal communities that are the subject of long-term and ongoing research, except for the purpose of visiting 'Copacabana' Field Camp for purposes allowed for by Permit, or in an emergency. The recommended landing sites for small boats are at the following locations (Map 2):

- on the beaches at Halfmoon Cove or Arctowski Cove, both of which are outside of the Area where no permit for entry is required;
- on the beach immediately in front of 'Copacabana' Field Camp (US); or
- on the beach immediately in front of the refuge (PL) in Paradise Cove.

Access from the sea to any sites suitable for landing south of Sphinx Hill is allowed, provided this is consistent with the purposes for which a Permit has been granted. Visitors to the Area by small boat should inform Arctowski Station.

- *Access and overflight by piloted aircraft and Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS)*

Due to the widespread presence of seabirds and pinnipeds within the Area during the breeding season (01 October – 31 March), access to the Area by piloted aircraft in this period is strongly discouraged. All restrictions on aircraft access and overflight apply between 01 October – 31 March inclusive, when aircraft shall operate and land within the Area according to strict observance of the following conditions:

- Piloted aircraft should maintain a horizontal and vertical separation distance 2000 ft (~610 m) from the coast generally, and from the breeding wildlife colonies in particular, as identified on Map 2, unless otherwise authorized by permit;
- Weather with a low cloud ceiling often prevails over King George Island, particularly in the vicinity of the permanent ice caps such as the Warszawa Icefield. Piloted aircraft should avoid the Area unless it is possible to maintain safely the minimum horizontal and vertical separation distance of 2000 ft (~610 m) given above;
- Landing of helicopters within the Area is generally prohibited, except on permanent glaciers or in an emergency;
- Helicopters operating in the region may land at the designated landing site located at Arctowski Station (58°58.849"W, 62°11.577"S), which should be approached from the NE over Admiralty Bay. Helicopter overflight of the

northern boundary of Area where many birds and seals are present should be avoided;
- Use of smoke grenades to indicate wind direction is prohibited within the Area unless absolutely necessary for safety, and any grenades used should be retrieved;
- In circumstances not covered above piloted aircraft should, as a minimum standard, comply with the *Guidelines for the Operation of Aircraft near Concentrations of Birds* contained in Resolution 2 (2004);
- Overflight below 2000 ft (610 m) and landings within the Area by Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS) are prohibited except in accordance with a permit issued by an appropriate national authority. RPAS use within the Area should follow the Environmental Guidelines for Operation of Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS) in Antarctica (Resolution 4 (2018)).

7(iii) Activities that may be conducted within the Area

- Scientific research that will not jeopardize the ecosystem or values of the Area;
- Activities with educational and / or outreach purposes that cannot be served elsewhere;
- Activities with the aim of preserving or protecting historic resources within the Area;
- Essential management activities, including management of non-native species within the Area, monitoring and inspection;
- Activities at the site within the Area known to be colonised by the invasive grass *Poa annua* (Map 2) are specifically restricted to research or management related to the non-native species, and other access to this site is prohibited unless access is necessary for other compelling scientific or management reason(s) that cannot be served elsewhere. Those accessing the site shall take precautions not to spread the grass further by thoroughly inspecting and cleaning footwear, equipment and clothing before moving to another location both within or outside of the Area.

7(iv) Installation, modification or removal of structures / equipment

- No structures are to be erected within the Area except as specified in a permit and, with the exception of permanent survey markers and signs, additional permanent structures or installations are prohibited;
- All structures, scientific equipment or markers installed in the Area must be authorized by permit and clearly identified by country, name of the principal investigator, year of installation and date of expected removal. All such items should be free of organisms, propagules (e.g. seeds, eggs) and non-sterile soil, and be made of materials that can withstand the environmental conditions and pose minimal risk of contamination or damage to the values of the Area;
- Installation (including site selection), maintenance, modification or removal

of structures or equipment shall be undertaken in a manner that minimizes disturbance to values of the Area, preferably avoiding the main breeding season (01 Oct – 31 Mar);

- Removal of specific structures / equipment for which the permit has expired shall be the responsibility of the authority which granted the original permit, and shall be a condition of the permit.

7(v) Location of field camps

The facilities 'Copacabana' Field Camp (United States) and refuge (Poland) at Paradise Cove (Map 2) provide limited accommodation for scientific use subject to the permission of the appropriate authority. Camping is prohibited elsewhere within the Area.

7(vi) Restrictions on materials and organisms that may be brought into the Area

In addition to the requirements of the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, restrictions on materials and organisms that may be brought into the area are:

- Deliberate introduction of animals, plant material, micro-organisms and non-sterile soil into the Area is prohibited. Precautions shall be taken to prevent the accidental introduction of animals, plant material, micro-organisms and non-sterile soil from other biologically distinct regions (within or beyond the Antarctic Treaty area).
- Visitors shall ensure that sampling equipment and markers brought into the Area are clean. To the maximum extent practicable, footwear and other equipment used or brought into the area (including backpacks, carry-bags and other equipment) shall be thoroughly cleaned before entering the Area. This is particularly important when travelling to the Area from nearby Arctowski Station where the invasive grass *Poa annua* has become established, and footwear and equipment that has potential to be contaminated should be cleaned before departing the station and not worn or used around the station before entering the Area. Visitors should also consult and follow as appropriate recommendations contained in the Committee for Environmental Protection Non-native Species Manual (CEP 2017), and in the Environmental Code of Conduct for Terrestrial Scientific Field Research in Antarctica (Resolution 5 (2018)).
- All poultry brought into and not consumed or used within the Area, including all parts, products and / or wastes of poultry, shall be removed from the Area or disposed of by incineration or equivalent means that eliminates risks to native flora and fauna;
- No herbicides or pesticides shall be brought into the Area;
- Fuel, food, chemicals, and other materials shall not be stored in the Area, unless specifically authorized by permit and shall be stored and handled in a way that minimises the risk of their accidental introduction into the environment;
- All materials introduced shall be for a stated period only and shall be

removed by the end of that stated period; and

- If release occurs which is likely to compromise the values of the Area, removal is encouraged only where the impact of removal is not likely to be greater than that of leaving the material *in situ*.

7(vii) Taking of, or harmful interference with, native flora or fauna

Taking or harmful interference with native flora and fauna is prohibited, except in accordance with a permit issued under Article 3 of Annex II of the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty. Where animal taking or harmful interference is involved, this should, as a minimum standard, be in accordance with the SCAR Code of Conduct for the Use of Animals for Scientific Purposes in Antarctica.

7(viii) Collection or removal of materials not brought into the Area by the permit holder

- Material may be collected or removed from the Area only in accordance with a Permit and should be limited to the minimum necessary to meet scientific or management needs. This includes biological samples, rock specimens, whale bones, artefacts of the whaling industry, and any other historical item.
- Material of human origin likely to compromise the values of the Area, and which was not brought into the Area by the permit holder or otherwise authorized, may be removed from the Area, unless the impact of removal is likely to be greater than leaving the material *in situ*: if this is the case the appropriate authority must be notified and approval obtained.

7(ix) Disposal of waste

All wastes shall be removed from the Area, except human wastes and domestic liquid wastes, which may be removed from the Area or disposed of into the sea.

7(x) Measures that may be necessary to continue to meet the aims of the Management Plan

Permits may be granted to enter the Area to:

- Carry out monitoring and Area inspection activities, which may involve the collection of a small number of samples or data for analysis or review;
- Install or maintain signposts, markers, structures or scientific or essential logistic equipment;
- Carry out protective measures, which may include mechanical removal of non-native species by hand tools;
- Carry out research or management in a manner that avoids interference with long-term research and monitoring activities or possible duplication of effort. Persons planning new projects within the Area should consult with

established programs working within the Area, such as those of Poland and the US, before initiating the work.

7(xi) Requirements for reports

- The principal permit holder for each visit to the Area shall submit a report to the appropriate national authority as soon as practicable after the visit has been completed in accordance with national procedures.
- Such reports should include, as appropriate, the information identified in the visit report form contained in the Guide to the Preparation of Management Plans for Antarctic Specially Protected Areas (Resolution 2 (2011)). If appropriate, the national authority should also forward a copy of the visit report to the Parties that proposed the Management Plan, to assist in managing the Area and reviewing the Management Plan.
- Parties should, wherever possible, deposit originals or copies of such original visit reports in a publicly accessible archive to maintain a record of usage, for the purpose of any review of the Management Plan and in organising the scientific use of the Area.
- The appropriate authority should be notified of any activities / measures undertaken, and / or of any materials released and not removed, that were not included in the authorized permit.

8. Supporting documentation

Barbieri, M, K Birkenmajer, MC Delitala, L Francalanci, W Narbski, M Nicoletti, A Peccerillo, A Petrucciniani, L Tolomeo, and C Trudu. 1987. Preliminary geological, geochemical and Sr isotopic investigations on Mesozoic to Cenozoic magmatism of King George Island, South Shetland Islands (West Antarctica). *Mineralogical and Petrological Acta (Bologna)* **37**: 37–49.

Battke, Z, A Marsz, and R Pudełko. 2001. Procesy deglacjacji na obszarze SSSI No. 8 i ich uwarunkowania klimatyczne oraz hydrologiczne (zatoka Admiralicji, Wyspa Króla Jerzego, Szetlandy Południowe). *Problemy Klimatologii Polarnej* **11**: 121–135.

Bers, AV, F Momo, IR Schloss, and D Abele. 2012. Analysis of trends and sudden changes in long-term environmental data from King George Island (Antarctica): relationships between global climatic oscillations and local system response. *Climatic Change*. doi:10.1007/s10584-012-0523-4.

Birkenmajer, K. 1980. Geology of Admiralty Bay, King George Island (South Shetland Islands). An outline. *Polish Polar Research* **1**: 29–54.

———. 2003. Geological Results of Polish Antarctic Expeditions: Admiralty Bay, King George Island, South Shetland Islands West Antarctica. Geological map. *Studia Geologica Polonica* **120**: 1–73.

Birkenmajer, K, and E Zastawniak. 1989. Late Crataceous-Early Tertiary floras of King George Island, West Antarctica: their stratigraphic distribution and paleoclimatic significance. In *Origin and Evolution of Antarctic Biota. Geological Society of London, Special Publication,47*, edited by A J Crame, 227–240.

Blume, H-P, D Kuhn, and M Bölter. 2002. Soils and Soilscapes. In *Geoecology of Antarctic Ice−free Coastal Landscapes, Ecological Studies 154*, edited by L. Beyer and M Bölter, 91–113. Springer, Berlin.
Braun, M, and H Gossmann. 2002. Glacial changes in the areas of Admiralty Bay and Potter Cove, King George Island, maritime Antarctica. In *Geoecology and Antarctic Ice-Free Coastal Landscapes*, edited by L. Beyer and M Bölter, 75–89. Springer, Berlin.
Carlini, AR, NR Coria, MM Santos, J Negrete, M a. Juares, and G a. Daneri. 2009. Responses of *Pygoscelis adeliae* and *P. papua* populations to environmental changes at Isla 25 de Mayo (King George Island). *Polar Biology* **32** (10) (May 16): 1427–1433. doi:10.1007/s00300-009-0637-y. http://link.springer.com/10.1007/s00300-009-0637-y.
Carneiro, APB, MJ Polito, M Sander, and WZ Trivelpiece. 2009. Abundance and spatial distribution of sympatrically breeding *Catharacta* spp. (skuas) in Admiralty Bay, King George Island, Antarctica. *Polar Biology* **33** (5) (November 8): 673–682. doi:10.1007/s00300-009-0743-x. http://link.springer.com/10.1007/s00300-009-0743-x.
Chwedorzewska, KJ. 2008. *Poa annua* L. in Antarctic: searching for the source of introduction. *Polar Biology* **31**: 263–268. doi:10.1007/s00300-007-0353-4.
Chwedorzewska, KJ, and M Korczak. 2010. Human impact upon the environment in the vicinity of *Arctowski* Station, King George Island, Antarctica. *Polish Polar Research* **31** (1) (January 1): 45–60. doi:10.4202/ppres.2010.04. http://versita.metapress.com/openurl.asp?genre=article&id=doi:10.4202/ppres.2010.04.
Chwedorzewska K.J., Giełwanowska I., Olech M., Molina-Montenegro M.A., Wódkiewicz M. and Galera H. 2015. *Poa annua* L. in the maritime Antarctic: an overview. *Polar Record* **51**: 637-43.
Ciaputa, P. 1996. Numbers of pinnipeds during 1994 in Admiralty Bay, King George Island, South Shetland Islands. *Polish Polar Research* **17**: 239–244.
Ciaputa, P. and K Sierakowski. 1999. Long-term population changes of Adelie, chinstrap, and gentoo penguins in the regions of SSSI No. 8 and SSSI No. 34, King George Island, Antarctica. *Polish Polar Research* **20** (4): 355–365.
CEP (Committee for Environmental Protection). 2017. Non-Native Species Manual: Revision 2017. Secretariat of the Antarctic Treaty, Buenos Aires.
Cuba-Diaz, M, JM Troncoso, C Cordero, VL Finot, and M Rondanelli-Reyes. 2012. *Juncus bufonius*, a new non-native vascular plant in King George Island, South Shetland Islands. *Antarctic Science* **1** (1): 1–2.
Dias M., Carniero, A., Warwick-Evans, V., Harris, C., Lorenz, K., Lascelles, B., Clewlow, H., Dunn, M., Hinke, J., Kim, J-H., Kokobun, N., Manco, F., Ratcliffe, N., Santos, M., Takahashi, A., Trivelpiece, W. & Trathan, P. 2018. Identification of marine Important Bird and Biodiversity Areas for penguins around the South Shetland Islands and South Orkney Islands. *Ecology and Evolution* **8**: 10520-29.
Dutra, TL, and DJ Batten. 2000. Upper Cretaceous floras of King George Island, West Antarctica, and their palaeoenvironmental and phytogeographic implications. *Cretaceous Research* **21**: 181–209. doi:10.1006/cres.2000.0221. http://linkinghub.elsevier.com/retrieve/pii/S0195667100902210.

Everett, KR. 1976. A survey of soils in the region of the South Shetland Islands and adjacent parts of the Antarctica Peninsula. *Ohio State University Institute for Polar Studies Reports* **58**: 1–44.

Galera H., Chwedorzewska K.J., Korczak-Abshire M. and Wódkiewicz M. 2018. What affects the probability of biological invasions in Antarctica? Using an expanded conceptual framework to anticipate the risk of alien species expansion. *Biodiversity and Conservation* . ISSN 0960-3115

Galera H., Wódkiewicz M., Czyż E., Łapiński S., Kowalska E., Pasik M., Rajner M., Bylina P. and Chwedorzewska K.J. 2017. First step to eradication of *Poa annua* L. from Point Thomas Oasis (King George Island, South Shetlands, Antarctica). *Polar Biology* **40**: 939-45.

Gryz P., Gerlée A., Korczak-Abshire M. 2018. New breeding site and records of King Penguin (*Aptenodytes patagonicus*) on the King George Island (South Shetlands, Western Antarctic). Polar Record https://doi.org/10.1017/S0032247418000554

Gryziak, G. 2009. Colonization by mites of glacier-free areas. *Pesquisa Agropecuária Brasileira* **44** (8): 891–895.

Harris, C.M., Lorenz, K., Fishpool, L.D.C., Lascelles, B., Cooper, J., Coria, N.R., Croxall, J.P., Emmerson, L.M., Fijn, R.C., Fraser, W.L., Jouventin, P., LaRue, M.A., Le Maho, Y., Lynch, H.J., Naveen, R., Patterson-Fraser, D.L., Peter, H.-U., Poncet, S., Phillips, R.A., Southwell, C.J., van Franeker, J.A., Weimerskirch, H., Wienecke, B., & Woehler, E.J. 2015. *Important Bird Areas in Antarctica 2015*. BirdLife International and Environmental Research & Assessment Ltd., Cambridge.

Hinke, JT, K Salwicka, SG Trivelpiece, GM Watters, and WZ Trivelpiece. 2007. Divergent responses of Pygoscelis penguins reveal a common environmental driver. *Oecologia* **153** (4) (October): 845–55. doi:10.1007/s00442-007-0781-4. http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/17566778.

Hinke, J.T., Trivelpiece, S.G. & Trivelpiece, W. 2017. Variable vital rates and the risk of population declines in Adélie penguins from the Antarctic Peninsula region. *Ecosphere* **8**. e01666. doi: 10.1002/ecs2.1666.

Hinke, J., Barbosa, A.M., Emmerson, L., Hart, T., Alejandra, J., Korczak-Abshire, M., Milinevsky, G., Santos, M., Trathan, P.M., Watters, G. & Southwell, C. 2018. Estimating nest-level phenology and reproductive success of colonial seabirds using time-lapse cameras. *Methods in Ecology and Evolution* **9**. doi 10.1111/2041-210X.13015.

Ilieva-Makulec, K, and G Gryziak. 2009. Response of soil nematodes to climate-induced melting of Antarctic Glaciers. *Polish Journal of Ecology* **57** (4): 811–816.

Kejna, M, A Araźny, and I Sobota. 2013. Climatic change on King George Island in the years 1948 – 2011. *Polish Polar Research* **34** (2): 213–235. doi:10.2478/popore.

Korczak-Abshire, M, PJ Angiel, and G Wierzbicki. 2011. Records of white-rumped sandpiper (Calidris fuscicollis) on the South Shetland Islands. *Polar Record* **47** (3): 262–267.

Korczak-Abshire, M, AC Lees, and A Jojczyk. 2011. First documented record of barn swallow (Hirundo rustica) in the Antarctic. *Polish Journal of Ecology* **32** (4): 355–360. doi:10.2478/v10183.

Korczak-Abshire, M, M Węgrzyn, PJ Angiel, and M Lisowska. 2013. Pygoscelid penguins breeding distribution and population trends at Lions Rump rookery, King George Island. *Polish Polar Research* **34** (1): 87–99. doi:10.2478/popore.

Korczak-Abshire M., Zmarz A., Rodzewicz M., Kycko M., Karsznia I., Chwedorzewska K. J. 2018. Study of fauna population changes on Penguin Island and Turret Point Oasis (King George Island, Antarctica) using Unmanned Aerial Vehicle. Polar Biology. https://doi.org/10.1007/s00300-018-2379-1

Nawrocki, J, M Pańczyk, and IS Williams. 2011. Isotopic ages of selected magmatic rocks from King George Island (West Antarctica) controlled by magnetostratigraphy. *Geological Quarterly* **55** (4): 301–322.

Olech, M. 1996. Human impact on terrestrial ecosystems in West Antarctica. In *Proceedings of the NIPR Symposium on Polar Biology, 9*, 299–306.

———. 2002. Plant communities on King George Island. In *Geoecology of Antarctic Ice-Free Coastal Landscapes. Ecological Studies*, edited by L. Beyer and M Bölter, 215–231. Springer, Berlin.

Olech, M, and KJ Chwedorzewska. 2011. The first appearance and establishment of an alien vascular plant in natural habitats on the forefield of a retreating glacier in Antarctica. *Antarctic Science* **23** (2): 153–154.

Olech, M, and A Massalski. 2001. Plant colonization and community development on the Sphinx Glacier forefield. *Geographia* **25**: 111–119.

Poland, Government of. 2002. The long-term monitoring of avifauna in Admiralty Bay in light of the changes in the sea-ice zone ecosystem (South Shetland Islands, Antarctica). In 25th ATCM Information Paper IP−001 Agenda Item CEP 5. 2002.

Poland, Government of. 2016. Next step in eradication of non-native grass *Poa annua* L. from ASPA No 128 Western Shore of Admiralty Bay, King George Island, South Shetland Islands. Information Paper 060, XXXVIII ATCM held in Santiago, Chile, 23 May – 01 Jun 2016.

Poland, Government of. 2017. Eradication of a non-native grass *Poa annua* L. from ASPA No 128 Western Shore of Admiralty Bay, King George Island, South Shetland Islands. Information Paper 047, XL ATCM held in Beijing, China, 22 May – 01 Jun 2017.

Pudełko, R. 2007. Orthophotomap Western Shore of Admiralty Bay, King George Island, South Shetland Islands. Warsaw, Poland: Dept. Antarctic Biology PAS.

Rudak A., Wódkiewicz M., Znój A., Chwedorzewska K.J. and Galera H. 2018. Plastic biomass allocation as a trait increasing the invasiveness of annual bluegrass (*Poa annua* L.) in Antarctica. *Polar Biology* https://doi.org/10.1007/s00300-018-2409-z

Salwicka, K, and S Rakusa-Suszczewski. 2002. Long-term monitoring of Antarctic pinnipeds in Admiralty Bay. *Acta Theriologica* **47**: 443–457.

Salwicka, K, and K Sierakowski. 1998. Seasonal numbers of five species of seals in Admiralty Bay (South Shetland Islands, Antarctica). *Polish Polar Research* **3-4**: 235–247.

Schaefer, CEGR, RM Santana, FNB Simas, MR Francelino, EI Fernandes Filho, MA Albuquerque, and MI Calijuri. 2007. Geoenvironments from the vicinity of Arctowski Station, Admiralty Bay, King George Island, Antarctica: vulnerability and valuation assessment in Antarctica: A keystone in a changing wold. In *Online Proceedings of the ISAES, USGS Open−File Report 2007−1047, Short Research Paper 015*, edited by A K Cooper and C.R. Raymand, 1–4.

Schloss, IR, CA Michaud-Tremblay, and D Dumont. 2012. Modelling phytoplankton growth in polar coastal areas. International Polar Year (IPY) Conference "From knowledge to action". Montréal, Canada.

Sierakowski K., Korczak-Abshire M., Jadwiszczak P. 2017. Changes in bird communities of Admiralty Bay, King George Island (West Antarctica): insights from monitoring data (1977-1996). Polish Polar Research 38(2): 231–262.

Simas, FNB, CEGR Schaefer, VF Melo, MR Albuquerque-Filho, RFM Michel, V V. Pereira, MRM Gomes, and LM da Costa. 2007. Ornithogenic cryosols from Maritime Antarctica: Phosphatization as a soil forming process. *Geoderma* **138** (3-4): 191–203. doi:10.1016/j.geoderma.2006.11.011.

Steig, EJ, DP Schneider, SD Rutherford, ME Mann, JC Comiso, and DT Shindell. 2009. Warming of the Antarctic ice-sheet surface since the 1957 International Geophysical Year. *Nature* **457**: 459–462. doi:10.1038/nature08286.

Tatur, A. 1989. Ornithogenic soils of the maritime Antarctic. *Polish Polar Research* **10** (4): 481–532.

———. 2002. Ornithogenic ecosystems in the Maritime Antarctic – Formation, development and disintegration. In *Geoecology of Antarctic Ice−free Coastal Landscapes. Ecological Studies 154*, edited by L. Beyer and M Bölter, 161–184. Springer, Berlin.

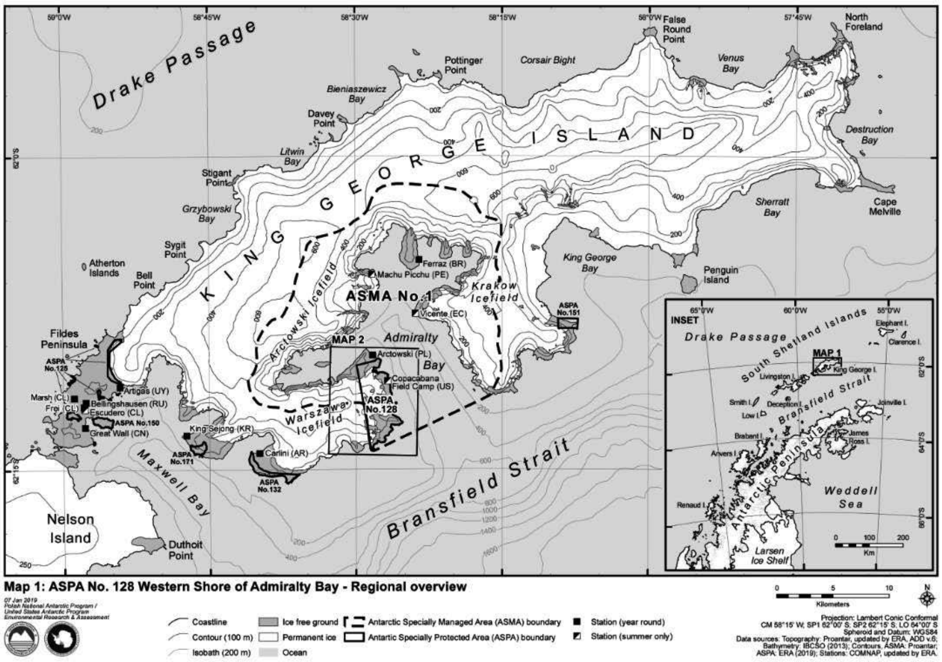
Tatur, A, and A Myrcha. 1984. Ornithogenic soils on King George Island, South Shetland Islands (Maritime Antarctic Zone). *Polish Journal of Ecology* **5** (1-2): 31–60.

Vaughan, DG, and CSM Doake. 1996. Recent atmospheric warming and retreat of ice shelves on the Antarctic Peninsula. *Nature* **379**: 328–331. doi:10.1038/379328a0.

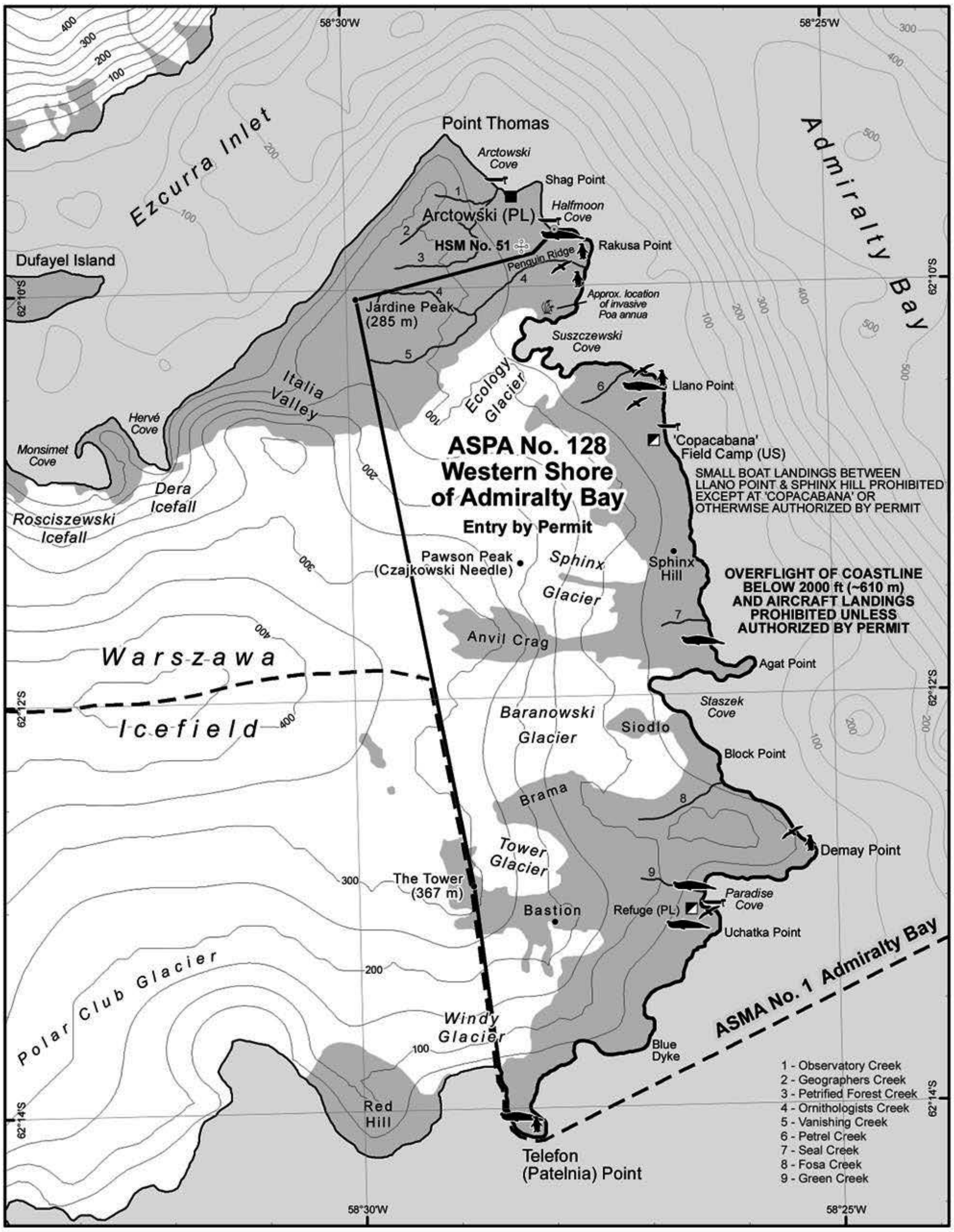
Victoria, FDC, AB Pereira, and D Pinheiro. 2009. Composition and distribution of moss formations in the ice-free areas adjoining the Arctowski region, Admiralty Bay, King George Island, Antarctica. *Inheringia Botanical Series* **64** (1): 81–91.

Wódkiewicz M., Chwedorzewska K.J., Bednarek P.T. Znój A., Androsiuk P., and Galera H. 2018. How much of the invader's genetic variability can slip between our fingers? A case study of secondary dispersal of *Poa annua* on King George Island (Antarctica). *Ecology and Evolution* **8** (1): 592-600.

Zastawniak, E. 1994. Upper Cretaceous leaf flora from Błaszczyk Moraine (Zamek Formation), King George Island, West Antarctica. *Acta Palaeobotanica* **34** (2): 119–163.



Map 1: ASPA No. 128 Western Shore of Admiralty Bay - Regional overview



Map 2: ASPA No. 128 Western Shore of Admiralty Bay - access, facilities and wildlife

0 0.5 1 Kilometers

07 Jan 2019
Polish National Antarctic Program / United States Antarctic Program
Environmental Research & Assessment

- Peak
- Contour (50 m)
- Isobath (50 m)
- Coastline
- Creek
- Ice free ground
- Permanent ice
- Ocean
- ASMA boundary
- ASPA boundary
- Station (year round)
- Station (summer only)
- Historic Site & Monument (HSM)
- Marker
- Small boat landing site
- Penguin colony
- Southern giant petrel colony
- Southern elephant seal colony

Projection: UTM Zone 21S
Spheroid and horizontal datum: WGS84
Data sources: Topography, Stations: Proantar; ASPA, ASMA: Proantar (updated by ERA); Wildlife: ERA; Creeks: digitised by ERA using aerial imagery 1979; Coastline: updated from WV-1 imagery (© Mar 2008 Digital Globe; NGA Commercial Imagery Program); Boat landing sites: Polish Antarctic Program.

Measure 3 (2019)

Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 141 (Yukidori Valley, Langhovde, Lützow-Holm Bay): Revised Management Plan

The Representatives,

Recalling Articles 3, 5 and 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, providing for the designation of Antarctic Specially Protected Areas ("ASPA") and approval of Management Plans for those Areas;

Recalling

- Recommendation XIV-5 (1987), which designated Yukidori Valley, Langhovde, Lützow-Holm Bay as Site of Special Scientific Interest ("SSSI") No 22 and annexed a Management Plan for the Site;
- Recommendation XVI-7 (1991), which extended the expiry date of SSSI 22;
- Measure 1 (2000), which adopted a revised Management Plan for SSSI 22;
- Decision 1 (2002), which renamed and renumbered SSSI 22 as ASPA 141;
- Measure 7 (2014), which adopted a revised Management Plan for ASPA 141;

Recalling that Recommendation XVI-7 (1991) did not become effective and was designated as no longer current by Decision 1 (2011);

Recalling that Measure 1 (2000) did not become effective and was withdrawn by Decision 3 (2017);

Noting that the Committee for Environmental Protection ("CEP") has endorsed a revised Management Plan for ASPA 141;

Desiring to replace the existing Management Plan for ASPA 141 with the revised Management Plan;

Recommend to their Governments the following Measure for approval in accordance with paragraph 1 of Article 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty:

That:

1. the revised Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 141 (Yukidori Valley, Langhovde, Lützow-Holm Bay), which is annexed to this Measure, be approved; and
2. the Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 141 annexed to Measure 7 (2014) be revoked.

Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No. 141

YUKIDORI VALLEY, LANGHOVDE, LÜTZOW-HOLM BAY

Introduction

The Yukidori Valley (69º14'30"S, 39º46'00"E) is located in the middle part of Langhovde on the east coast of Lützow-Holm Bay, continental Antarctica, which is about 20 km south of the Japanese Syowa Station (69º00'22"S, 39º35'24"E) on the Ongul Islands (Map 1). The Valley is 2.0-2.5 km long from east to west, 1.8 km wide and contains a prominent melt stream and two lakes (Map 2).

The Area was originally designated in Recommendation XIV-5 (1987, SSSI No.22) after the proposal by Japan. A management plan for the Area was adopted under Recommendation XVI-7 (1991) and revised under Measure 1 (2000).

Based on the Environmental Domains Analysis for Antarctica (Resolution 3 (2008)) the Area lies within Environment D – East Antarctic coastal geologic. In accordance with the Antarctic Conservation Biogeographic Regions (ACBR) (Resolution6 (2012)), the Area lies within ACBR 5

Enderby Land. The Yukidori valley is designated as ASPA to protect a fragile, typical continental Antarctic fellfield ecosystem and its component species, some of which are endemic to Antarctica, from the human activity in Antarctica. Additionally, long-term monitoring programs have been conducted in this valuable site.

1. Description of values to be protected

A fragile, typical continental fellfield ecosystem has developed in the Yukidori Valley. Field surveys of geological and biological sciences have been carried out in Langhovde since 1957 of the IGY period and a long-term monitoring program started in the Yukidori Valley area in 1984. More intensive studies have been carried out after the Area was designated as SSSI No.22 in 1987. Since 1984, the long-term monitoring program has continued in this Area, in particular to monitor temporal and spatial changes in vegetation of mosses and lichens (Map 2).

The values to be protected are those associated with this fragile, typical continental Antarctic fellfield ecosystem under quite harsh Antarctic environment, and the long-term scientific studies that have been carried out since 1984. Permanent quadrats for monitoring lichen and moss vegetation have been established in this typical continental ecosystem in relation to long-term environmental change. The Area requires protection in order to ensure that this long-term scientific monitoring program is not compromised. Based on these reason, the Area was designated in Recommendation XIV-5 (1987, SSSI No.22) after the proposal by Japan, and the management plan for the Area was adopted under Recommendation XVI-7 (1991). The human activity in this area will easily destroy the fragile ecosystem under the harsh environment in continental Antarctica, and it will take so long period or absolutely impossible to recover. By designed as ASPA, this valuable fellfield ecosystem should be protected and the value for research on the ecosystem and environmental monitoring.

The Yukidori Valley is inhabited by several thousand snow petrels. Excrement of snow petrels is important as a major supply of nutrients for mosses and lichens.

By the continuous environmental monitoring study in the ASPA area, the effect of global environmental change in Antarctica will be detected and it will contribute as a sentinel system for the whole world.

2. Aims and objectives

Management at Yukidori Valley aims to:

- avoid degradation of, or substantial risk to, the values of the Area by preventing unnecessary human disturbance to the Area;
- allow a continuation of long-term monitoring programs;
- avoid major changes to the structure and composition of the terrestrial vegetation, in particular the moss and lichen banks;
- prevent unnecessary human disturbance to the snow petrels, as well as to the surrounding environment, and
- minimise the possibility of introduction of alien plants, animals and microbes into the Area, and
- Allow visits for management purposes in support of the aims of the Management Plan.

3. Management activities

The following management activities are to be undertaken to protect the values of the Area:

- Maps showing the location of the Area (stating the special restrictions that apply) shall be displayed prominently at "Biological research hut" located outside of the western boundary of the Area, where copies of this management plan shall also be made available.
- Signs showing the location and boundaries of the Area and listing entry restrictions should be placed at the entry point at the western boundary of the Area to help avoid inadvertent entry.
- Markers, signs or structures erected within the Area for scientific or management purposes shall be secured and maintained in good condition and removed when no longer necessary.
- Information about the ASPA, including copies of the Management Plan, should be made available at all facilities operating in the region.
- Personnel (national programme staff, field expeditions, tourists and pilots)

in the vicinity of, accessing or flying over the Area shall be specifically instructed, by their national program (or appropriate national authority) as to the provisions and contents of the Management Plan.

- All pilots operating in the region shall be informed of the location, boundaries and restrictions applying to entry and over-flight in the Area.

4. Period of designation

Designated for an indefinite period.

5. Maps

Map 1: Sôya Coast, Lützow-Holm Bay, East Antarctica.
Map 2: Yukidori Valley, Langhovde and the boundary of ASPA No. 141.
Map 3: The biological research hut and surroundings.

6. Description of the Area

6(i) Geographical co-ordinates, boundary markers and natural features

The Yukidori Valley (69º00'30"S, 39º46'00"E) is situated in the middle part of Langhovde, on the east coast of Lützow-Holm Bay, Continental Antarctica. The Area encompasses 2.0-2.5 km by 1.8 km, located between a tongue of the ice cap and sea at the western end of the Valley. The fellfield ecosystem and long-term monitoring sites are contained entirely within Yukidori Valley, and the Area boundary is designed to afford protection to the entire valley/ catchment system. The Area does not include any marine area.

The location of the Area and its boundaries are shown on the attached maps (Map 2). It is described as all the land within the Area bounded by the following lines:

The eastern boundary of the Area follows a straight line from 69º14'00"S, 39º48'00"E due south to 69º15'00"S, 39º48'00"E.

The northern boundary of the Area follows a straight line from 69º14'00"S, 39º48'00"E due west to the coastline at 69º14'00"S, 39º44'20"E (Map 2-A).

The southern boundary of the Area follows a straight line from 69º15'00"S, 39º48'00"E due west to the stream of Yatude Valley at 69º15'00"S, 39º45'20"E (Map 2-E).
The western boundary of the Area between 69º14'00"S, 39º44'20"E (Map 2-A) and 69º15'00"S, 39º45'20"E (Map 2-E), is delineated by the high-water line of the coast, rope boundaries and stream of Yatude Valley.

Map 2-A (69º14'00"S, 39°44'.20"E) to Map 2-B (69°14'31"S, 39°42'57"E): High-water line of the coast

Map 2-B (69°14'31"S, 39°42'57"E) to Map 2-C (69°14'38"S, 39°43'22"E): Rope boundaries

Map 2-C (69°14'38"S, 39°43'22"E) to Map 2-D (69°14'32"S, 39°43.01"E): Rope boundaries

Map 2-D (69°14'32"S, 39°43.01"E) to Map 2-E (69º15'00"S, 39º45'20"E): Stream of Yatude Valley

- *Geology*

The Yukidori Valley contains a prominent melt stream and two lakes. The stream flows from the ice cap towards the sea through V-shaped and U-shaped sectors of the Valley and enters Lake Yukidori, in the middle of the Valley, 125 m above sea level; it then flows from the south-west corner of the lake and runs through the lower valley formed by steep cliffs. Sorted stone circles with mean diameter of 1 m are situated on moraines near the northwestern part of Langhovde Glacier to the east of Lake Higasi-Yukidori, which is located at the head of the Valley, about 200 m above sea level abutting the edge of the ice cap. Poorly-developed stone circles are found on fluvioglacial deposits in the Yukidori Valley. Small talus aprons and talus cones are located around Lake Yukidori. In the lower reaches of the Yukidori Valley, at on altitude of about 20 m, fluvioglacial terraces 20 to 30 m wide stand 2 to 3 m high above the present channel bed. These flat terraces consist of rather fine sand and gravel. There is a dissected deltaic fan formed at the mouth of the stream. The Valley is underlain by well-layered sequences of late Proterozoic metamorphic rocks, consisting of garnet-biotite gneiss, biotite gneiss, pyroxene gneiss and hornblende gneiss with metabasite. The foliation of the gneisses strike N10°E and dips monoclinally to the east (Map 3).

- *Flora and fauna*

Almost all of the plant species recorded from the Langhovde area occur within the Area. They include the mosses Bryum pseudotriquetrum (= Bryum algens), Bryum argenteum, Bryum amblyodon, Ceratodon purpureus, Hennediella heimii, Pottia austrogeorgica, Grimmia lawiana and lichens Usnea sphacelata, Umbilicaria antarctica, Umbilicaria decussata, Pseudephebe minuscula, and Xanthoria elegans. Four species of free living mites (Nanorchestes antarcticus, Protereunetes minutus, Antarcticola meyeri, Tydeus erebus), have been reported. There are over sixty species of microalgae, including species endemic to the Yukidori Valley, Cosmarium yukidoriense and a variety of Cosmarium clepsydra. Such vegetation is distributed all along the stream. Several pairs of the south polar skua (Catharacta maccormicki) and several thousand snow petrels (Pagodroma nivea; note "Yukidori" is Japanese for the snow petrel) breed at the cliff along the valley.

6(ii) Access to the area

Access to the Area is covered under section 7(ii) of this plan

6(iii) Location of structures within and adjacent to the Area

The biological research hut is located just outside the western boundary of the Area at (69º14'36"S, 39º42'59"E).The boundary of the Area near the hut is enclosed by ropes. It was constructed in 1986 near the beach at the mouth of the Valley so that there would be minimal impact on the flora, fauna, and terrain of the Area. There are three sites for microclimatic observations in the lower, middle and upper reaches of the stream within the Area. Microclimatic factors such as relative humidity and air temperatures at ground level, soil temperatures and temperatures at moss level are measured. Hexagon chambers made of acrylic fiber are installed at the vegetated area in the lower and middle reaches in order to assess vegetational and environmental changes. These sites are indicated in the attached maps.

6(iv) Location of other protected areas in the vicinity

None.

6(v) Special zones within the Area

There are no special zones within the Area.

7. Terms and conditions for entry permits

7(i) General permit conditions

Entry into the Area is prohibited except in accordance with a Permit issued by an appropriate national authority. Conditions for issuing a Permit to enter the Area are that:

- it is issued for compelling scientific or educational reasons that cannot be served elsewhere, or for essential management purposes consistent with plan objectives such as inspection, maintenance or review;
- the actions permitted will not jeopardize the ecological or scientific values of the Area;
- any management activities are in support of the aims and objectives of the management plan;
- the actions permitted are in accordance with this management plan;
- the Permit, or an authorized copy, shall be carried within the Area;
- a visit report shall be supplied to the authority named in the Permit;
- Permit shall be issued for a stated period;
- The appropriate authority should be notified of any activities/measures undertaken that weren't included in the authorized Permit.

7(ii) Access to, and movement within or over, the Area

- The area is situated about 20 km south from Syowa station. In winter, snow vehicle access route is settled on the frozen sea ice. In summer, helicopter is used to access from Syowa station and ice-breaker.
- Access route of snow vehicle and helicopter are shown in Map3. Heliport is located outside of the boundary at 69º14'37"S, 39º42'53"E .
- Vehicles are prohibited within the Area and helicopter should not land within the Area.
- Only those pedestrians with compelling research activities are allowed to enter at the entry point (Map 2-C).
- No pedestrian routes are designated within the Area, but persons on foot should at all times avoid walking on vegetated areas or disturbance to birds and natural features.
- The operation of aircraft over the Area should be carried out, as a minimum requirement, in compliance with the 'Guidelines for the Operation of Aircraft near Concentrations of Birds' contained in Resolution 2 (2004).
- Overflight of bird colonies within the Area by RPAS shall not be permitted unless for scientific or operational purposes, and in accordance with a permit issued by an appropriate national authority.

7(iii) Activities which may be conducted in the Area, including restrictions on time or place

- Compelling scientific research which cannot be undertaken elsewhere and which will not jeopardize the ecosystem of the Area;
- Essential management activities, including monitoring.

7(iv) Installation, modification or removal of structures

- No structures are to be erected in the Area, or scientific equipment installed, except for essential scientific or management activities, as specified in the Permit.
- All markers, structures or scientific equipment installed in the Area must be clearly identified by country, name of the principal investigator or agency, year of installation and date of expected removal.
- All such items should be free of organisms, propagules (e.g. seeds, eggs) and non-sterile soil, and be made of materials that can withstand the environmental conditions and pose minimal risk of contamination of the Area.
- Installation (including site selection), maintenance, modification or removal of structures and equipment shall be undertaken in a manner that minimises disturbance to the values of the Area.
- Structures and installations must be removed when they are no longer required, or on the expiry of the permit, whichever is the earlier.

7(v) Location of field camps

Camping is prohibited within the Area. All the visitors stay in the biology research hut (69º14'36"S, 39º42'59"E) just outside the western boundary of the Area, or tent settled around the hut.

7(vi) Restrictions on materials and organisms which may be brought into the Area

No living animals, plant material, microorganisms or soils shall be deliberately introduced into the Area and the precautions listed in 7(x) below shall be taken to prevent accidental introductions. Further guidance can be found in the CEP Non-native species manual (CEP,2017) and the Environmental code of conduct for terrestrial scientific field research in Antarctica(SCAR, 2009)In view of the presence of breeding bird colonies in the Area, no poultry products, including products containing uncooked dried eggs, shall be taken into the Area.

No herbicides or pesticides shall be brought into the Area. Any other chemicals, including radionuclides or stable isotopes, which may be introduced for scientific or management purposes specified in the Permit, shall be removed from the Area at or before the conclusion of the activity for which the Permit was granted. Fuel is not to be stored in the Area, unless specifically authorized by Permit for specific scientific or management purposes. Anything introduced shall be for a stated period only, shall be removed at or before the conclusion of that stated period, and shall be stored and handled so that risk of any introduction into the environment is minimized. If release occurs which is likely to compromise the values of the Area, removal is encouraged only where the impact of removal is not likely to be greater than that of leaving the material in situ. The appropriate authority should be notified of anything released and not removed that was not included in the authorized Permit.

7(vii) Taking of, or harmful interference with, native flora and fauna

Taking or harmful interference with native flora and fauna is prohibited, except by Permit issued in accordance with Annex II to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty. Where taking or harmful interference with animals is involved, the SCAR Code of Conduct for the Use of Animals for Scientific Purposes in Antarctica should be used as a minimum standard.

7(viii) The collection or removal of materials not brought into the Area by the permit holder

Collection or removal of anything not brought into the Area by the Permit holder shall only be in accordance with a Permit and should be limited to the minimum necessary to meet scientific or management needs. Permits shall not be granted in instances where it is proposed to take, remove or damage such quantities of soil, native flora or fauna that their distribution or abundance in the Area would be significantly affected. Anything of human origin likely to compromise the values of the Area, which was not brought into the Area by the Permit Holder or otherwise authorized, may be removed unless the impact of removal is likely to be greater than leaving the material in situ: if this is the case the appropriate authority should be notified.

7(ix) Disposal of waste

Liquid human wastes may be disposed of into the sea adjacent to the area. All other wastes should be removed from the Area. Solid human waste should not be disposed of to the sea, but shall be removed from the Area. No solid or liquid human waste shall be disposed of inland.

7(x) Measures that may be necessary to continue to meet the aims of the Management Plan

- Permits may be granted to enter the Area to carry out biological monitoring and area inspection activities, which may involve the collection of a small number of samples or data for analysis or review.
- Any specific sites of long-term monitoring shall be appropriately marked on site and on maps of the Area. To help maintain the ecological and scientific values of the Area, visitors shall take special precautions against introductions. Of particular concern are microbial, animal or vegetation introductions sourced from soils, from other Antarctic sites, including stations, or from regions outside Antarctica. To the maximum extent practicable, visitors should ensure that footwear, clothing and any equipment particularly camping and sampling equipment- is thoroughly cleaned before entering the Area.
- To avoid interference with long-term research and monitoring activities or duplication of effort, persons planning new projects within the Area should consult with established programs and/or appropriate national authorities.

7 (xi) Requirements for reports

- The principal permit holder for each visit to the Area shall submit a report to the appropriate national authority as soon as practicable, and no later than six months after the visit has been completed.
- Such reports should include, as appropriate, the information identified in the visit report form contained in the Guide to the Preparation of Management Plans for Antarctic Specially Protected Areas.
- Parties should maintain a record of such activities and, in the Annual Exchange of Information, should provide summary descriptions of activities conducted by persons subject to their jurisdiction, which should be in sufficient detail to allow evaluation of the effectiveness of the management plan.
- Parties should, wherever possible, deposit originals or copies of such original reports in a publicly accessible archive to maintain a record of usage, to be used both in any review of the management plan and in organizing the scientific use of the Area.

8. Supporting documentation

Akiyama, M. 1985. Biogeographic distribution of freshwater algae in Antarctica, and special reference to the occurrence of an endemic species of Oegonium. Mem. Fac. Edu., Shimane Univ., 19, 1-15.

Committee for Environmental Protection (CEP). 2017. Non-native species manual - 2nd Edition. Manual prepared by Intersessional Contact Group of the CEP and adopted by the Antarctic Treaty Consultative Meeting through Resolution 4 (2016). Buenos Aires, Secretariat of the Antarctic Treaty.

Hirano, M. 1979. Freshwater algae from Yukidori Zawa, near Syowa Station, Antarctica. Mem. Natl Inst. Polar Res., Spec. Issue 11: 1-25.

Inoue, M. 1989. Factors influencing the existence of lichens in the ice-free areas near Syowa Station, East Antarctica. Proc. NIPR Symp. Polar Biol., 2, 167-180.

Ino, Y. and Nakatsubo, T. 1986. Distribution of carbon, nitrogen and phosphorus in a moss community-soil system developed on a cold desert in Antarctica. Ecol. Res., 1:59-69.

Ino, Y. 1994. Field measurement of the photosynthesis of mosses with a portable CO2 porometer at Langhovde, East Antarctica. Antarct. Rec., 38, 178-184.

Ishikawa, T., Tatsumi, T., Kizaki, K., Yanai, K., Yoshida, M., Ando, H., Kikuchi, T., Yoshida, Y. and Matsumoto, Y. 1976. Langhovde. Antarct. Geol. Map Ser., 5 (with explanatory text, 10 p.), Tokyo, Natl Inst. Polar Res.

Kanda, H. 1987. Moss vegetation in the Yukidori Valley, Langhovde, East Antarctica. Papers on Plant Ecology and Taxonomy to the Memory of Dr. Satoshi Nakanishi. Kobe Botanical Society, Kobe, 17-204.

Kanda, H. and Inoue, M. 1994. Ecological monitoring of moss and lichen vegetation in the Syowa Station area, Antarctica. Mem. NIPR Symp. Polar Biol., 7: 221-231.

Kanda, H. and Ohtani, S. 1991. Morphology of the aquatic mosses collected in lake Yukidori, Langhovde, Antarctica. Proc., NIPR Symp., Polar Biol., 4, 114-122.

Kanda, H., Inoue, M., Mochida, Y., Sugawara, H., Ino, Y., Ohtani, S. and Ohyama, Y. 1990. Biological studies on ecosystems in the Yukidori Valley., Langhovde, East Antarctica. Antarct. Rec., 34, 76-93.

Matsuda, T. 1968. Ecological study of the moss community and microorganisms in the vicinity of Syowa Station, Antarctica. JARE Sci. Rep., Ser. E. (Biol.), 29, 58p.

Nakanishi, S. 1977. Ecological studies of the moss and lichen communities in the ice-free areas near Syowa Station, Antarctica. Antarct. Rec. 59, 68-96.

Nakatsubo, T. and Ino, Y. 1986. Nitrogen cycling in an Antarctic ecosystem. I. Biological nitrogen fixation in the vicinity of Syowa Station. Mem. Natl Inst. Polar Res., Ser. E. 37:1-10.

Ohtani, S. 1986. Epiphytic algae on mosses in the vicinity of Syowa Station, Antarctica. Mem. Natl. Inst. Polar Res., Spec. Issue 44:209-219.

Ohtani, S., Akiyama, M. and Kanda, H. 1991. Analysis of Antarctic soil algae by the direct observation using the contact slide method. Antarctic. Rec. 35, 285-295.

Ohtani, S., Kanda, H. and Ino, Y. 1990. Microclimate data measured at the

Yukidori Valley, Langhovde, Antarctica in 1988-1989. JARE Data Rep., 152 (Terrestrial Biol. 1), 216p.

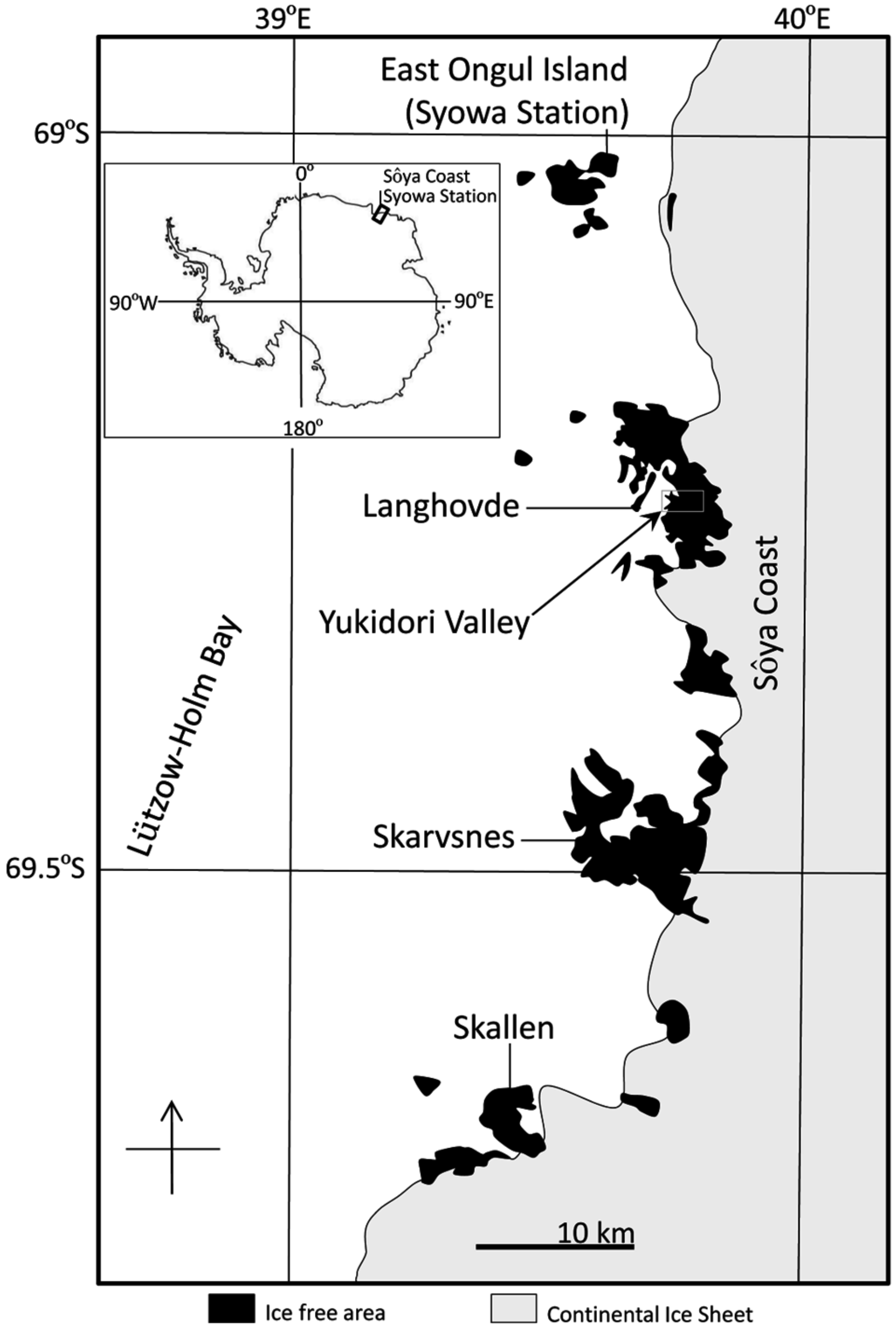
Ohtani, S., Kanda, H., Ohyama, Y., Mochida, Y., Sugawara, H. and Ino, Y. 1992. Meteorological data measured at biological hut, the Yukidori Valley, Langhovde, Antarctica in the austral summer of 1987-1988 and 1988-1989. JARE Data Rep., 178 (Terrestrial Biol., 3), 64p.

Ohyama, Y. and Matsuda, T. 1977. Free-living prostigmatic mites found around Syowa Station, East Antarctica. Antarct. Rec., 21:172-176.

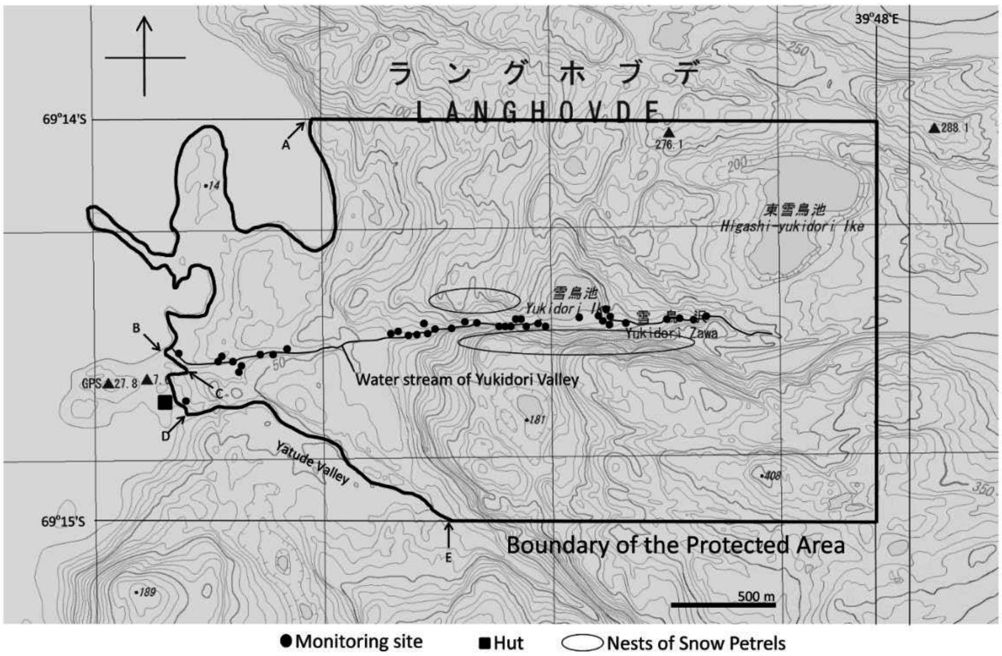
Ohyama, Y. and Sugawara, H. 1989. An occurrence of cryptostigmatic mite around Syowa Station area. Proc. Int. Symp. Antarct. Rec., pp.324-328. China, Ocean Press. Tianjin.

SCAR (Scientific Committee on Antarctic Research) 2009. Environmental code of conduct for terrestrial scientific field research in Antarctica. ATCM XXXII IP4.

Sugawara, H., Ohyama, Y. and Higashi, S. 1995. Distribution and temperature tolerance of the Antarctic free-living mire Antarcticola meyeri (Acari, Cryptostigmata). Polar Biol., 15: 1-8.

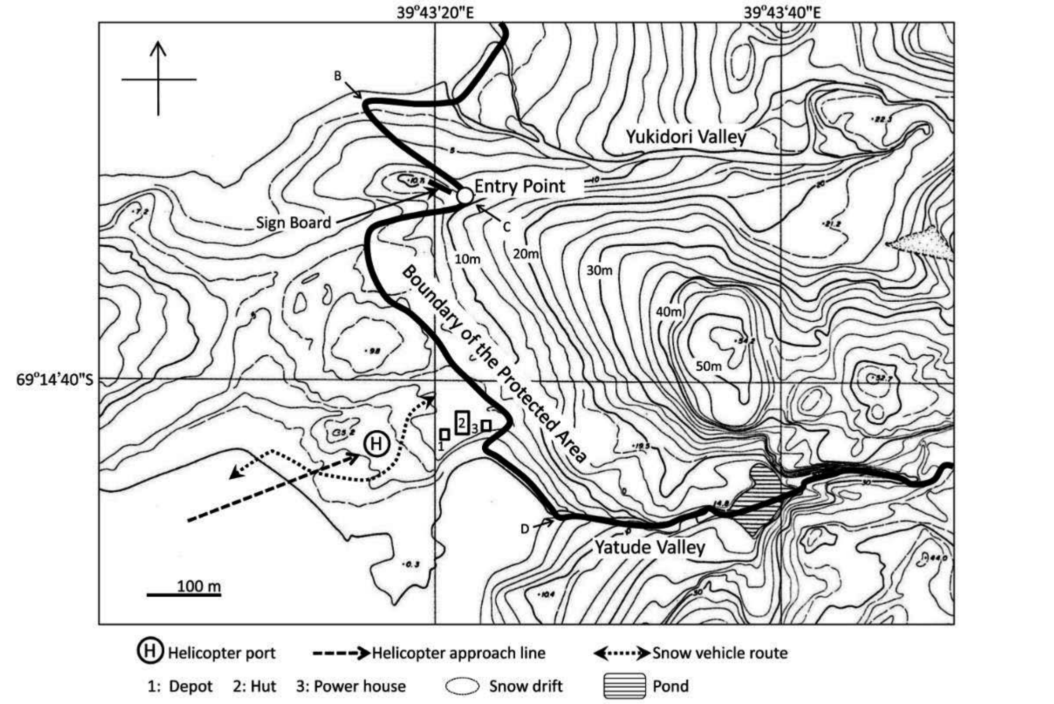


Map 1. The map of Soya Coast, Lutzow-Holm Bay, East Antarctica.
Universal Transverse Mercator projection. Spheroid and Datum: WGS84.



Map 2. Yukidori Valley, Langhovde and the boundary of the Protected Area.

Universal Transverse Mercator projection. Spheroid and Datum: WGS84.



Map 3. The biological research hut and surroundings.
Universal Transverse Mercator projection. Spheroid and Datum: WGS84.

Measure 4 (2019)

Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 142 (Svarthamaren): Revised Management Plan

The Representatives,

Recalling Articles 3, 5 and 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, providing for the designation of Antarctic Specially Protected Areas ("ASPA") and approval of Management Plans for those Areas;

Recalling

- Recommendation XIV-5 (1987), which designated Svarthamaren as Site of Special Scientific Interest ("SSSI") No 23 and annexed a Management Plan for the Site;
- Resolution 3 (1996), which extended the expiry date of SSSI 23;
- Measure 1 (1999), which adopted a revised Management Plan for SSSI 23;
- Decision 1 (2002), which renamed and renumbered SSSI 23 as ASPA 142;
- Measures 2 (2004), 8 (2009) and 8 (2014), which adopted revised Management Plans for ASPA 142;

Recalling that Resolution 3 (1996) was designated as no longer current by Decision 1 (2011);

Recalling that Measure 1 (1999) did not become effective and was withdrawn by Measure 8 (2009);

Noting that the Committee for Environmental Protection ("CEP") has endorsed a revised Management Plan for ASPA 142;

Desiring to replace the existing Management Plan for ASPA 142 with the revised Management Plan;

Recommend to their Governments the following Measure for approval in accordance with paragraph 1 of Article 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty:

That:

1. the revised Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 142 (Svarthamaren), which is annexed to this Measure, be approved; and
2. the Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 142 annexed to Measure 8 (2014) be revoked.

Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No. 142

SVARTHAMAREN

Introduction

The Svarthamaren nunatak (71°53'16"S - 5°9'24"E to 71°56'10"S - 5°15'37"), part of the Mühlig-Hoffmanfjella in Dronning Maud Land, Antarctica, is protected as an Antarctic Special Protected Area (ASPA). The Area is approximately 7.5 km².

The nunatak holds one of the largest known seabird colony in the Antarctica. Between approx. 100,000 and 250,000 pairs of Antarctic petrels (Thalassoica antarctica) breed here annually and many non-breeders are present during breeding season. Svarthamaren is the largest petrel colony in Dronning Maud Land, where more than 60% of the entire Antarctic petrel population breed. In addition, between 1000 and 2000 pairs of snow petrel (Pagodroma nivea) and between 100 and 150 pairs of south polar skua (Catharacta maccormicki) are found here. This is one of the largest concentrations of South polar skuas in Antarctica.

Primary purpose: To avoid human induced changes to the population structure, composition and size of the seabird colonies present at the site, to allow for undisturbed research on the adaptations of the Antarctic petrel, snow petrel and south polar skua to the inland conditions in Antarctica.

1. Description of values to be protected

The Area was originally designated in Recommendation XIV-5 (1987, SSSI No. 23) after a proposal by Norway based on the following factors, which still give relevant grounds for designation:

- the fact that the colony of Antarctic petrel (Thalassoica antarctica) is one of the largest known inland seabird colony on the Antarctic continent;
- the fact that the colony constitutes a large proportion of the known world population of Antarctic petrel;
- the fact that the colony is an exceptional "natural research laboratory" providing for research on the Antarctic petrel, snow petrel (Pagodroma nivea) and south polar skua (Catharacta maccormicki), and their adaptation to breeding in the inland/interior of Antarctica.

2. Aim and objectives

The aim of managing Svarthamaren is to:

- avoid human induced changes to the population structure, composition and size of the seabird colonies present at the site;
- prevent unnecessary disturbance to the seabird colonies, as well as to the

surrounding environment;
- allow for undisturbed research on the adaptations of the Antarctic petrel, snow petrel and south polar skua to the inland conditions in Antarctica (Primary Research);
- allow access for other scientific reasons where the investigations will not damage the objectives of the bird research.

The focus of the Primary Research in Svarthamaren ASPA is as follows:

- Improve the understanding of how natural as well as anthropogenic changes in the environment affect the spatial and temporal distribution of animal populations, and, furthermore, how such changes affect the interaction between key species in the Antarctic ecosystem.

3. Management activities

Management activities at Svarthamaren shall:

- ensure that the seabird colonies are adequately monitored, to the maximum extent possible by non-invasive methods;
- allow erection of signs/posters, border markers, etc. in connection to the site, and ensure that these are serviced and maintained in good condition;
- include visits as necessary to assess whether the Area continues to serve the purposes for which it was designated and to ensure management and maintenance measures are adequate;
- allow posting of warning signs informing about danger of rock avalanches to ensure safety of visitors in some areas within the Area.

Any direct intervention management activity in the area must be subject to an environmental impact assessment before any decision to proceed is taken.

4. Period of Designation

Designated for an indefinite period.

5. Maps and Illustrations

Map A: Map of ASPA 142 Svarthamaren in Dronning Maud Land (showing location of Map B 71°53'16"S - 5°9'24"E to 71°56'10"S - 5°15'37"E). Map specifications:

- Projection: Transverse Mercator, UTM zone 31S
- Spheroid: WGS 1984
- (EPSG code: 32731)
- Additionally, the map is rotated 2,5 degrees to the left

Map B: Svarthamaren – ASPA 142. Boundaries and Main Seabird Concentrations (2014). Map specifications:

- Projection: Transverse Mercator, UTM zone 31S
- Spheroid: WGS 1984
- (EPSG code: 32731)
- Additionally, the map is rotated 2,1 degrees to the left

Map C: Aerial photo of Svarthamaren (1996, Norwegian Polar Institute)

6. Description of Area

6 (i) Geographic co-ordinates, boundary markers and natural features

The Svarthamaren ASPA is situated in Mühlig-Hoffmannfjella, Dronning Maud Land, stretching from approx. 71°53'16"S - 5°9'24"E to the north-east to approx. 71°56'10"S - 5°15'37"E in the south-east. The distance from the ice front is about 200 km. The Area covers approximately 7.5 km², and consists of the ice-free areas of the Svarthamaren nunatak, including the areas in the immediate vicinity of the ice-free areas naturally belonging to the nunatak (i.e. rocks). The Area is shown in Map B and C.

The Norwegian field station Tor is located in the Svarthamaren nunatak at lat. 71°53'22"S, 5°9'34"E, immediately outside the Area.

The main rock types in the Area are coarse and medium grained charnockites with small amounts of xenoliths. Included in the charnockitoids are banded gneisses, amphibolites and granites of the amphibolite facies mineralogy. The slopes are covered by decomposed feldspathic sand. The north-eastern side of the Svarthamaren nunatak is dominated by scree slopes (slope 31º-34º), extending 240 metres upwards from the base of the mountain at about 1600 metres above sea level. The major features of this area are two rock amphitheatres inhabited by breeding Antarctic petrels. It is this area which makes up the core of the protected site.

No continuous weather observations have been carried through in the Area, but prevalent air temperature has been observed to range between -5º and -15ºC in January, with somewhat lower minimum temperatures in February.

The flora and vegetation at Svarthamaren are sparse compared with other areas in Mühlig-Hofmannfjella and Gjelsvikfjella to the west of the site. The only plant species occurring in abundance, but peripherally to the most manured areas, is the foliose green alga, Prasiola crispa. There are a few lichen species on glacier-borne erratics 1-2 km away from the bird colonies: Candelariella hallettensis (= C. antarctica), Rhizoplaca (= Lecanora) melanophthalma, Umbilicaria spp. and Xanthoria spp. Areas covered with Prasiola are inhabited by collembola ASPA No. 142: Svarthamaren Cryptopygus sverdrupi) and a rich fauna of mites (Eupodes anghardi, Tydeus erebus) protozoan, nematodes and rotifers. A shallow pond measuring about 20 x 30 m, lying below the middle and largest bird sub-colony at Svarthamaren, is heavily polluted by petrel carcasses, and supports a strong growth of a yellowish-green unicellular algae, Chlamydomonas, sp. No aquatic invertebrates have yet been recorded.

The colonies of breeding seabirds are the most conspicuous biological element in the Area. The north-eastern slopes of Svarthamaren are occupied by a densely populated colony of Antarctic petrels (Thalassoica antarctica) divided into three separate sub-colonies.

The total number of breeding pairs is estimated to be between 100,000 and 250,000 pairs, with large inter-annual fluctuations. In addition, approximately 1000-2000 pairs of snow petrels (Pagodroma nivea) and 100-150 pairs of south polar skuas (Catharacta maccormicki) breed in the area. The two main colonies of Antarctic petrels are situated in the two rocky amphitheatres. The main colonies of snow petrels are located in separate parts of the scree-slope that are characterised by larger rocks. The south polar skuas nest on the narrow strip of flat, snow-free ground below the scree-slopes.

The main concentrations of seabirds are indicated on Map B. Readers should, however, be aware that birds are also found in other areas than these densely populated areas.

Based on the Environmental Domains Analysis for Antarctica (2007, Morgan et al.) both Environments T- Inland continental geologic - and U- North Victoria Land geologic - are found to be represented at Svarthamaren (2009, Harry Keys, pers. comm.). Svarthamaren belongs to Antarctic Conservation Biogeographic Region 6 – Dronning Maud Land (ACBR 6) (2012, Aleks Terauds et al.). Antarctic Important Bird Area No. 112 Svarthamaren is identified within the Area.

6 (ii) Restricted zones within the Area

None

6 (iii) Location of structures within the Area

A weather station is located at the edge of the main petrel colony. During the austral winter only the mast (2 meters high) remains, while the station proper is installed during the summer season. The mast has not been permanently fixed into the ground and can easily be removed. With this exception there are no structures within the Area.

6 (iv) Location of other Protected Areas within close proximity

None

7. Permit Conditions

Permits may be issued only by appropriate national authorities as designated under Annex V, Article 7 of the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty. Conditions for issuing a permit to enter the Area are that:

- the actions permitted are in accordance with this Management Plan;
- the permit, or a copy, shall be carried within the area;
- any permit issued shall be valid for a stated period;
- a visit report is supplied to the authority named in the permit.

7 (i) Access to and movement within the Area

Access to the area is restricted by the following conditions:

- no pedestrian routes are designated, but persons on foot shall at all times avoid disturbances to birds, and as far as possible also to the sparse vegetation cover in the Area;
- vehicles are prohibited in the Area;
- no flying of helicopters or other aircraft over the Area is allowed;
- helicopter landings are not allowed within the boundaries of the ASPA. Landings associated with activities at the field station Tor should preferably take place at the north-eastern tip of the Svarthamaren nunatak;
- the use of Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS) within the Area is not allowed. Exemptions can be granted for research and management activities provided these are not in conflict with the aim and objectives of this management plan. Such use of RPAS should be in accordance with the Environmental Guidelines for operation of Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS) in Antarctica (ATCM Resolution 4 (2018)).

7 (ii) Activities that are or may be conducted within the Area, including restrictions on time and place

The following activities may be conducted within the Area in accordance with permit:

- primary biological research programs for which the area was designated;
- essential management activities, including monitoring and inspection;
- other research programs of a compelling scientific nature that will not interfere with the bird research in the Area.

7 (iii) Installation, modification or removal of structures

No structures are to be erected in the Area, or scientific equipment installed, except for equipment essential for scientific or management activities, including Automatic Weather Stations (AWS) for scientific purposes. Such structures can only be installed as specified in a permit.

7 (iv) Location of field camps

No field camps should be established within the Area.

7 (v) Restrictions on materials and organisms which may be brought into the Area

- no living animals or plant material shall be deliberately introduced into the Area;
- no poultry products, including food products containing uncooked dried eggs, shall be taken into the Area;
- no herbicides or pesticides shall be brought into the Area. Any other chemicals (including fuel), which may be introduced for a compelling scientific purpose specified in the permit, shall be removed from the Area before or at the conclusion of the activity for which the permit was granted;
- all materials introduced shall be for a stated period, shall be removed at or before the conclusion of that stated period, and shall be stored and handled so that risk of their introduction into the environment is minimized.

7 (vi) Taking or harmful interference with native flora and fauna

Taking or harmful interference with native flora and fauna is prohibited, except in accordance with a permit issued in accordance with Annex II to the Protocol of Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty. Where taking or harmful interference with animals is involved, SCAR Code of Conduct for Use of Animals for Scientific Purposes in Antarctica should be used as a minimum standard.

It is recommended that those responsible for the primary research in the Area should be consulted before a permit is granted for taking of birds for purposes not associated with the primary research. Studies requiring taking of birds for other purposes should be planned and carried through in such a manner that it will not interfere with the objectives of the bird research in the Area.

7 (vii) Collection and removal of anything not brought into the Area by the Permit holder

Material may be collected or removed from the Area only in accordance with a permit, except that debris of man-made origin should be removed and that dead specimens of fauna may be removed for laboratory examination.

7 (viii) Disposal of waste

All wastes, including human wastes, are to be removed from the Area.
7 (ix) Measures that may be necessary to ensure that the aims and objectives of the Management Plan continue to be met

Permits may be granted to enter the Area to carry out biological monitoring and site inspection activities which may involve the collection of small amounts of plant material or small numbers of animals for analysis or audit, to erect or maintain notice boards or to undertake protective measures.

7 (x) Requirements for reports

Parties should ensure that the principal holder of each permit issued submit to the appropriate authority a report describing the activities undertaken. Such reports should include, as appropriate, the information identified in the Visit Report form suggested by SCAR. Parties should maintain a record of such activities and, in the Annual Exchange of Information, should provide summary descriptions of activities conducted by persons subject to their jurisdiction, which should be in sufficient detail to allow evaluation of the effectiveness of the Management Plan. Parties should, wherever possible, deposit originals or copies of such original reports in a publicly accessible archive to maintain a record of usage, to be used both in any review of the management plan and in organizing the scientific use of the Area.

8. Bibliography

Amundsen, T. 1995. Egg size and early nestling growth in the snow petrel. Condor 97: 345-351.

Amundsen, T., Lorentsen, S.H. & Tveraa, T. 1996. Effects of egg size and parental quality on early nestling growth: An experiment with the Antarctic petrel. Journal of Animal Ecology 65: 545-555.

Andersen, R., Sæther, B.E. & Pedersen, H.C. 1995. Regulation of parental investment in the Antarctic petrel Thalassoica antarctica: An experiment. Polar Biology 15:65-68

Andersen, R., Sæther, B.-E. & Pedersen, H.C. 1993. Resource limitation in a long-lived seabird, the Antarctic petrel Thalassoica antarctica: a twinning experiment. Fauna Norwegica, Serie C 16:15-18

Bech, C., Mehlum, F. & Haftorn, S. 1988. Development of chicks during extreme cold conditions: the Antarctic petrel Thalassioca antarctica. Proceedings of the 19'th International Ornithological Congress:1447-1456

Brooke, M.D., Keith, D. & Røv, N. 1999. Exploitation of inland-breeding Antarctic petrels by south polar skuas. OECOLOGIA 121: 25-31

Carravieri A et al. (2018) Mercury exposure and short-term consequences on physiology and reproduction in Antarctic petrels Environmental Pollution 237:824-831

Descamps S, Tarroux A, Lorentsen SH, Love OP, Varpe O, Yoccoz NG (2016) Large-scale oceanographic fluctuations drive Antarctic petrel survival and reproduction Ecography 39:496-505 doi:10.1111/ecog.01659

Descamps S et al. (2016) At-Sea Distribution and Prey Selection of Antarctic Petrels and Commercial Krill Fisheries PLoS One 11:e0156968

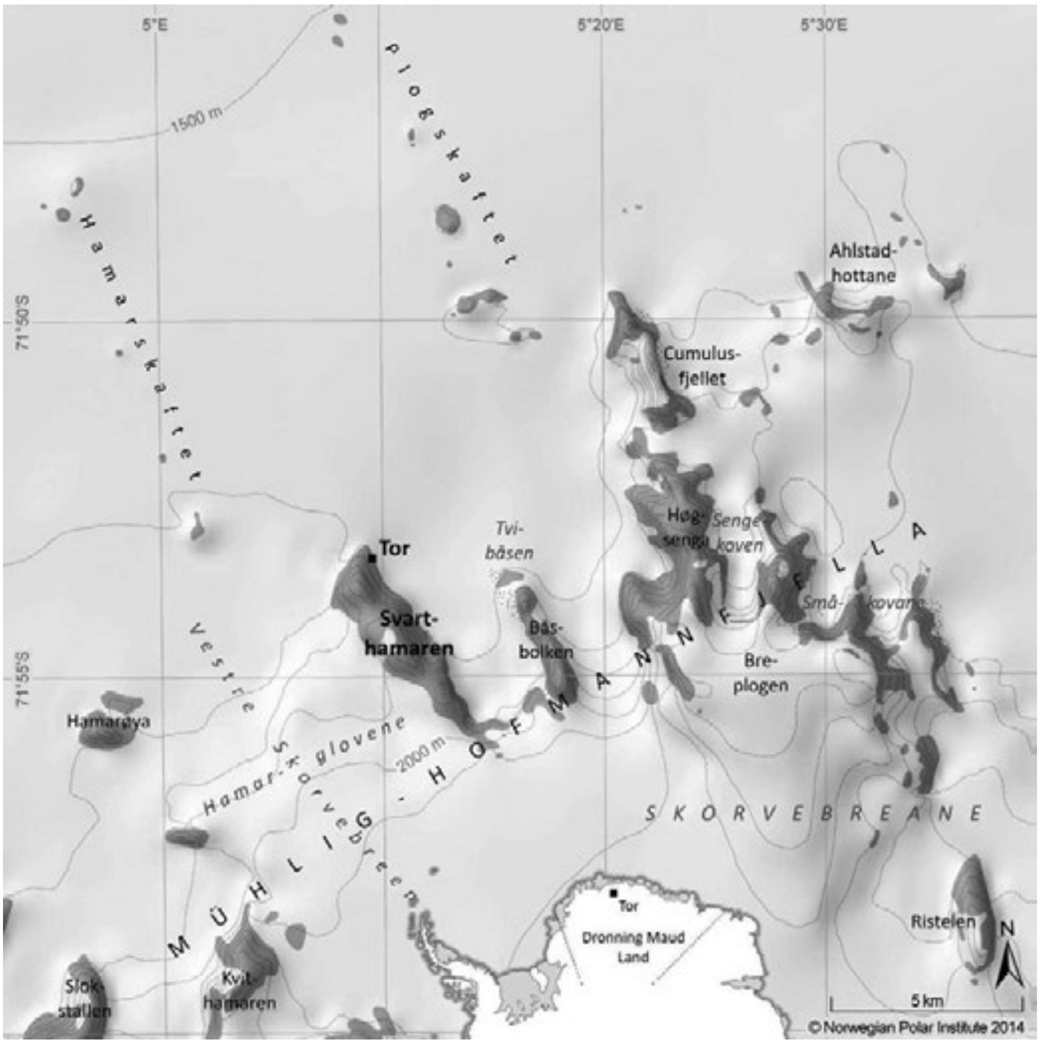
Descamps S, Tarroux A, Varpe Ø, Yoccoz NG, Tveraa T, Lorentsen SH (2015) Demographic effects of extreme weather events: snow storms, breeding success, and population growth rate in a long-lived Antarctic seabird Ecol and Evol 5:314-325

Fauchald P et al. (2017) Spring phenology shapes the spatial foraging behavior of

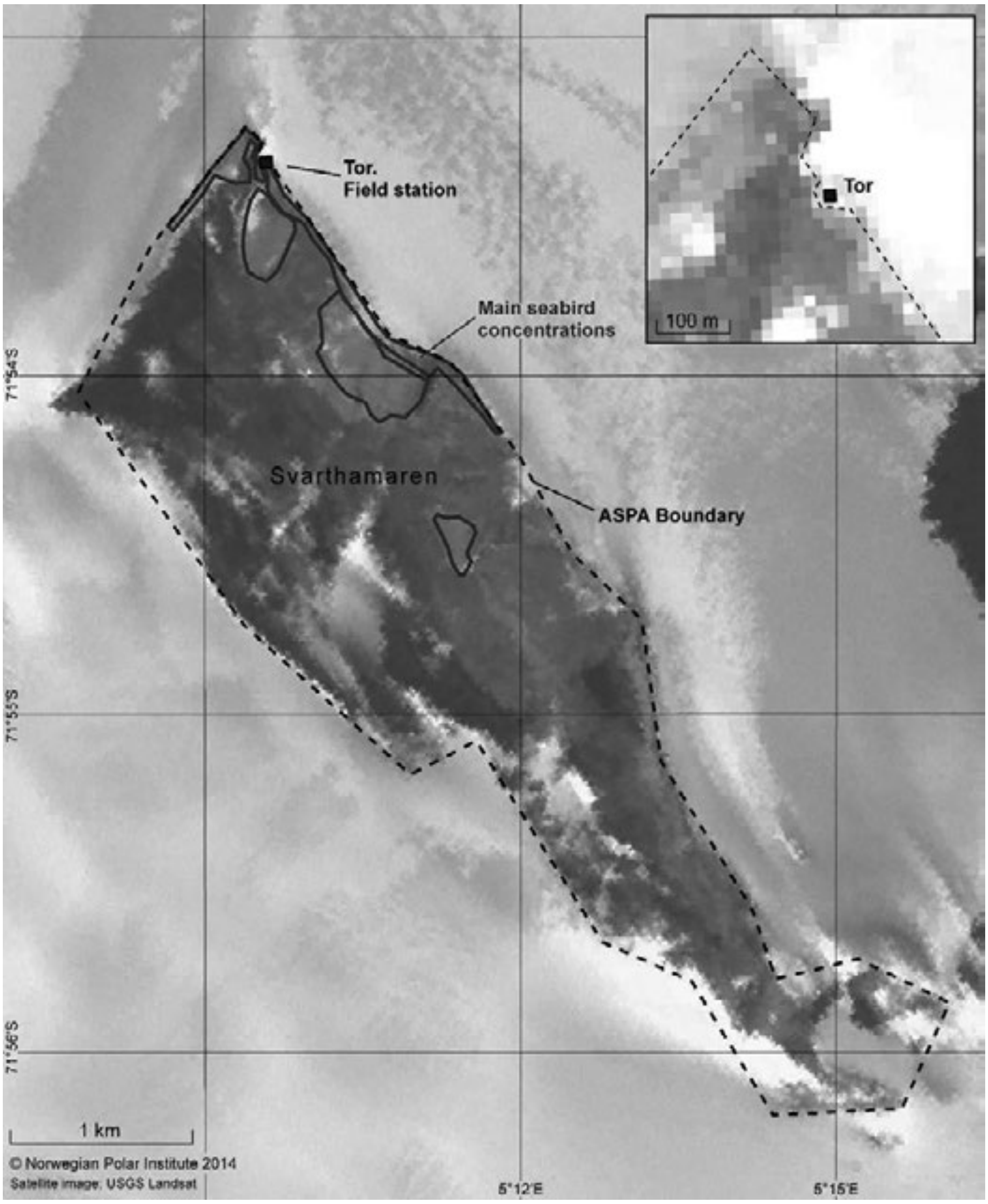
Antarctic petrels Mar Ecol Prog Ser 568:203-215
Fauchald, P. & Tveraa, T. 2003. Using first-passage time in the analysis of area restricted search and habitat selection. Ecology 84:282-288
Fauchald P. & Tveraa T. 2006. Hierarchical patch dynamics and animal movement pattern. Oecologia, 149, 383-395
Haftorn, S., Beck, C. & Mehlum, F. 1991. Aspects of the breeding biology of the Antartctic petrel (Thalassoica antarctica) and krill requirements of the chicks, at Svarthamaren in Mühlig-Hofmannfjella, Dronning Maud Land. Fauna Norwegica, Serie C. Sinclus 14:7-22
Haftorn, S,, Mehlum, F. & Bech, C. 1988. Navigation to nest site in the snow petrel (Pagodrom nivea). Condor 90:484-486
Lorentsen, S.H. & Røv, N. 1994. Sex determination of Antarctic petrels Thalassoica antarctica by discriminant analysis of morphometric characters. Polar Biology 14:143-145
Lorentsen, S.H. & Røv, N. 1995. Incubation and brooding performance of the Antarctic petrel (Thalassoica antarctica) at Svarthamaren, Dronning Maud Land. Ibis 137: 345-351.
Lorentsen, S.H., Klages, N. & Røv, N. 1998. Diet and prey consumption of Antarctic petrels Thalassoica antarctica at Svarthamaren, Dronning Maud Land, and at sea outside the colony. Polar Biology 19: 414-420.
Lorentsen, S.H. 2000. Molecular evidence for extra-pair paternity and female-female pairs in Antarctic petrels. Auk 117:1042-1047
Morgan, F., Barker, G., Briggs, C. Price, R., Keys, H. 2007. Environmental Domains of Antarctica,
Landcare Research New Zealand Ltd
Nygård,T., Lie, E., Røv, N., et al. 2001. Metal dynamics in an Antarctic food chain. Mar. Pollut. Bull. 42: 598-602
Ohta, Y., Torudbakken, B.O. & Shiraishi, K. 1990. Geology of Gjelsvikfjella and Western Muhlig-Hofmannfjella, Dronning Maud Land, East Antarctica. Polar Research 8: 99-126.
Steele, W.K., Pilgrim, R.L.C. & Palma, R.L. 1997. Occurrence of the flea Glaciopsyllus antarcticus and avian lice in central Dronning Maud Land. Polar Biology 18: 292-294.
Schwaller MR, Lynch HJ, Tarroux A, Prehn B (2018) A continent-wide search for Antarctic petrel breeding sites with satellite remote sensing Remote Sensing of Environment 210:444-451
Sæther, B.E., Lorentsen, S.H., Tveraa, T. et al. 1997.Size-dependent variation in reproductive success of a long-lived seabird, the Antarctic petrel (Thalassoica antarctica). AUK 114 (3): 333-340.
Sæther, B.-E., Andersen, R. & Pedersen, H.C. 1993. Regulation of parental effort in a long-lived seabird: An experimental study of the costs of reproduction in the Antarctic petrel (Thalassoica Antarctica). Behavioral Ecology and Sociobiology 33:147-150
Tarroux A et al. (2016) Flexible flight response to challenging wind conditions in a commuting Antarctic seabird: do you catch the drift? Animal Behaviour 113:99-112
Terauds, A., Chown, S. L., Morgan, F, Peat, H.J., Watts, D. J., Keys, H, Convey, P., Bergstrom, D.M.   2012. Conservation biogeography of the Antarctic.

Diversity and Distributions: 1–16.
Tveraa, T., Lorentsen, S.H. & Saether, B.E. 1997. Regulation of foraging trips and costs of incubation shifts in the Antarctic petrel (Thalassoica antarctica). Behavioral Ecology 8: 465-469.
Tveraa, T. & Christensen, G.N. 2002. Body condition and parental decisions in the Snow Petrel (Pagodroma nivea). AUK 119: 266-270.
Tveraa, T., Sæther, B.E., Aanes, R. & Erikstad, K.E. 1998. Regulation of food provisioning in the Antarctic petrel; the importance of parental body condition and chick body mass. Journal of Animal Ecology 67: 699-704.
Tveraa, T., Sæther, B.-E., Aanes, R. & Erikstad, K.E. 1998. Body mass and parental decisions in the Antarctic petrel Thalassoica antarctica: how long should the parents guard the chick? Behavioral Ecology and Sociobiology 43:73-79
van Franeker JA, Gavrilo M, Mehlum F, Veit RR, Woehler EJ (1999) Distribution and abundance of the Antarctic Petrel Waterbirds 22:14-28 doi:10.2307/1521989
Varpe, Ø., Tveraa, T. & Folstad, I. 2004. State-dependent parental care in the Antarctic petrel: responses to manipulated chick age during early chick rearing. Oikos, in press ASPA No. 142: Svarthamaren
Weimerskirch H, Tarroux A, Chastel O, Delord K, Cherel Y, Descamps S (2015) Population-specific wintering distributions of adult south polar skuas over three oceans Mar Ecol Prog Ser 538:229-237

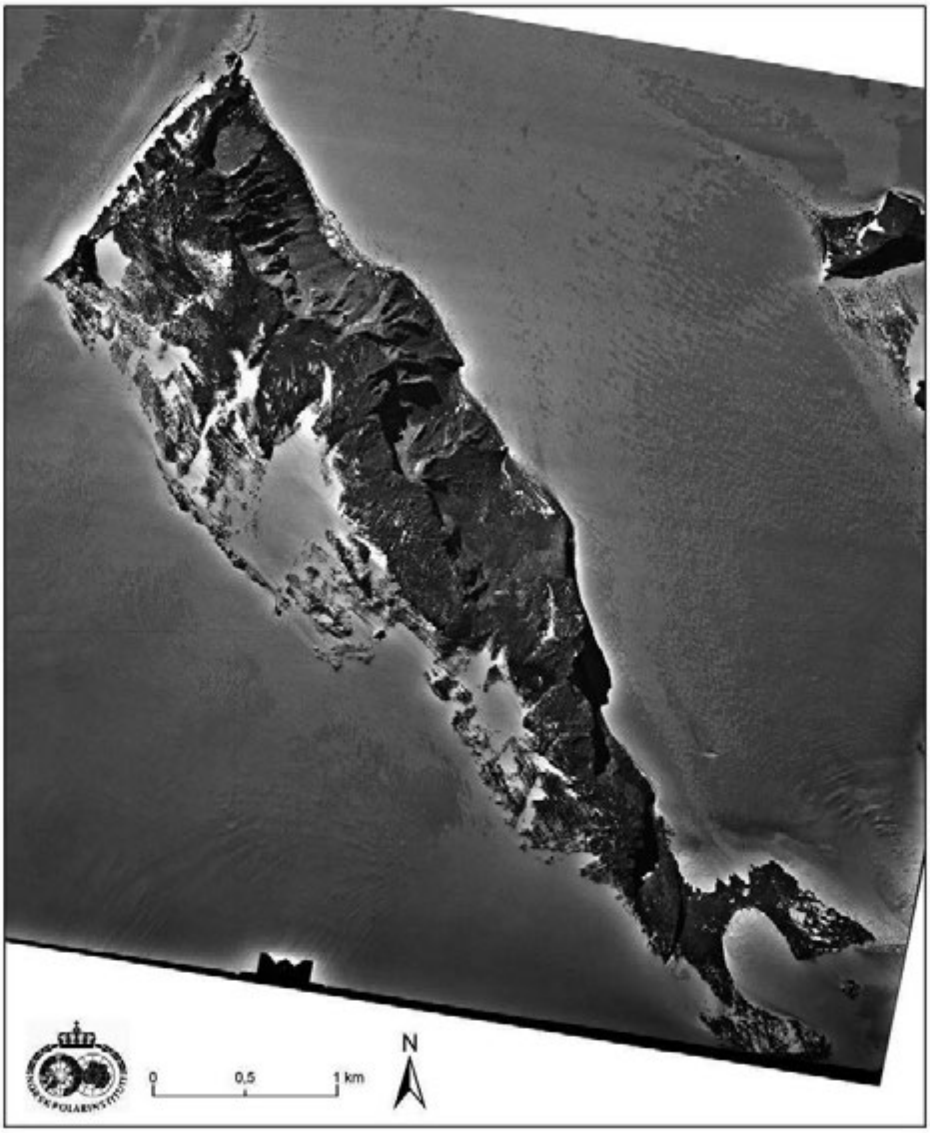
MAP A: Map of ASPA 142 Svarthamaren in Dronning Maud Land



Map B: Svarthamaren – ASPA No. 142. Boundaries and Main Seabird Concentrations (2014).



Map C: Aerial Photograph of Svarthamaren ASPA 142 (1996, Norwegian Polar Institute)



Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 151 (Lions Rump, King George Island, South Shetland Islands): Revised Management Plan

The Representatives,

Recalling Articles 3, 5 and 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, providing for the designation of Antarctic Specially Protected Areas ("ASPA") and approval of Management Plans for those Areas;

Recalling

- Recommendation XVI-2 (1991), which designated Lions Rump, King George Island, South Shetland Islands as Site of Special Interest ("SSSI") No 34 and annexed a Management Plan for the Site;
- Measure 1 (2000), which annexed a revised Management Plan for SSSI 34;
- Decision 1 (2002), which renamed and renumbered SSSI 23 as ASPA 151;
- Measure 11 (2013), which adopted a revised Management Plan;

Recalling that Measure 1 (2000) did not become effective and was withdrawn by Decision 3 (2017);

Noting that the Committee for Environmental Protection ("CEP") has endorsed a revised Management Plan for ASPA 151;

Desiring to replace the existing Management Plan for ASPA 151 with the revised Management Plan;

Recommend to their Governments the following Measure for approval in accordance with paragraph 1 of Article 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty:

That:

1. the revised Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 151 (Lions Rump, King George Island, South Shetland Islands), which is annexed to this Measure, be approved; and
2. the Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 151 annexed to Measure 11 (2013) be revoked.

Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No. 151

LIONS RUMP, KING GEORGE ISLAND, SOUTH SHETLAND ISLANDS

Introduction

Lions Rump (62º08'S; 58º07'W) is located on the southwestern coast of King George Island, South Shetland Islands, covering approximately 1.32 km^2 in area. The Area takes its name from the distinctive rocky hill lying between the southern extremity of King George Bay and Lions Cove.

The Area was originally designated as Site of Special Scientific Interest No 34 through Recommendation XVI-2 (1991, SSSI No 34) after a proposal by Poland on the grounds that it contains diverse biota and geological features and is a representative example of the terrestrial, limnological, and littoral habitats of the maritime Antarctic. The Area was designated primarily to protect its ecological values. It is also valuable as a reference site with diverse avian and mammalian Antarctic fauna, against which disturbance at sites situated near locations of human activity can be measured.

A revised Management Plan was adopted in Measure 1 (2000). The site was re-designated ASPA No 151 in Decision 1 (2002). A second revised Management Plan was adopted in Measure 11 (2013).

Based on the Environmental Domains Analysis for Antarctica (Resolution 3 (2008)) ASPA No 151 lies within Environment A (Antarctic Peninsula northern geologic), which is a small, terrestrial environment around the northern Antarctic Peninsula consisting entirely of ice-free land cover and sedimentary geology (Morgan et al. 2007). Other protected areas containing Domain A include ASPA No 111, ASPA No 128 and ASMA No 1 (Morgan et al. 2007).

Under the Antarctic Conservation Biogeographic Regions classification (Resolution 6 (2012), updated in Resolution 3 (2017)) the Area lies within Antarctic Conservation Biogeographic Region ACBR1 North-east Antarctic Peninsula.

There are five other ASPAs on King George Island and seven more on other islands of the South Shetland Archipelago, but only one of them (ASPA No 128 Western Shore of Admiralty Bay) represents both the same Environmental Domain A, and the same primary reason of designation (area with important or unusual assemblages of species, including major colonies of breeding native birds or mammals) (Morgan et al. 2007). Lions Rump, in contrast to ASPA No 128, is located ca 30 km from the nearest station and has been subjected to minimal disturbance by human activity. Therefore, ASPA No 151 complements ASPA No 128 by protecting a site against which human impact can be measured.

The Area is considered to be sufficiently large to provide adequate protection to the values described below. The biological, geological and scientific values of Lions Rump are vulnerable to human disturbance (e.g trampling, oversampling, disturbance of wildlife). Therefore, it is important that human activities in the Area are managed to minimize the risk of impacts.

The earliest information about penguin populations at Lions Rump was given by Stephens in 1958 (Croxall and Kirkwood 1979). Later studies come from works by Jabłoński (1984), Trivelpiece *et al.* (1987), Ciaputa and Sierakowski (1999) and Korczak-Abshire et al. (2013). Since 2007 a monitoring programme of birds and pinnipeds is carried out in the Area according to CCAMLR standard methods, and since 2014 Lions Rump is one of CEMP (CCAMLR Ecosystem Monitoring Program) sites. In 2014/2015 and 2016/2017 aerial surveys by UAV were conducted in the Area (Zmarz et al 2015).

In 1989/90, 2004, 2007 and 2008 botanical studies were conducted in the Area, and vegetation maps of the Area were done, showing changes in lichen spatial distribution caused by climatic changes (Olech 1993, 1994, pers. comm., Olech and Slaby 2016). An attempt to estimate ages of lichen colonization on the oldest maraines of the White Eagle Glacier was done (Angiel and Dąbski 2012).

Ornithogenic soils in the area of penguin rookery at Lions Rump were described by Tatur (1989), and then included into regional pedological synthesis (Tatur 2002). Surface loamy weathering cover of the Area was not described in soils categories yet. In 1988, when investigations preceding establishment of ASPA No 151 were conducted, southern part of the Area was covered by glacier. Due to White Eagle Glacier retreat in the result of regional climate change, a new ice-free, postglacial landscape has appeared (Angiel and Dąbski 2012).

Paleogene and Neogene rocks from the Area and its close surroundings provide data important for world glacial history. The sequence consists of sedimentary and volcanic rocks from preglacial Eocene terrestrial and fresh water sediments to onlapping sequence of Early Oligocene diamictict and Miocene pillow lavas. Eocene sedimentary, pyroclastic and andesite rocks covering a main part of Area belong to “Lions Cove Formation” (Birkenmajer 1980, 1981, 1994; 2001; Birkenmajer et al. 1991a, b). “Lions Cove Formation” was excluded from “Lions Rump Group” of Barton (1961, 1965). Eocene age for “Lions Cove Formation” was proposed by Smellie et al. (1984) and confirmed by K-Ar determinations (Pańczyk and Nawrocki 2011,Tatur et al. 2009, Krajewski et al. 2009, Krajewski et al. 2010, Tatur et al. 2010., Krajewski et al. 2011). Oligocene tillites and glaciomarine sediments of “Polonez Cove Formation” (see Birkenmajer 2001) border the Area forming steep rocky walls from the west, south and east sides. Central part of the area is covered by the youngest Miocene andesite lavas an pillow-lavas forming hummocks along cliff (K-Ar datings from Ace Group, pers. comm.).

1. Description of values to be protected

Lions Rump was first designated a protected area as a representative of the terrestrial, limnological and littoral ecosystems of King George Island, possessing diverse biota and rock formations (volcanic and sedimentary rocks important for world geological history). In the Antarctic Protected Areas Database it is characterized as an area with important or unusual assemblages of species, including major colonies of breeding native birds or mammals.

The original goals for designating the Area are still relevant.

The breeding avifauna of the Area is diverse and numerous, including three pygoscelide penguin species (Adélie penguin *Pygoscelis adeliae*, Gentoo penguin *Pygoscelis papua* and Chinstrap penguin *Pygoscelis antarcticus*), as well as eight other bird species such as Cape pigeon *Daption capense*, Wilson's storm petrel *Oceanites oceanicus*, black-bellied storm petrel *Fregetta tropica*, snowy sheathbill *Chionis alba*, South polar skua *Catharacta maccormicki*, Brown skua *Stercorarius antarcticus*, Dominican gull *Larus dominicanus*, and Antarctic tern *Sterna vittata*. Since 2013/2014 unsuccessful breeding attempts by king penguins (*Aptenodytes patagonicus*) were observed in the Area (Gryz et al, 2019).

Furthermore, Elephant seals (*Mirounga leonina*), Weddell seals (*Leptonychotes weddellii*), Leopard seals (*Hydrurga leptonyx*), Crabeater seals (*Lobodon carcinophagus*), and Fur seals (*Arctocephalus gazella*) rest and/or breed on the beaches.

ASPA No 151 includes unique pre-glacial Eocene and partially glacial Oligocene sequences. Continental glacial sequence of “Polonez Formation” (tillites and glacial diamicts bearing erratic clasts) provides the oldest known hard evidence of the coming Cenozoic glaciation (28-32 SIS dating). Outcrops providing hard data of this event should be protected; collecting petrified wood, rare leaves, layers of coal representing lustros (vitrinite) brown-coal methaphase and volcanic bombs from tuff deposits in the Area should be limited to the necessary minimum. Eocene flora (Mozer, 2013) is identical to flora cropping from the other side of White Eagle Glacier (Zastawniak 1981, 1990), and consistent with regional floristic pattern (Pool et al. 2001).

Lions Rump contains rich lichen flora, and numerous stands of two native vascular plants, *Colobanthus quitensis* and *Deschampsia antarctica*. The lichen biota of the Area consists of 140 taxa, making it one of the most diverse sites in the Antarctic (Olecha 2001; Olech and Słaby 2016).

The original values of the Area associated with the marine bottom fauna cannot be confirmed as one of the primary reasons for special protection of the Area because there is a lack of new data available describing the communities. However, future research may reaffirm them. Therefore, marine boundary of the Area has not been redefined.

The Area has not been subjected to frequent visits, scientific research and sampling. Human presence in the Area is currently limited to two persons carrying out monitoring research between 1st November and 30th March, and infrequent short visits by other scientists. Therefore, the Area may be regarded as a reference site for future comparative studies.

Since 2007 a monitoring programme of birds and pinnipeds is carried out in the Area, in accordance with standard CCAMLR methods (pinniped census every 10 days, penguins' and other birds' nests census once during breeding season, fledglings weighting once during the season, recording of vagrant birds). Data serve as a basis for the conservation of Antarctic marine living resources, to detect and record significant changes in critical components of the ecological system, and to compare population trends with other areas (such as ASPA No 128 Western Shore of Admiralty Bay) that experience the greater level of human activities.

2. Aims and objectives

Management of the Area aims to:

- avoid degradation of, or substantial risk to, the values of the Area by preventing unnecessary human disturbance to the Area;
- allow scientific research in the Area provided it is for compelling reason which cannot be served elsewhere, and which will not jeopardize the natural ecological system in the Area. Invasive practices used during biological research are excluded in this area;
- allow visits for management purposes in support of the aims of the management plan;
- prevent or minimize the introduction and dispersal of non-native species (plants, animals and microbes);
- preserve the Area as a reference site for future comparative studies.

3. Management activities

The following management activities shall be undertaken to protect the values of the Area:

- Visits shall be made as necessary to assess whether the ASPA continues to serve the purposes for which it was designated and to ensure management and maintenance measures are adequate.
- The Management Plan shall be reviewed at least every five years and updated as required.
- A copy of this Management Plan shall be made available at Arctowski Station (Poland: 62º09'34"S, 058º28'15"W), Comandante Ferraz Station (Brazil: 62º05'07"S, 58º23'32"W), Machu Picchu Station (Perú: 62º05'30"S, 58º28'30"W), Copacabana Field Station (USA: 62º10'45" S, 58º26'49" W), Hennequin Point Refuge (Equador: 62º07'16"S, 58º23'42"W) and in the refuge proximate to the Area (62º07'54"S, 58º09'20"W).
- The staff authorized to access the Area shall be specifically instructed on the conditions of this Management Plan.
- Markers, signs and other structures erected within the Area for scientific or

management purposes shall be secured and maintained in good condition and removed when no longer required.

- Approach distances to fauna must be respected, except when the scientific projects may require otherwise and this is specified in the relevant permits.
- All scientific and management activities within the Area should be subject to an Environmental Impact Assessement (Annex I of the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty).
- Where appropriate, National Antarctic Programmes are encouraged to coordinate activities to prevent excessive sampling of biological and geological material within the Area, to prevent or minimize the danger of introduction and dispersal of non-native species, and to keep environmental impacts, including cumulative impacts, to an absolute minimum.

4. Period of designation

The Area is designated for an indefinite period.

5. Maps

Map 1. The location of Lions Rump in relation to King George Island.
Map 2. Lions Rump in greater detail.
Map 3. Vegetation map of Lions Rump.
Map 4. Geological map of Lions Rump.

6. Description of the area

6(i) Geographical co-ordinates, boundary markers and natural features

The Area is located on the southern coast of King George Bay, King George Island, in the South Shetlands Islands (Map 1, 2). It is described as all land and sea falling within the area bounded by the following co-ordinates:

62°07'48"S, 58°09'17"W;
62°07'49"S, 58°07'14"W;
62°08'19"S, 58°07'19"W;
62°08'16"S, 58°09'15"W;
62º08'16"S, 58º09'15"W.

The Area includes the littoral and sublittoral zones extending from the eastern end of Lajkonik Rock to the most northerly point of Twin Pinnacles. From this point the boundary extends to the easternmost end of the columnar plug of Lions Head to the east of White Eagle Glacier. On land, the Area includes the coast with raised beaches, freshwater pools and streams on the south side of King George Bay, around Lions Cove, and the moraines and slopes which lead to the lower ice tongue of White Eagle

Glacier, then westward to a small moraine which protrudes through the ice cap south-east of Sukiennice Hills.

The ice-free area of ASPA No 151 exhibits a range of geomorphological features, including beaches of various width and length, moraines, hills and inland rocks (Map 4). The highest point rises to the altitude of c. 190m. Geologically, Lions Rump area is made up mainly of tuff, fuffite, lahar bearing wood and andesite basalt lava layer interbedding, deposited inside tectonic paleovalley. In the upper part of this sequence andesite lava flow (42-45 Ma K/Ar dating) preceded by lahars occurs. These terrestrial pyroclastics were exposed to alluvial erosion and valleys were ultimately filled with massive conglomerate (Conglomorate Bluff). All that complex of rocks belonging to Eocene "Lions Cove Formation" was cut by younger andesite dykes (Lions Rump). "Lions Cove Formation" is topped by glaciomarine clastic sediments of "Oligocene Polonez Cove Formation" (Krakowiak and Low Head Members). Oligocene rocks form steep walls surrounding the Area. Area is largely covered by glacial moraines and slope loamy deposits. The front of White Eagle Glacier is marked by large, dome-shaped moraine ridges belonging to several Holocene stages of glacier advance and retreat. Eocene sediments were affected by complex alteration related to post magmatic changes, weathering processes and low-grade metamorphism. Chloritization, palagonization and zeolitization is observed along all the sediments. Terrestial Eocene and glaciomarine Oligocene are covered by Miocene andesite lavas and pillow lavas flows (c. 20 Ma, ACE group pers. com.). That volcanic rock occupies central part of ASPA No 151 territory, and most of it forms Sukiennice Hills.

Large numbers of penguins breed throughout the Area. In 2018/19 there were 3,473 occupied nests of Adèlie penguins (*Pygoscelis adeliae*), 3,789 occupied nests of Gentoo penguins (*Pygoscelis papua*), and 42 occupied nests of Chinstrap penguins (*Pygoscelis antarcticus*) (Polish Antarctic Station Report 2018/19). Since 1995/96 a decrease in Adèlie penguin breeding population and an increase in Gentoo penguin breeding population were observed. Chinstrap population is not numerous enough to detect any statistically significant changes (Angiel and Korczak 2008; Angiel and Korczak-Abshire 2011; Zmarz et al. 2015).

There are 8 other bird species breeding in the Area (Cape pigeon (*Daption capense*) , Wilson's storm petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus*), Black-bellied storm petrel (*Fregetta tropica*), Snowy sheathbill (*Chionis albus*) , South polar skua (*Catharacta maccormicki*), Brown skua (*Stercorarius antarcticus*), Dominican gull (*Larus dominicanus*), and Antarctic tern (*Sterna vittata*). In 2018/19 the most numerous were: Dominican gull (17 nests), Cape pigeon (8 nests) and Antarctic tern (12 nests) (Polish Antarctic Station Report 2018/19).

Since 2013/2014 unsuccessful breeding attempts by King Penguins (*Aptenodytes patagonicus*) were observed in the Area (King penguin couple laying eggs, chick hatched and found dead).

Elephant seals (*Mirounga leonina*), Weddell seals (*Leptonychotes weddellii*), Leopard seals (*Hydrurga leptonyx*), Crabeater seals (*Lobodon carcinophagus*), and

Fur seals (*Arctocephalus gazella*) rest and/or breed on the beaches. In 2018/19 four harems and 130 pups of Elephant seals were observed in the Area. The maximum numbers of Fur seals exceeded 3008 individuals, in the first half of February (Polish Antarctic Station Report 2018/19).

Approximately 13 taxa of macroalgae were found in the littoral zone of the Area. The most common among them were: green algae (*Monostroma hariotti*), red algae (*Georgiella confluens, Iridaea cordata* and *Leptosarca simplex*), and brown algae (*Adenocystis utricularis* and *Ascoseira mirabilis*). There is rich and abundant bottom fauna in the marine part of the Area, with Bivalve as the dominant group. Both Amphipoda and Polychaeta also contribute significantly to benthic fauna abundance. Species composition and proportion of endemics indicate that King George Bay is transitional between Antarctic and Subantarctic (unpublished data). Marine part of the Area is shallow, with a lot of skerries and rocks, and is not accessible to ships.
The lichen (lichenized fungi) biota of the Area consist of 140 taxa (Map 3). Moreover 11 lichenicolous fungi species were recorded. The most diverse genera are Caloplaca (19 species), Buellia (9 species) and Lecanora (8 species). The highest species richness was found in places with diversified habitat, eg, with rocks, near penguin colonies or in places of bird perching. The lowest species richness was found in recently deglaciated terraine (young moraines) or in snowbeds. Since 1988/90 changes in lichen spatial distribution caused by glacial retreat and resulting water deficit were observed. Liverworts have little importance in local plant communities. They occur mostly in moss banks. Fungi are rare or uncommon. Knowledge of the Area freshwater algae is poor.

6 (ii) Access to the Area

Access shall be by small boats landing outside the Area. Accessible beach is situated outside the western boundary of the Area, in front of the refuge (62º07'54"S, 58º09'20"W).

Access to the Area from the recommended landing site shall be on foot.

Helicopters may land in the Area only in case of emergency. Suggested landing site is situated on flat area 50-100 m eastward from the refuge, on both sides of the Area boundary. Changeable distribution of marine mammals, snow patches and stream tributories should be taken into account during landing. Landing on vegetation or near the wildlife should be avoided to the maximum extent possible. To avoid overflying breeding sites, approach should preferably be from the north, or west.
Overflight operations by fixed-wing aircraft and helicopters shall be carried out, as a minimum requirement, in accordance with the “Guidelines for the Operation of Aircraft near Concentrations of Birds” contained in Resolution 2 (2004).

6 (iii) Location of structures within the Area

A sign-board is located on the wall of the refuge outside the western border of the Area.

A four-berth wooden refuge (62º07'54"S, 58º09'20"W) constructed by Poland is located on a flat marine gravel terrace about 50m outside the western boundary of the Area.

The nearest scientific research stations are located ca 30 km west (Arctowski Station – Poland, 62º09'34"S, 058º28'15"W) and north-west (Comandante Ferraz – Brazil, 62º05'07"S, 58º23'32"W) from the Area.

6 (iv) Location of other Protected Areas within close proximity

ASPA No 125, Fildes Peninsula, King George Island (25 de Mayo), and ASPA No 150, Ardley Island, Maxwell Bay, King George Island (25 de Mayo), lie about 50 km west of Lions Rump. ASPA No 171 Narebski Point, Barton Peninsula, King George Island lies about 40 km west of Lions Rump. ASPA No 132, Potter Peninsula, King George Island (25 de Mayo), South Shetland Islands, lies about 35 km to the west. ASMA No 1, Admiralty Bay, King George Island and ASPA No 128, Western shore of Admiralty Bay, King George Island, South Shetland Islands, lie about 20 km to the west.

6(v) Special zones within the Area

None

7. Permit conditions

7 (i) General permit conditions

- Permits may be issued only by appropriate national authorities as designated under Annex V Article 7 of the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty.
- Conditions for issuing a permit for the Area are that:
- it is issued only for a compelling scientific purpose which cannot be served elsewhere, or
- it is issued for essential management purposes such as inspection, maintenance or review,
- the actions permitted will not jeopardize the natural ecological system or scientific values of the Area,
- any management activities are in support of the objectives of the Management Plan,
- the actions permitted are in accordance with this Management Plan,
- the permit, or an authorized copy, must be carried within the Area,
- a permit is issued for a stated period only,
- a report is supplied to the authority named in the Permit,
- the appropriate authority should be notified of any activities/measures undertaken that were not included in the Permit.

7 (ii) Access to and movement within or over the Area

Access to, and movement within the Area shall be on foot from the direction of the recommended landing site on the beach near the refuge.

Access shall be limited in order to avoid disturbance to birds, and damage to vegetation and geological features.

Land vehicles are prohibited in the Area. Helicopters may land only in case of emergency (see *6(ii)*).

Overflight of bird colonies within the Area by Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS) shall not be permitted unless for scientific or operational purposes, and in accordance with a permit issued by an appropriate national authority. Guidance can be found in *Environmental Guidelines for operation of Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS) in Antarctica* (Resolution 4 (2018).

No pedestrian routes are designated within the Area, but persons on foot should at all times avoid disturbance to birds and mammals, and damage to vegetation and paleontological (marine fauna in Polonez Cove Formation, wood and rare leaves in lahars) and geological (erratics) evidences.

7 (iii) Activities which are or may be conducted within the Area, including restrictions on time and place

- Compelling scientific research which cannot be conducted outside the Area, and which will not damage or interfere with any aspect of the Area's biological, geological, or aesthetic values.
- Essential management activities, including monitoring.

7 (iv) Installation, modification or removal of structures

No new structures are to be erected in the Area, or scientific equipment installed, except for compelling scientific or management reasons and for a pre-established period, as specified in a Permit. Installation (including site selection), maintenance, modification or removal of structures and equipment shall be undertaken in a manner that minimises disturbance to the Area. All structures or scientific equipment installed in the Area shall be clearly identified by country, name of the principal investigator and year of installation.

All such items should be free of organisms, propagules (e.g. seeds, eggs) and non-sterile soil, and be made of materials that can withstand the environmental conditions and pose minimal risk of contamination of the Area. Removal of specific structures or equipment for which the Permit has expired shall be a condition of the Permit. Permanent structures or installations are prohibited.

7 (v) Location of the field camps

Camping is prohibited in the Area.

A four-berth wooden refuge constructed by Poland is located on a flat marine gravel terrace ca 50 m outside the western boundary of the Area (62º07'54"S, 58º09'20"W). The refuge is used mostly by Polish researchers monitoring birds and pinnipeds in the Area. Additional camping outside the Area is possible on non-vegetated sites near the refuge. Care should be taken to minimize disturbance to wildlife.

7 (vi) Restrictions on materials and organisms which may be brought into the Area

No living animals, plant material or microorganisms shall be deliberately introduced into the Area. To ensure that the floristic and ecological values of the Area are maintained, special precautions shall be taken against accidentally introducing microbes, invertebrates or plants from other Antarctic sites, including stations, or from regions outside Antarctica. Special care must be extended to ensure that non-native grass *Poa annua* that is present in the vicinity of Arctowski Station will not be inadvertently introduced to the Area. All sampling equipment or markers brought into the Area shall be cleaned or sterilized. Introduction of non-sterile soil is prohibited.

To the maximum extent practicable, footwear, outer clothing, backpacks and other equipment used or brought into the Area shall be thoroughly cleaned before entering the Area. *CEP Non-native Species Manual* and *COMNAP/SCAR Checklists for supply chain managers of National Antarctic Programmes for the reduction in risk of transfer of non-native species* shall be used for further guidance. Potential non-native species spotted in the Area should be reported to the appropriate authorities.
In view of the presence of breeding bird colonies within the Area no poultry products, including food products containing uncooked dried eggs, shall be released into the Area or into adjacent sea.

No herbicides or pesticides shall be brought into the Area. Any other chemicals, including radio-nuclides or stable isotopes, which may be introduced for scientific or management purposes specified in the Permit, shall be removed from the Area at or before the conclusion of the activity for which the Permit was granted. Release of radio-nuclides or stable isotopes directly into the environment in a way that renders them unrecoverable should be avoided.

Fuel or other chemicals shall not be stored in the Area unless specifically authorised by Permit condition. They shall be stored and handled in a way that minimises the risk of their accidental spill into the environment, and their quantity shall be kept to the minimum needed for scientific or management purposes specified in the Permit. Materials introduced into the Area shall be for a stated period only and shall be removed by the end of that stated period.

If release occurs which is likely to compromise the values of the Area, removal is encouraged only where the impact of removal is not likely to be greater than that of leaving the material in situ. The appropriate authority should be notified of anything released and not removed that was not included in the authorised Permit.

7 (vii) Taking or harmful interference with native flora and fauna

Taking or harmful interference with native flora and fauna is prohibited, except by Permit issued in accordance with Annex II to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty. Where taking of or harmful interference with animals is involved, the *SCAR Code of Conduct for Use of Animals for Scientific Purposes in Antarctica* should be used as a minimum standard.

Information on taking and harmful interference will be duly exchanged through the Antarctic Treaty Information Exchange system.

To prevent human disturbance of the breeding penguin colony, visitors shall not approach within 10 m of the colony during breeding season, unless authorised by Permit for specific scientific or management purposes.

7 (viii) Collection and removal of anything not brought into the Area by the Permit holder

Collection or removal of anything not brought into the Area by the permit holder shall only be in accordance with a Permit and should be limited to the minimum necessary to meet scientific or management needs.

Permits shall not be granted if there is reasonable concern that the sampling proposed would take, remove or damage such quantities of soil, sediment, flora or fauna that their distribution or abundance within the Area would be significantly affected.

Other material of human origin likely to compromise the values of the Area (e.g. plastic debris) which was not brought into the Area by the permit holder or otherwise authorised, may be removed from the Area unless the environmental impact of the removal is likely to be greater than leaving the material in situ; if this is the case the appropriate Authority must be notified and approval obtained.

7 (ix) Disposal of waste

All wastes, including human waste, shall be removed from the Area.

7 (x) Measures that may be necessary to ensure that the aims and objectives of the Management Plan continue to be met

Permits may be granted to enter the Area to carry out scientific research, monitoring and site inspection activities, which may involve the collection of small number of samples for analysis, to erect and maintain signpost, or to carry out protective measures.

Scientific activities shall be performed in accordance with *SCAR's environmental code of conduct for terrestrial scientific field research in Antarctica.*

Any specific sites of long-term monitoring shall be appropriately marked, and the markers or signs maintained.

To avoid interference with long-term research and monitoring activities, consultations and exchange of information with established programs working at Lions Rump are recommended.

7 (xi) Requirements for reports

The principal permit holder for each visit to the Area shall submit a report to the appropriate national authority as soon as practicable, and no later than six months after the visit has been completed.

Such reports should include, as appropriate, the information identified in the Visit Report form contained in Appendix 2 to the Guide to the Preparation of Management Plans for Antarctic Specially Protected Areas (Resolution 2/2011).

If appropriate, the national authority should also forward a copy of the visit report to the Party that proposed the Management Plan, to assist in managing the Area and reviewing the Management Plan.

Parties should, wherever possible, deposit originals or copies of such original visit reports in a publicly accessible archive to maintain a record of usage, for the purpose of any review of the Management Plan and in organising the scientific use of the Area.

The relevant authority should be notified of any activity undertaken, any measure taken or material released and not removed which are not covered by a permit.

8. Supporting documentation

COMNAP/SCAR Checklists for supply chain managers of National Antarctic Programmes for the reduction in risk of transfer of non-native species – ATCM XXXIV - CEP XIV, Buenos Aires (available at: *https://www.comnap.aq/Shared%20Documents/checklistsbrochure.pdf*)

Environmental Guidelines for operation of Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS) in Antarctica. Resolution 4 (2018) - ATCM XLI - CEP XXI, Buenos Aires (available at: *https://www.ats.aq/devAS/info_measures_listitem.aspx?lang=e&id=679*)

Guidelines for the Operation of Aircrafts near Concentrations of Birds in Antarctica. Resolution 2 (2004) – ATCM XXVII - CEP VII, Cape Town (available at: *http://www.ats.aq/documents/recatt/Att224_e.pdf*)

Non-Native Species Manual. Resolution 4 (2016) – ATCM XXXIX – CEP XIX, Santiago (available at: *https://www.ats.aq/devAS/info_measures_listitem.aspx?lang=e&id=640*)

SCAR Code of Conduct for the Use of Animals for Scientific Purposes (available at: *http://www.scar.org/treaty/atcmxxxiv/ATCM34_ip053_e.pdf*)

SCAR's Environmental Code Of Conduct For Terrestrial Scientific Field Research In Antarctica. Resolution 5 (2018) - ATCM XLI - CEP XXI, Buenos Aires (avaible at: *https://www.ats.aq/devAS/info_measures_listitem.aspx?lang=e&id=680*)

Angiel P.J., Dąbski M. 2012. Lichenometric ages of the Little Ice Age moraines of King George Island and of the last volcanic activity on Penguin Island (West Antarctica). Geografiska Annaler: Series A, Physical Geography, 94, 395–412.

Angiel P.J., Korczak M. 2008. Comparison of population size of penguins concerning present and archive data from ASPA 128 and ASPA 151 (King George Island). Arctic and Antarctic Perspectives in the International Polar Year. SCAR/IASC IPY. Open Science Conference. St. Petersburg, Russia. July 8th - 11th 2008. Abstract volume: 241.

Angiel P.J., Korczak-Abshire M. 2011. Recent Climate Change Effect on Penguins and Pinnipeds, King George Island, Antarctica. Newsletter for the Canadian Antarctic Research Network, 30, 10-14.

Barton C.M. 1961. The geology of King George Island. Preliminary Report, Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey 12: 1-18.

Barton C.M. 1965. The geology of South Shetland Islands. III. The stratigraphy of King George Island. Sci. Rep. of BAS 44, 1-33.

Birkenmajer K 1994. Geology of Tertiary glacigenic deposits and volcanics (Polonia Glacier Group and Chopin Ridge Group) at Lions Rump (SSSI No. 34), King George Island, West Antarctica. Bulletin of the Polish Academy of Sciences, Earth Sciences, 42, 165-180.

Birkenmajer K. 1980. Report on geological investigations of King George Island, South Shetlands (West Antarctica), in 1978/79. Studia Geologica Polonica, 64, 89-105.

Birkenmajer K. 1981. Geological relations at Lions Rump, King George Island. Studia Geologica Polonica, 72, 75-87.

Birkenmajer K. 2001., Mesozoic and Cenozoic stratigraphic units in parts of the South Shetland Islands and Northern Antarctic Peninsula (as used by the Polish Antarctic Programmes). Studia Geologica Polonica, 118, 5-188.

Birkenmajer K., Frankiewicz J.K., Wagner M. 1991a. Tertiary coal from the Lions Cove Formation, King George Island, West Antarctica. Polish Polar Research, 12, 221-249.

Birkenmajer K., Gaździcki A., Gradziński R., Kreuzer H., Porębski S.J., Tokarski A.K. 1991b. Origin and age of pectinid-bearing conglomerate (Tertiary) on King George Island, West Antarctica. Geological Evolution of Antarctica,

edited by M.R.A. Thomson, J.A. Crame, and J.W. Thomson, pp. 663-665, Cambridge University Press.
Ciaputa P., Sierakowski K. 1999. Long-term population changes of Adelie, chinstrap, and gentoo penguins in the regions of SSSI No. 8 and SSSI No. 34, King George Island, Antarctica. Polish Polar Research, 20, 355-365.
Croxall J.P., Kirkwood E.D. 1979. The distribution of penguins on the Antarctic Peninsula and islands of the Scotia Sea. Life Science Division, British Antarctic Survey, Cambridge: 186.
Gryz P., Gerlée A., Korczak-Abshire M. 2019. New breeding site and records of king penguin (*Aptenodytes patagonicus*) on King George Island (South Shetlands, Western Antarctic). Polar Record, 54, 275-283.
Jabłoński B. 1984. Distribution and numbers of penguins in the region of King George Island (South Shetland Islands) in the breeding season 1980/1981). Polish Polar Research, 5, 17-30.
Korczak-Abshire M., Angiel P.J., Wierzbicki G. 2011. Records of white-rumped sandpiper (*Calidris fuscicollis*) on the South Shetland Islands. Polar Record, 47 (242), 262–267.
Korczak-Abshire M., Węgrzyn M., Angiel P.J., Lisowska M. 2013. Pygoscelid penguin breeding distribution and population trends at Lions Rump rookery (South Shetland Islands). Polish Polar Research, 30, 87-99.
Krajewski K., Sidorczyk M., Tatur A., Zieliński G. 2009. Lithostratigraphy and depositional history of the earliest Miocene glaco-marine sequences at Cape Melville Formation, King George Island, West Antarctica (poster). The First ACE IPY Conference in Granada, Spain, September 2009.
Krajewski K.P., Tatur A., Molnar F., Mozer A., Pecskay Z., Sidorczuk M., Zieliński G., Kusiak M., Keewook Y.I., Namhoon Kim. 2011. Paleoclimatic Stages in the Eocene-Miocene succession on King George Islans: new chronology data and relevance for glaciation of Antarctica. ACE Symposium Edinburgh.
Krajewski K.P., Tatur A., Mozer A., Pecskay Z., Zieliski G. 2010. Cenozoic climate evolution in the northern Antarctic Peninsula region: geochronological paleoenvironments on King George Island. Presentation No PS2-C.40. International Polar Year Conference – Oslo Science Conference. 8-12 June 2010.
Morgan, F., Barker, G., Briggs, C., Price, R. and Keys, H. 2007. Environmental Domains of Antarctica Version 2.0 Final Report, Manaaki Whenua Landcare Research New Zealand Ltd. 89.
Mozer A. 2013. Eocene sedimentary facies in volcanogenic succession on King George Island, South Shetland Islands: a record of pre-ice sheet terrestrial environments in West Antarctica. Geological Quaterly 57: 385-394.
Olech M. 1993. Flora porostów i szata roślinna Południowych Szetlandów (Antarktyka). Wiadomości Geobotaniczne 37, 209-211.
Olech M. 1994. Lichenological assessment of the Cape Lions Rump, King George Island, South Shetland Islands; a baseline for monitoring biological changes. Polish Polar Research, 15, 111-130.
Olech M., Słaby A. 2016. Changes in the lichen biota of the Lions Rump area, King George Island, Antarctica, over the last 20 years. Polar Biology, 20, 39:1499–1503.
Olech, M. 2001. Annotated checklist of Antarctic lichens and lichenicolous fungi.

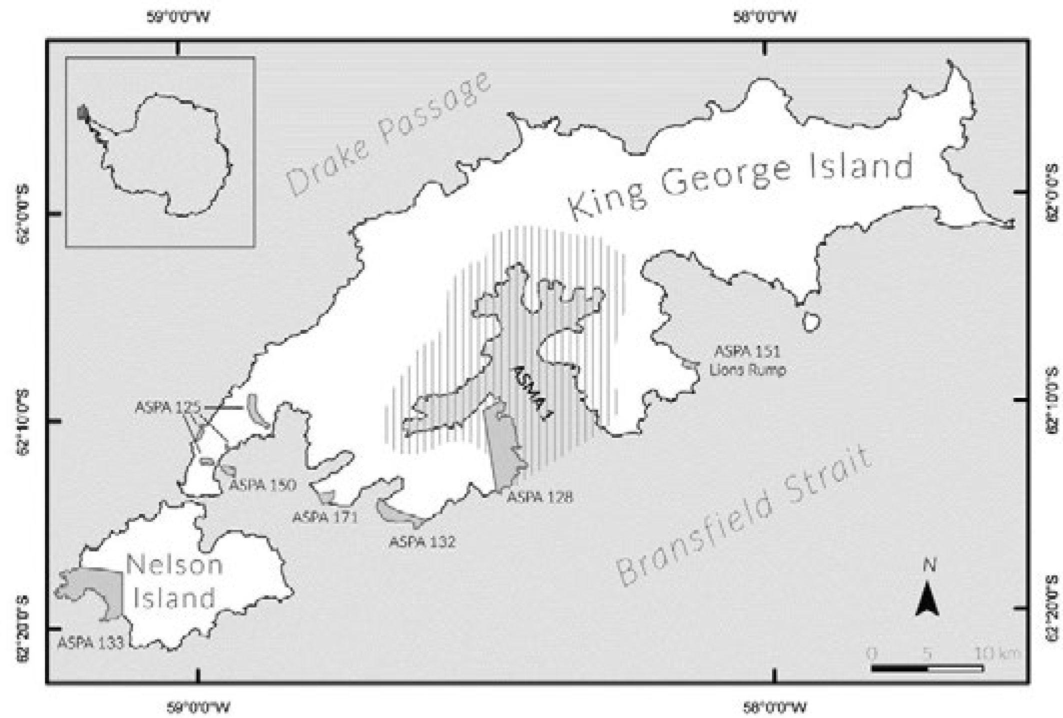
Institute of Botany of the Jagiellonian University, Kraków.
Pańczyk M., Nawrocki J. 2011. Geochronology of selected andesitic lavas from the King George Bay area (SE King George Island). Geological Quarterly, 55, 323–334.
Poole D., Hunt R.J., Cantrill D.J. 2001. A Fossil Wood Flora from King George Island: Ecological Implications for a AntarcticEocene Vegetation. Annals of Botany, 88, 33-54.
Smellie J.L., Pankhurest R.J., Thompson M.R.A., Davies R.E.S. 1984. The geology of South Shetland Islands. VI. Stratigraphy, geochemistry and evolution. Scientific Reports, British Antarctic Survey, 87: 1-85.
Tatur A. 1989. Ornithogenic Soils of the maritime Antarctic. Pol. Polar Res. 10, 4; 481 - 532.
Tatur A. 2002. Ornithogenic Ecosystems in the maritime Antarctic - formation, development and disintegration. In: Beyer L. and Bölter M. (eds). Geoecology of Terrestrial Antarctic Ice-Free Coastal Landscapes, Ecological Studies 154, Springer Verlag 161-184.
Tatur A. Krajewski K.P., Pecskay Z., Zieliński G., del Valle R.A., Mozer A. 2010. Suplementary evidence of Paleogene environment changes in West Antarctica. SCAR Conference. Buenos Aires, July 2010.
Tatur A., Krajewski K.P., Angiel P., Bylina P., Delura K., Nawrocki J., Pańczyk M., Peckay Z., Zieliński G., Mozer A. 2009. Lithostratigraphy, dating, and correlation of cenozoic glacial and interglacial sequences on King George Island, West Antarctica (poster). The First ACE IPY Conference in Granada, Spain, September 2009.
Trivelpiece W.Z., Trivelpiece S.G., Volkman N. 1987. Ecological segregation of Adélie, gentoo, and chinstrap penguins at King George Island, Antarctica. Ecology 68: 351-361.
Zastawniak E. 1981. Tertiary leaf flora from the Point Hennequin Group of King George Island (South Shetland Islands, Antarctica). Preliminary report. Studia Geologica Polonica 72, 97–108.
Zastawniak E. 1990. Late Cretaceous leaf flora of King George Island, West Antarctica. In Proceedings of the symposium: Paleofloristic and paleoclimatic changes in the Cretaceous and Tertiary (eds Knobloch, E. & Kvacek, Z.), pp. 81–85 (Geological Survey, Prague).
Zmarz A., Korczak-Abshire M., Storvold R., Rodzewicz M., Kędzierska I. 2015. Indicator species population monitoring in Antarctica with UAV. The International Archives of the Photogrammetry, Remote Sensing and Spatial Information Sciences, Volume XL-1/W4.

Maps of Lions Rump:

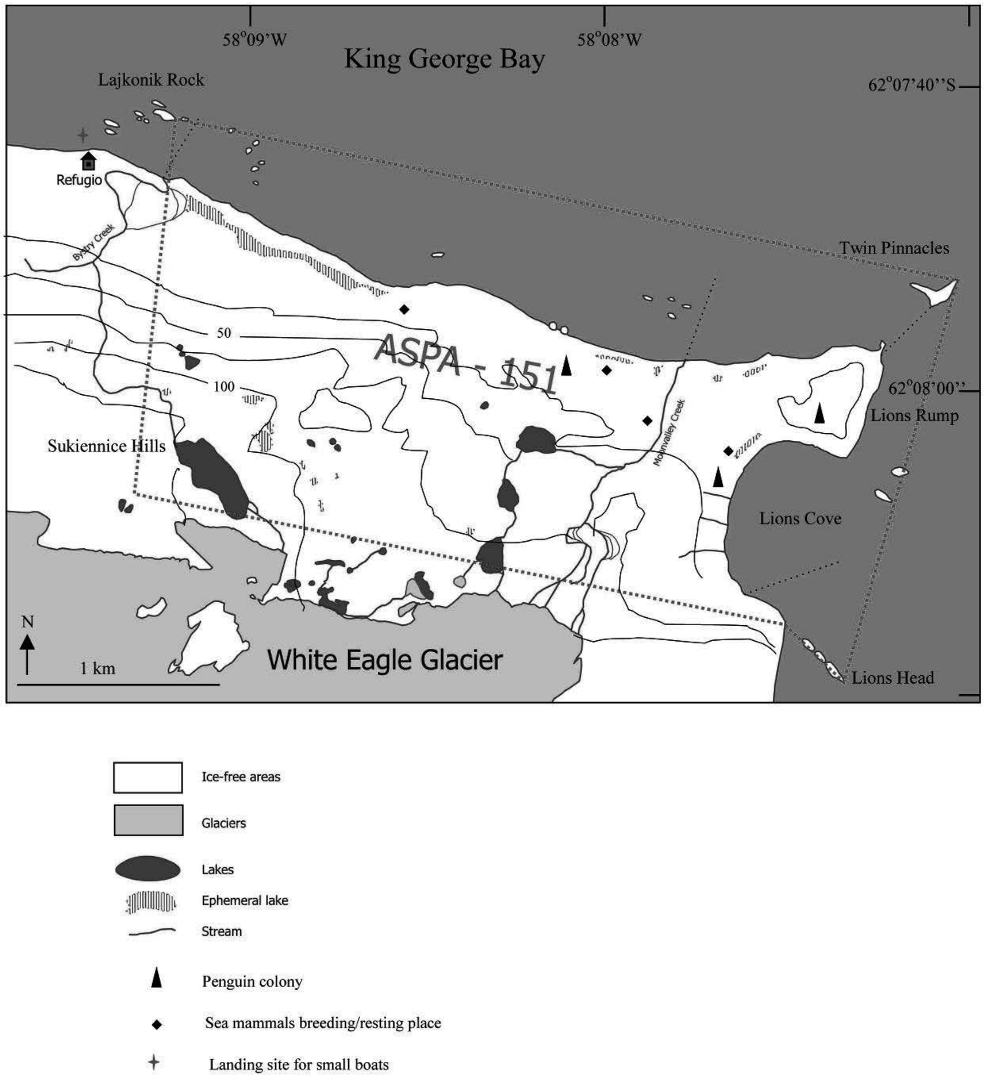
Battke Z., Cisak J. 1988. Cape Lions Rump, King George Bay, 1:5000. Printed by E. Romer State Cartographic Publishing House, Warsaw.

Angiel P.J., Gasek A. Lions Rump and Polonia Glacier, King George Island. Map prepared during the 33rd Polish Antarctic Expedition to Arctowski Station. Glacier front mapped in January 2009. Detailed hydrography only for ASPA 151, generalized in the Polonia Glacier forefront.

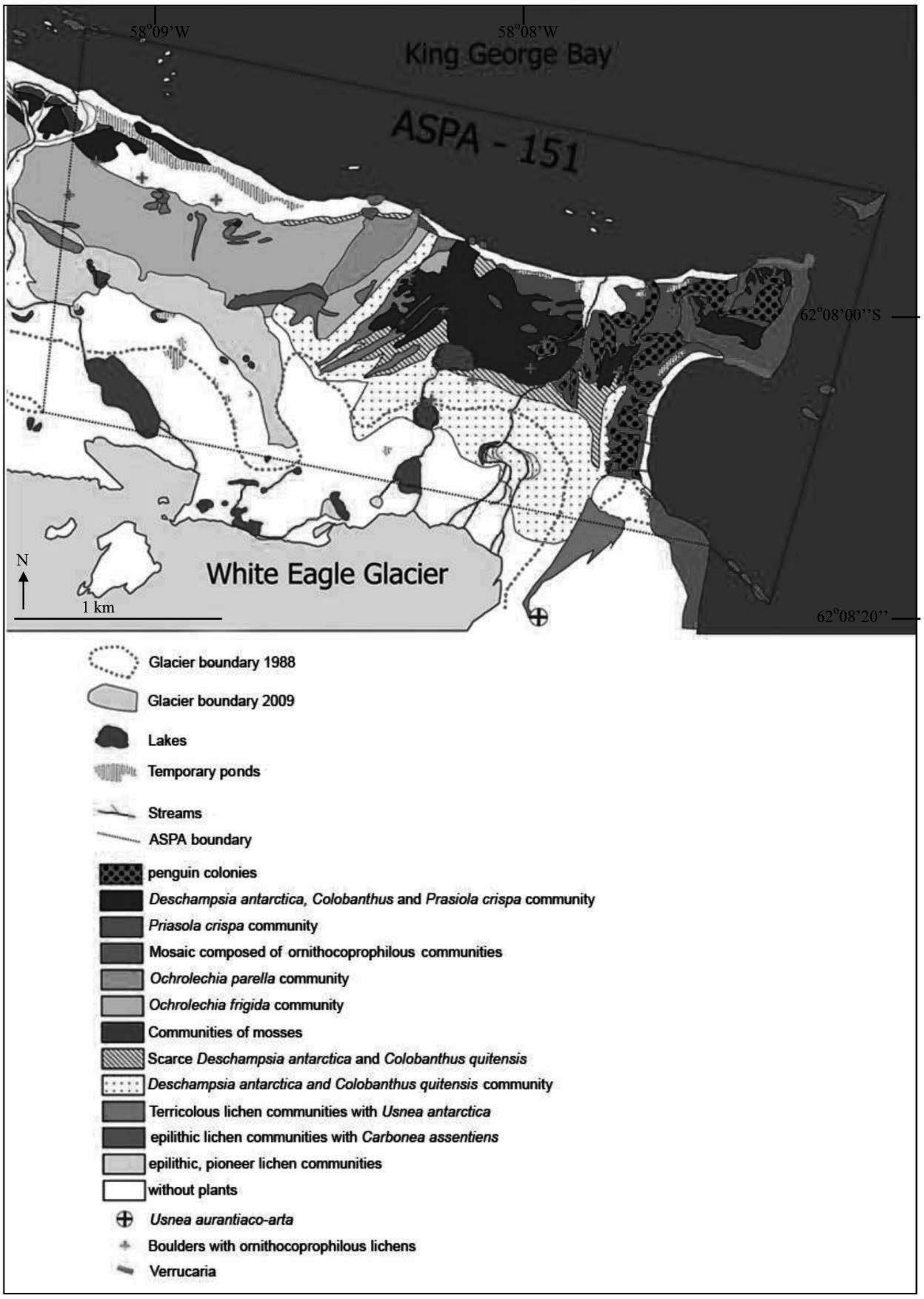
Map 1. The location of ASPA 151 Lions Rump in relation to King George Island



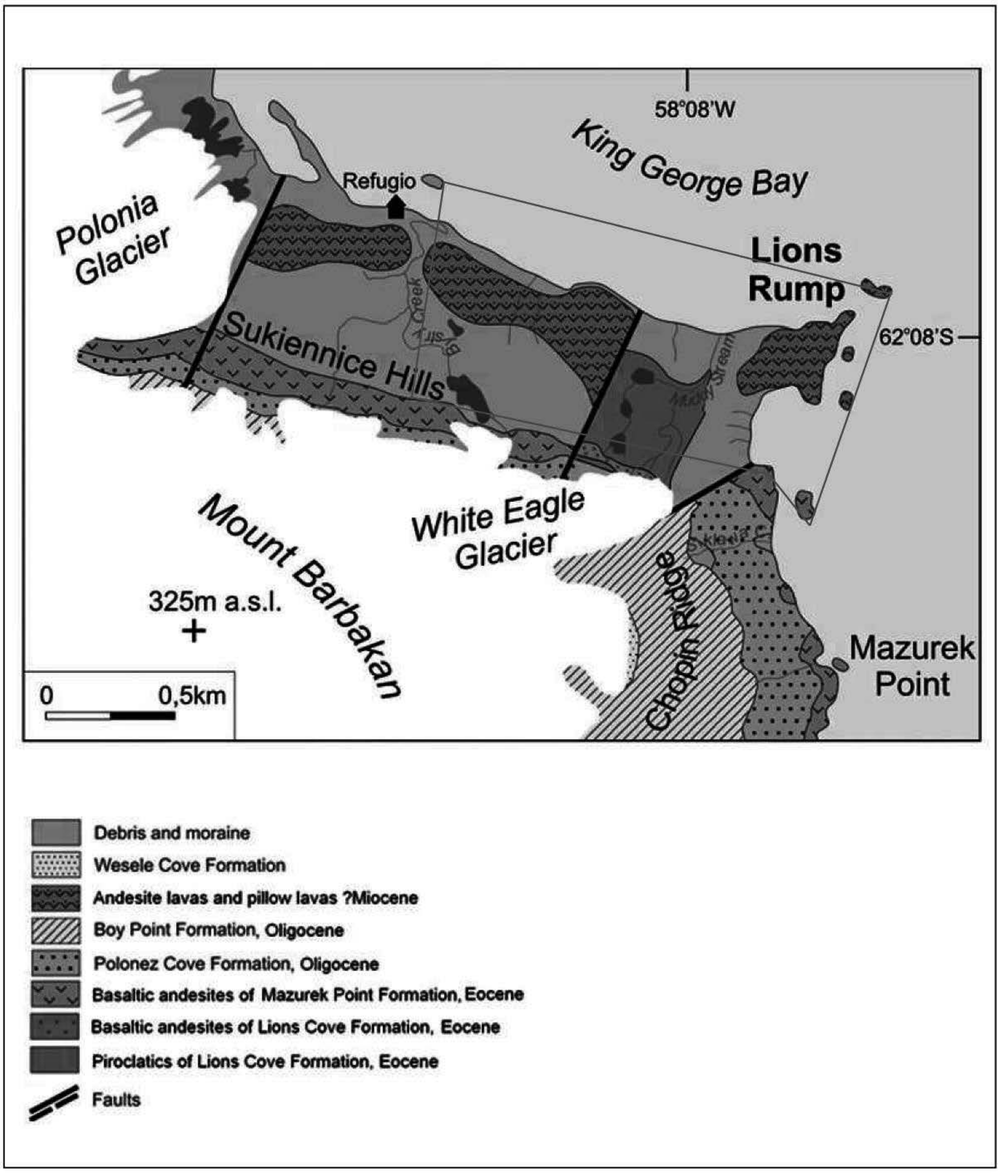
Map 2. Lions Rump in greater detail



Map 3. Vegetation map of Lions Rump



Map 4. Geological map of Lions Rump



Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 154 (Botany Bay, Cape Geology, Victoria Land): Revised Management Plan

The Representatives,

Recalling Articles 3, 5 and 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, providing for the designation of Antarctic Specially Protected Areas ("ASPA") and approval of Management Plans for those Areas;

Recalling

- Measure 3 (1997), which designated Botany Bay, Cape Geology, Victoria Land as Site of Special Scientific Interest ("SSSI") No 37 and adopted a Management Plan for the Site;
- Decision 1 (2002), which renamed and renumbered SSSI 37 as ASPA 154;
- Measures 2 (2003), 11 (2008) and 12 (2013), which adopted revised Management Plans for ASPA 154;

Recalling that Measure 3 (1997) did not become effective and was withdrawn by Measure 6 (2011);

Noting that the Committee for Environmental Protection ("CEP") has endorsed a revised Management Plan for ASPA 154;

Desiring to replace the existing Management Plan for ASPA 154 with the revised Management Plan;

Recommend to their Governments the following Measure for approval in accordance with paragraph 1 of Article 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty:

That:

1. the revised Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 154 (Botany Bay, Cape Geology, Victoria Land), which is annexed to this Measure, be approved; and
2. the Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 154 annexed to Measure 12 (2013) be revoked.

Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No. 154

BOTANY BAY, CAPE GEOLOGY, VICTORIA LAND

Introduction

Botany Bay, Cape Geology is situated in the south western corner of Granite Harbour, southern Victoria Land (77° 0.230' S, 162° 32.870' E; Map 1, Inset 1 and 2). The Area is extremely rich botanically for such a high-latitude location and is one of the richest sites in the whole of continental Antarctica. There is a high diversity and abundance of lichens (at least 30 species) and mosses (9 species) with abundant growths of algae (at least 85 taxa). The Area also has a diverse community of invertebrates (collembola, mites, nematodes, rotifers and protozoa) and a colony (in excess of 40 pairs) of South polar skua (*Catharacta maccormicki*). The Area is the type locality for the collembola *Gomphiocephalus hodgsoni* Carpenter, the lichen *Caloplaca coeruleofrigida* Sochting and Seppelt and the lichen *Buellia frigida*.

In addition to the biological values described, the Area contains within it the remains of a rock shelter and associated artefacts of historical importance (from the British Antarctic Expedition 1910-1913), known as Granite House, designated as Historic Site and Monument (HSM) No. 67 in Measure 4 (1995).

Botany Bay, Cape Geology was originally designated in Measure 3 (1997) as Site of Special Scientific Interest (SSSI) No. 37. New Zealand proposed the designation on the grounds that the Area is an extremely rich botanical refuge for such a high latitude location, with a lichen and moss species diversity and abundance that is unique for southern Victoria Land. The site was re-designated Antarctic Specially Protected Area (ASPA) No. 154 in Decision 1 (2002). The Management Plan was revised and adopted in Measure 2 (2003), Measure 11 (2008), and Measure 12 (2013).

The primary reason for the designation of Botany Bay, Cape Geology as an Antarctic Specially Protected Area is to protect the Area's unusual ecological features and its exceptional scientific and historic values.

1. Description of values to be protected

In the Ross Sea region, areas of abundant mosses and lichens have been identified at Cape Bird, Ross Island (ASPA 116), Beaufort Island (ASPA 105), Canada Glacier in the Taylor Valley (ASPA 131), Kar Plateau in Granite Harbour, Edmonson Point (ASPA 165) and Cape Hallett (ASPA 106). While these sites have a high vegetation ground cover and biomass, the diversity of species present is considerably lower than that found at Botany Bay.

Botany Bay is extremely rich botanically and is also one of the most diverse sites in the whole of continental Antarctica. The terrestrial lichen and moss flora of Botany Bay comprises one liverwort, nine mosses and at least 30 lichens (Annex 1). There are abundant growths of algae (at least 85 taxa), although the algal flora is not considered particularly unusual for the locality.

The Area also has large populations of invertebrates (collembola, mites, nematodes, rotifers and protozoa). The genetic diversity of springtails on the continent vary between refugia which is in contrast with Ross Island and Beaufort Island where separate populations share the genetic structure. Analysis has found the population at Granite Harbour shares some haplotypes with the population at Cape Bird, suggesting the Granite Harbour population may have been a colonization source for Ross Island (Stevens and Hogg, 2003).

There is a colony (in excess of 40 pairs) of South polar skua (*Catharacta maccormicki*). No other birds are known to breed in the Area but Adelie penguin (*Pygoscelis adeliae*) have been reported as seen moulting in the Area and have been suggested as possible vectors for transferring populations of springtails between Granite Harbour and Ross Island (Stevens and Hogg, 2003).

The Area is the type locality for the collembolan *Gomphiocephalus hodgsoni* Carpenter, the lichen *Caloplaca coeruleofrigida* Sochting and Seppelt and the lichen *Buellia frigida*.

The structure and development of the moss and lichen communities at Botany Bay is similar to that found more than 10° of latitude further north. The Area contains by far the most southerly record of the liverwort *Cephaloziella varians*, the lichen *Turgidosculum complicatulum* and the mosses *Bryoerythrophyllum recurvirostrum* and possible *Ceratodon purpureus*. Most are about three degrees of latitude further south than the nearest record to the north in the Terra Nova Bay region.

The boulder beach has rich populations of both epilithic and endolithic lichens. Of great significance is the size (up to 15 cm diameter) of some lichen thalli. At high latitudes, macrolichens are rare and scattered. Botany Bay is exceptional as there is an abundance of several macrolichens including *Umbilicaria aprina, Xanthoria elegans, Physcia caesia* and several forms of microlichens.

With regards to chasmoendolithic algae, both green and blue-green growths of the species *Gloeocapsa cf. punctata* and *Chroococcidiopsis* sp. are co-dominant in the area with *Prasiococcus calcarius* and *Desmococcus olivaceus* found close to the shore-line. Additionally, small ribbons of *Prasiola sp.* are present where water was likely to have flushed the rock surface for a sufficient duration.

The formation of thin algal crusts has previously been reported (Broady, 2005) and recent visits (K080-1819-A Antarctica New Zealand Science Report) have found a surprisingly high abundance of biological soil crusts dominated by Cyanobacteria and possibly green algae. The species composition of crusts requires investigation and work is underway to characterize their extent, distribution and persistence.

The rich flora is the result of a comparatively warm microclimate produced by the unusual sheltered nature of the Area being protected from the southerly and easterly polar winds but fully open to the brightest sun to the north. Different species assemblages or associations within the Area are determined by nutrient input from the skua colony, the occurrence of the source of water, whether solely from snowmelt from the ice field or snowfall, or from some form of melt stream, and by the regularity and speed of water flow and the type of substrate, especially whether it is loose gravel or solid rock.

Under the influence of a changing climate (both global and local), increases in volume and shifts in location of water flow through or over the vegetation would inevitably lead to changes in the vegetation distribution, diversity and abundance. The Area would be ideal for assessing the impacts of climate change on continental Antarctic terrestrial ecosystems dominated by moss and lichen vegetation.

In addition to the biological values described, the Area contains within it the remains of a rock shelter and associated artefacts of historical importance, known as Granite House. The shelter was constructed using a natural hollow in the rocks, with walls built up from granite boulders and a roof of seal skins in 1911 for use as a field kitchen by Griffith Taylor's western geological party during the British Antarctic Expedition of 1910-1913. It was enclosed on three sides with granite boulder walls and used a sledge to support a seal-skin roof. The stone walls of the shelter have since partially collapsed and numerous artefacts have disappeared. In January 2012 parts of the walls remained, but the roof had collapsed and the seal skins had blown some way down the beach. The shelter still contains corroded remnants of tins, a seal skin and some fabrics.

The shelter and associated artefacts are vulnerable to disturbance and therefore access is managed with an Access Zone within the Area, which is subject to access restrictions. A tent site used by the Western Geological Party under Griffith Taylor, is identifiable as a flat gravel area with a number of stones that were used to weigh down the tent valance. This area is outside the Access Zone and is subject to access restrictions.

The primary reason for the designation of Botany Bay, Cape Geology as an Antarctic Specially Protected Area is to protect the limited geographical extent of the ecosystem, the unusual ecological features, and the exceptional scientific and historic values of the Area. The vulnerability of the Area to disturbance through trampling, sampling, pollution or alien introductions, are such that the Area requires long-term special protection.

2. Aims and objectives

Management at Botany Bay aims to:

- avoid degradation of, or substantial risk to, the values of the Area by preventing unnecessary human disturbance to the Area;
- allow scientific research on the ecosystem and elements of the ecosystem in

particular on lichen and moss species, algae, invertebrates and skuas while ensuring protection from over-sampling;

- allow other scientific research in the Area provided it is for compelling reasons which cannot be served elsewhere and which will not jeopardize the natural ecological system in the Area;
- preserve a part of the natural ecosystem of the Area as a reference area for future comparative studies;
- prevent or minimise the introduction to the Area of alien plants, animals and microbes;
- allow visits to the historic site Granite House, but under strict control by Permit;
- allow conservation visits to other historic sites, but under strict control by Permit;
- allow visits for management purposes in support of the aims of the Management Plan.

3. Management activities

The following management activities shall be undertaken to protect the values of the Area:

- Information on the location of the Area, stating special restrictions that apply, shall be displayed prominently, and a copy of this Management Plan shall be made available, at National Antarctic Programme stations that operate in the vicinity of the Area.
- Signs illustrating the location and boundaries, with clear statements of entry restrictions, shall be placed at appropriate locations on the boundary of the Area to help avoid inadvertent entry.
- Markers, signs or other structures (e.g. cairns) erected within the Area for scientific or management purposes shall be secured and maintained in good condition and removed when no longer required.
- The Area shall be visited as necessary, and no less than once every five years, to assess whether it continues to serve the purposes for which it was designated and to ensure that management and maintenance activities are adequate.
- National Antarctic Programmes operating in the Area shall consult together with a view to ensuring the above management activities are implemented.

4. Period of designation

Designated for an indefinite period.

5. Maps

Map 1: ASPA No. 154 Botany Bay: Regional overview

Map specifications: Projection - Lambert conformal conic. Standard parallels – 1st 77° 35' S; 2nd 77° 38' S. Central Meridian – 163° 00' E. Latitude of Origin – 78° 00' S. Spheroid and horizontal datum: WGS84.

Map 2: ASPA No. 154 Botany Bay: Topography
Map specifications are the same as those in Map 1.

Map 3: ASPA No. 154 Botany Bay: Air access guidance
Map specifications are the same as those in Map 1.

Map 4: ASPA No. 154 Botany Bay: Access Zone
Map specifications are the same as those in Map 1, except: Standard parallels – 1st 77° 00' S, 2nd 77° 02' S; Central Meridian – 162° 34' E.

Map 5A: ASPA No. 154 Botany Bay: Moss Density
Map specifications are the same as those in Map 4.

Map 5B: ASPA No. 154 Botany Bay: Lichen Density
Map specifications are the same as those in Map 4.

6. Description of the Area

6(i) Geographical coordinates, boundary markers and natural features

Cape Geology is situated in the south-western corner of Granite Harbour, southern Victoria Land, at 77° 0.230' S, 162° 32.870' E approximately 100 km north-west of Ross Island (Map 1, Insets). The Area consists of raised boulder beach terraces, weathered rocky steppes and irregular rock platforms around Cape Geology, rising rapidly to the south to include a well-defined elevated cirque containing a small ice field. The ice field provides a regular supply of meltwater over the Area. The Area faces north and is well protected from strong winds. The intensity of the solar radiation is increased by reflection from the sea ice that normally remains in Granite Harbour until the end of January. Consequently, the site has warmer than expected air temperatures sometimes reaching almost 10°C in January. The most extensive vegetation occurs on the sheltered raised beach terrace known as Botany Bay.

The bedrock geology at Cape Geology has been described as a porphyritic grey biotite-granite, with phenocrysts of orthoclase of reddish colour, casting the weathered rock with a reddish tinge.

The boundaries of the Area include the water catchment and encompass the elevated cirque from the small ice field down to the coastline (Map 1). The northwest boundary of the Area is marked by a brass plaque in a boulder along the shoreline (M1, 77° 0.316' S, 162° 31.883' E) 400 m southwest of Cape Geology. The west boundary is defined by a line extending first 260 m south southeast from M1 to a large boulder (marked by a cairn) with terrier bolt (M2, 77° 0.450' S 162° 33.133' E) at an elevation of 118 m on the ridge above the campsite; thence the boundary extends 250 m up this ridge to a point at 162 m elevation marked by an iron tube with bamboo pole. The west boundary extends a further 300 m up this ridge to a large pointed rock at 255 m elevation (77° 0.667' S, 162° 31.767' E) near the edge of the permanent ice field. The boundary then extends 150 m south across the ice field to the west edge of a prominent line of exposed rock and moraine in the southwest corner of the Area at 325 m elevation. The south boundary follows this line of rock east until the exposure is buried by the ice-field, thence southeast across the ice field for 500 m to the edge of a second and more prominent exposure at an elevation of just over 400 m (M3, 77° 0.983' S, 162° 33.367' E). The boundary follows the upper edge of this exposure and then crosses the ice field southeast to an elevation of approximately 325 m where the ice-free eastern boundary ridge and the ice field converge, (77° 01.267' S, 162° 34.250' E). The east boundary follows the ridge crest for 1,550 m in a northeast direction to a low point on the ridge approximately 392 m (M4, 77° 0.217' S, 162°36.167' E) where the east boundary turns to descend due north to the coast at the eastern extremity of the boulder beach of Botany Bay (M5, 77° 0.200' S, 162° 36.200' E). The mean high-water mark of the coastline forms the northern boundary of the Area between M1 and M5.

The Area also supports an Access Zone and Restricted Zone (Maps 2 and 4). The Access Zone has been designated to allow access to Granite House while the Restricted Zone has been designated to protect the most extensive area of vegetation in the Area at Botany Bay. The density of moss and lichen is highest in the Access and Restricted Zone of Botany Bay (Map 5A and B) and the Restricted Zone has been designated to preserve part of the Area as a reference site for future comparative studies. A vegetation distribution map for the Restricted Zone can be found in Seppelt et al., 2010.

Under the Environmental Domains Analysis (Resolution 3 (2008)) the Area is Environment S – McMurdo – South Victoria Land geologic. Environment Domain S includes known areas of abundant mosses and lichens at Cape Bird, Ross Island (ASPA 116), Beaufort Island (ASPA 105) and Canada Glacier in the Taylor Valley (ASPA 131).

Under the Antarctic Conservation Biogeographic Region (Resolution 3 (2017)) the Area is in Region 9: South Victoria Land.

6(ii) Access to the Area

Access to the Area is generally via helicopter with a designated helicopter landing site 60 m outside of the Area (77° 00.347' S, 162° 31.795' E; Map 2-5) adjacent to the designated camp site. Specific helicopter access requirements are outlined in Section 7(ii).

Vehicles are prohibited within the Area and access shall be by foot. Access should preferably be from the designated camp site following the preferred corridor of the Access Zone, 10 to 20 m from the coast, which is relatively devoid of vegetation. Visitors shall not venture south of Granite House to the Restricted Zone, unless specifically authorised by Permit.

6(iii) Location of structures within and adjacent to the Area

The only structures known to exist in the Area are Granite House and the associated artefacts, the boundary survey mark at M1 and other boundary markers (i.e. cairns, iron tube markers). At the designated camp site, there is a large wooden platform with materials stored beneath and an automatic weather station is installed further down the beach. The designated camp site is marked by several circle of rocks and the designated helicopter landing site is marked with rocks and is a cleared section of the beach.

6(iv) Location of other protected areas in the vicinity

Botany Bay lies within Antarctic Specially Managed Area (ASMA No. 2), McMurdo Dry Valleys. The nearest protected area to Botany Bay is ASPA 123 Barwick and Balham Valleys, 50km away in a southwest direction.

6(v) Special zones within the Area

- *Restricted Zone*

The most extensive area of vegetation occurs on the sheltered raised beach terrace known as Botany Bay. This embayment and a portion of the Area directly above Botany Bay is designated as a Restricted Zone in order to preserve part of the Area as a reference site for future comparative studies. The remainder of the Area, which is similar in biology, features and character, is generally more available for research programmes and sample collection.

The western boundary of the Restricted Zone is defined by a line from a marker (iron tube in rock, 20 metres from mean high water mark, elevation 8 m) at the west side of Botany Bay (Map 2), extending southwest for 170 m up to a second iron tube marker on the crest of the adjacent ridge (87 m). This boundary extends 100 m to a third iron tube and a cairn (98 m), thence 50 m to a large flat rock in the centre of the main flush (marked '1' on Map 2). The southern boundary of the Restricted Zone extends from the flat rock in the flush in a straight line 820 m to the first of two prominent boulders closely adjacent to each other, approximately in the middle of the ice-free slopes above Botany Bay (marked '2' on Map 2 at 165 m). The eastern boundary extends 300 m from there to a large rock at 135 m elevation (marked '3' on Map 2), thence northeast down slope to the northeast boundary point (M5, 5 m). The northern boundary of the Restricted Zone is the mean high water mark of Botany Bay and is coincident with the northern boundary of the Area.

Access to the Restricted Zone is allowed only for compelling scientific or management (such as inspection or review) purposes, which cannot be served elsewhere in the Area.

- *Access Zone*

In order to allow access to the rock shelter known as Granite House (HSM No. 67), an Access Zone has been designated to protect historic artefacts and plant communities within the vicinity, while also allowing access to the rock shelter.

The Access Zone is a corridor of 10 to 20 m wide extending from the north western boundary near the campsite to Cape Geology, following parallel to the coast for ~480 m (Map 4).

At Cape Geology, the Access Zone extends southwards for 80 m in a corridor ranging from 20 to 30 m wide, following a low rocky ridge from the coast to the rock shelter. The boundaries are marked on Map 4. The shelter was constructed by members of the 1910-1913 British Antarctic Expedition, and used between December 1911 and January 1912 while the party carried out geological and biological exploration in the vicinity.

Access to the Access Zone may be allowed by Permit, subject to the conditions of this Management Plan.

7. Permit conditions

7(i) General permit conditions

Entry into the Area is prohibited except in accordance with a Permit issued by an appropriate national authority. Conditions for issuing a Permit to enter the Area are that:

- outside of the Restricted and Access Zones, access may be permitted only for scientific study of the ecosystem, or for compelling scientific reasons that cannot be served elsewhere, or for conservation at historic sites, or for essential management purposes consistent with plan objectives such as inspection or review;
- access to the Restricted Zone may be permitted only for compelling scientific or management reasons that cannot be served elsewhere in the Area;
- access to the Access Zone may be permitted for scientific, management, historical, educational or recreational purposes;
- the actions permitted will not jeopardise the ecological, scientific or historic values of the Area;
- any management activities are in support of the objectives of the Management Plan;
- the actions permitted are in accordance with the Management Plan;
- the Permit, or an authorised copy, shall be carried within the Area;
- a visit report shall be supplied to the authority named in the Permit;
- permits shall be issued for a stated period.

7(ii) Access to, and movement within or over, the Area

Vehicles are prohibited within the Area and all movement within the Area should be on foot.

- *Helicopter Access*

- There is a designated helicopter landing site 60 m outside of the Area (77° 0.347' S, 162° 31.795' E Maps 2-5).
- The preferred helicopter approach is over sea ice when present (Maps 1 and 3).
- When approaching over sea ice, where practicable fly at least a ¼ nautical mile (460 m) from the coastline to minimise potential disturbance to breeding birds.
- When necessary to make an overland approach to the designated landing site, the preferred approach is from the west in the New Glacier region when practicable. Should an overland approach from the West in the New Glacier region not be practicable (e.g. owing to fog or other unfavourable conditions), the preferred approach to the designated landing site is over the ASPA although aircraft should maintain an operating elevation of at least 150 ft (50 m) Above Ground Level and avoid hovering within the ASPA (Maps 1 and 3).
- Landings within the ASPA are prohibited unless specifically authorised by permit.
- Helicopter landings are prohibited within the Restricted Zone.
- Use of helicopter smoke grenades within the Area is prohibited unless necessary for safety, and all grenades should be retrieved.

- *Access to the Area*

- Access into the Area should preferably be from the designated camp site following the preferred corridor of the Access Zone, 10 to 20 m from the coast, which is relatively devoid of vegetation (Map 4).
- Visitors should avoid walking on visible vegetation, or cause unnecessary disturbance to bird populations.
- Care should be exercised walking in areas of moist ground, where foot traffic can easily damage sensitive soils, plant and algal communities, and degrade water quality.
- Visitors should walk around such areas, on ice or rocky ground.
- Pedestrian traffic should be kept to the minimum necessary consistent with the objectives of any permitted activities and every reasonable effort should be made to minimise impacts.

- *Access to the Access Zone*

- Access to the Access Zone should preferably be from the northern coast at Cape Geology, following the ridge leading up to Granite House (Map 4), avoiding areas of dense lichen growth to either side and as far as possible, the foliose lichen species which are characterised by flat leafy forms, compared with the crustose forms which adhere very closely to the substrate.

- An alternative route may be used from the designated camp site and helicopter landing site, along a preferred walking route 10 to 20 m from the coast, if sea-ice travel is unsafe (Map 4). Note that several areas of dense lichen growth lie close to and inland from the Access Zone (e.g. approximately halfway between the designated camp site and Cape Geology), and these should be avoided unless access is required for science or management.
- Unless specifically authorised by Permit, visitors are prohibited from entering the historic shelter, and are limited to access and viewing from the rock ridge designated for access from the coast in order to prevent damage to the rich vegetation within the Access Zone.
- Visitors shall not venture south of Granite House, unless specifically authorised by Permit.
- A maximum of 10 people is permitted to enter the Access Zone at any one time, and a maximum of 5 people is allowed in the viewing area overlooking Granite House at any one time (Map 4).

7(iii) Activities which may be conducted within the Area

Activities which may be conducted within the Area include:

- compelling scientific research which cannot be undertaken elsewhere and which will not jeopardise the ecosystem of the Area;
- essential management activities, including monitoring;
- limited visits to the Restricted Zone for reasons other than science or management subject to the conditions described in this plan;
- activities with the aim of preserving or protecting the historic artefacts within the Area.

7(iv) Installation, modification, or removal of structures

No new structures are to be erected within the Area, or scientific equipment installed, except for compelling scientific or management reasons, and for a pre-established period, as specified in a Permit. All markers, structures or scientific equipment installed in the Area must be clearly identified by country, name of the principal investigator or agency, year of installation and date of expected removal. All such items should be free of organisms, propagules (e.g. seeds, eggs of invertebrates) and non-sterile soil, and be made of materials that can withstand the environmental conditions and pose minimal risk of contamination of the Area. Removal of specific structures or equipment for which the Permit has expired shall be a condition of the Permit.

7(v) Location of field camps

Camping within the Area is prohibited and should be at a site outside of the Area, 100 m from the northwest corner (Maps 2, 4 and 5) and adjacent to the designated helicopter landing site. This camp site has been disturbed by previous activities and visitors should reoccupy these disturbed positions for tents and other facilities.

7(vi) Restrictions on materials and organisms which may be brought into the Area

In addition to the requirements of the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, restrictions on materials and organisms which may be brought into the Area are:

- No animals, plant material, microorganisms or non-sterile soil shall be deliberately introduced into the Area and precautions shall be taken to prevent against accidental introductions.
- No herbicides or pesticides shall be brought into the Area.
- Any other chemicals, including radio-nuclides or stable isotopes, which may be introduced for scientific or management purposes specified in the Permit, shall be removed from the Area at or before the conclusion of the activity for which the Permit was granted.
- Fuel is not to be stored in the Area, unless required for essential purposes connected with the activity for which the Permit has been granted.
- All materials introduced into the Area shall be for a stated period only and shall be removed by the end of that stated period, and shall be stored and handled so that risk of their introduction into the environment is minimised.

7(vii) Taking of, or harmful interference, with native flora or fauna

Taking of, or harmful interference with, native flora and fauna is prohibited, except in accordance with a Permit issued in accordance with Annex II of the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty. Where taking or harmful interference with animals is involved this should, as a minimum standard, be in accordance with the SCAR Code of Conduct for the Use of Animals for Scientific Purposes in Antarctica.

7(viii) The collection or removal of materials not brought into the Area by the permit holder

Material may be collected or removed from the Area only in accordance with a Permit and should be limited to the minimum necessary to meet scientific or management needs. Material of human origin likely to compromise the values of the Area, and which was not brought into the Area by the Permit Holder or otherwise authorised, may be removed from the Area unless the environmental impact of the removal is likely to be greater than leaving the material in situ: if this is the case the appropriate authority must be notified and approval obtained.

Unless specifically authorised by Permit, visitors to the Area are prohibited from interfering with or from handling, taking, damaging or attempting restoration of Granite House or any artefacts found within the Access Zone. Evidence of recent changes, damage or new artefacts observed should be notified to the appropriate national authority. Relocation or removal of artefacts for the purposes of preservation, protection or to re-establish historical accuracy is allowable by Permit.

7(ix) Disposal of waste

All wastes, including all human wastes, shall be removed from the Area.

7(x) Measures that may be necessary to continue to meet the aims of the Management Plan

Permits may be granted to enter the Area to:

- carry out monitoring and Area inspection activities, which may involve the collection of small samples or data for analysis or review;
- erect or maintain signposts, structures or scientific equipment;
- carry out management and conservation activities, especially those associated with the Historic Sites.

Any specific sites of long-term monitoring shall be appropriately marked on site and on maps of the Area. A GPS position should be obtained for lodgement with the Antarctic Data Directory System through the appropriate national authority.

To help maintain the ecological and scientific values of the isolation and relatively low level of human impact at the Area visitors shall take special precautions against introductions. Of particular concern are microbial, animal or vegetation introductions sourced from soils from other Antarctic sites, including stations, or from regions outside Antarctica. To the maximum extent possible, visitors shall ensure that footwear, clothing and any equipment – particularly camping and sampling equipment – is thoroughly clean before entering the Area.

7(xi) Requirements for reports

The principal permit holder for each visit to the Area shall submit a report to the appropriate national authority as soon as practicable, and no later than six months after the visit has been completed.

Such visit reports should include, as applicable, the information identified in the recommended visit report form contained in the Revised Guide to the Preparation of Management Plans for Antarctic Specially Protected Areas appended to Resolution 2 (2011).

If appropriate, the national authority should also forward a copy of the visit report to the Party that proposed the Management Plan, to assist in managing the Area and reviewing the Management Plan.

Parties should, wherever possible, deposit originals or copies of such original visit reports in a publicly accessible archive to maintain a record of usage, for the purpose of any review of the Management Plan and in organising the scientific use of the Area.

8. Supporting documentation

Broady, P.A. 2005. The distribution of terrestrial and hydro-terrestrial algal associations at three contrasting locations in southern Victoria Land, Antarctica. Algological Studies 118: 95-112.

Davidson, M.M. and Broady, P.A. 1996. Analysis of gut contents of *Gomphiocephalus hodgsoni* Carpenter (Collembola: Hypogastruridae) at Cape Geology, Antarctica. Polar Biology 16 (7): 463-467.

De los Rios, A., Sancho, L.G., Grube, M., Wierzchos, J. And Ascaso, C. 2005. Endolithic growth of two Lecidea lichens in granite from continental Antarctica detected by molecular and microscopy techniques. New Phytologist 165: 181-190.

Green, T.G.A. and Broady, P.A. 2001. Biological soil crusts of Antarctica. In: Belnap, J. and Lange, O.L. (Eds.) Biological soil crusts: structure, function, and management. Springer-Verlag, Heidelberg, pp133-139.

Green, T.G.A., Kulle, D., Pannewitz, S., Sancho, L.G. and Schroeter, B. 2005. UV-A protection in mosses growing in continental Antarctica. Polar biology 28(11): 822-827.

Green, T.G.A., Schroeter, B. and Sancho, L.G. 2007. Plant life in Antarctica. In: Pugnaire, F.I. and Valladares, F. (Eds.). Handbook of functional plant ecology. Marcel Dekker Inc., New York, pp 389-433.

Green, T.G.A., Schroeter, B. and Seppelt, R.D. 2000. Effect of temperature, light and ambient UV on the photosynthesis of the moss *Bryum argenteum* Hedw. Pages165-170 in Davison, W., Howard-Williams, C. and Broady, P. (Eds). Antarctic Ecosystems: models for wider ecological understanding. Christchurch, New Zealand: New Zealand Natural Sciences. ISBN 047306877X.

Kappen, L. and Schroeter, B. 1997. Activity of lichens under the influence of snow and ice. Proceedings of the NIPR Symposium on Antarctic Geosciences 10: 163-168.

Kappen, L., Schroeter, B., Green, T.G.A. and Seppelt, R.D. 1998. Chlorophyll a fluorescence and CO_2 exchange of *Umbilicaria aprina* under extreme light stress in the cold. Oecologia 113(3): 325-331.

Kappen, L., Schroeter, B., Green, T.G. A. and Seppelt, R.D. 1998. Microclimate conditions, meltwater moistening, and the distributional pattern of *Buellia frigida* on rock in a southern continental Antarctic habitat. Polar biology 19 (2): 101-106.

Montes, M.J., Andrés, C., Ferrer, S. and Guinea, J. 1997. Cryptococcus: A new Antarctic yeast isolated from Botany Bay, Tierra Victoria. Real Sociedad Española de Historia Natural. Boletín. Sección Biológica. 93 (1-4): 45-50.

Montes, M.J., Belloch, C., Galiana, M., Garcia, M.D., Andres, C., Ferrer, S., Torres-Rodriguez, J.M. and Guinea, J. 1999. Polyphasic taxonomy of a novel yeast isolated from Antarctic environment; description of Cryptococcus victoriae sp. Nov. Systmatics and Applied Microbiology 22(1): 97-105.

Pannewitz, S., Schlensog, M., Green, T.G.A., Sancho, L.G., and Schroeter, B. 2003.

Are lichens active under snow in continental Antarctica? Oecologia 135: 30-38.
Pannewitz, S., Green, T.G.A., Maysek, K., Schlensog, M., Seppelt, R.D., Sancho, L.G., Türk, R. and Schroeter, B. 2005. Photosynthetic responses of three common mosses from continental Antarctica. Antarctic science 17(3): 341-352.
Rees, P.M. and Cleal, C.J. 2004. Lower Jurassic floras from Hope Bay and Botany Bay, Antarctica. Special Papers in Palaeontology, Vol. 72, 90p. Palaeontology Association, London, United Kingdom.
Ruprecht, U., Lumbsch, H.T., Brunauer, G., Green, T.G.A. and Turk, R. 2010. Diversity of Lecidea (Lecideaceae, Ascomycota) species revealed by molecular data and morphological characters. Antarctic Science 22: 727-741.
Sancho, L.G., Pintado, A., Green, T.G.A., Pannewitz, S. and Schroeter, B. 2003. Photosynthetic and morphological variation within and among populations of the Antarctic lichen *Umbilicaria aprina*: implications of the thallus size. Bibliotheca lichenologica 86: 299-311.
Schlensog, M., Pannewitz, S., Green, T.G.A. and Schroeter, B. 2004. Metabolic recovery of continental Antarctic cryptogams after winter. Polar biology 27(7): 399-408.
Schroeter, B., Green, T.G.A. and Seppelt, R.D. 1993. History of Granite House and the western geological party of Scott's Terra Nova expedition. Polar Record 29 (170): 219-224.
Schroeter, B., Green, T.G.A., Kappen, L. and Seppelt, R.D. 1994. Carbon dioxide exchange at subzero temperatures. Field measurements on *Umbilicaria aprina* in Antarctica. Cryptogamic Botany 4(2): 233-241.
Schroeter, B., Green, T.G.A., Pannewitz, S., Schlensog, M. And Sancho, L.G. 2010. Fourteen degrees of latitude and a continent apart: comparison of lichen activitiy over two years at continental and maritime Antarctic sites. Antarctic Science 22: 681-690.
Schroeter, B., Green, T.G.A., Seppelt, R.D. and Kappen, L. 1992. Monitoring photosynthetic activity of crustose lichens using a PAM-2000 fluorescence system. Oecologia 92: 457-462.
Schroeter, B., Kappen, L., Green, T.G.A. and Seppelt, R.D. 1997. Lichens and the Antarctic environment: effects of temperature and water availability on photosynthesis. Pages 103-117 in Lyons W.B., Howard-Williams, C. and Hawes, I. (Eds.). Ecosystem processes in Antarctic ice-free landscapes: proceedings of an International Workshop on Polar Desert Ecosystems, Christchurch, New Zealand, 1-4 July 1996. The Netherlands: Balkema Press. ISBN 9054109254.
Schroeter, B. and Scheiddegger, C. 1995. Water relations in lichens at subzero temperatures: structural changes and carbon dioxide exchange in the lichen *Umbilicaria aprina* from continental Antarctica. New Phytologist 131(2): 273-285.
Seppelt, R.D. and Green, T.G.A. 1998. A bryophyte flora for southern Victoria Land, Antarctica. New Zealand Journal of Botany 36 (4): 617-635.
Seppelt, R., Turk, R., Green, T.G.A., Moser, G., Pannewitz, S., Sancho, L.G. and Schroeter, B. 2010. Lichen and moss communities of Botany Bay, Granite Harbour, Ross Sea, Antarctica. Antarctic Science 22: 691-702.

Stevens, M.I. and Hogg, I.D. 2003. Long-term isolation and recent range expansion from glacial refugia revealed for the endemic springtail *Gomphiocephalus hodgsoni* from Victoria Land, Antarctica. Molecular Ecology 12: 2357-2369.

Annex 1: Bryophytes and lichens of the Botany Bay-Cape Geology region, Granite Harbour, Victoria Land, Antarctica (from Seppelt et al., 2010).

HEPATICAE (Liverwort)

[1]*Cephaloziella varians**

MUSCI (Moss)

*Bryoerythrophyllum recurvirostrum**
[2]*Bryum argenteum var. muticum*
Bryum pseudo triquetrum
*Ceratodon purpureus**
[3]*Didymodon brachyphyllus*
Grimmia plagiopodia
Hennediella heimii
Schistidium antarctici
[4]*Syntrichia sarconeurum*

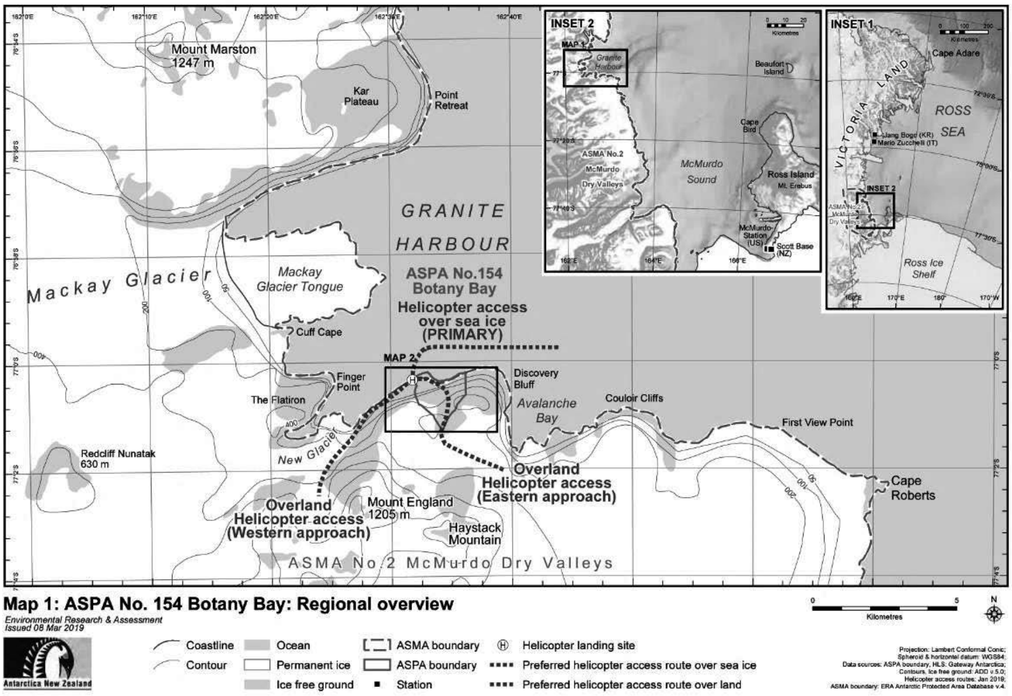
LICHEN

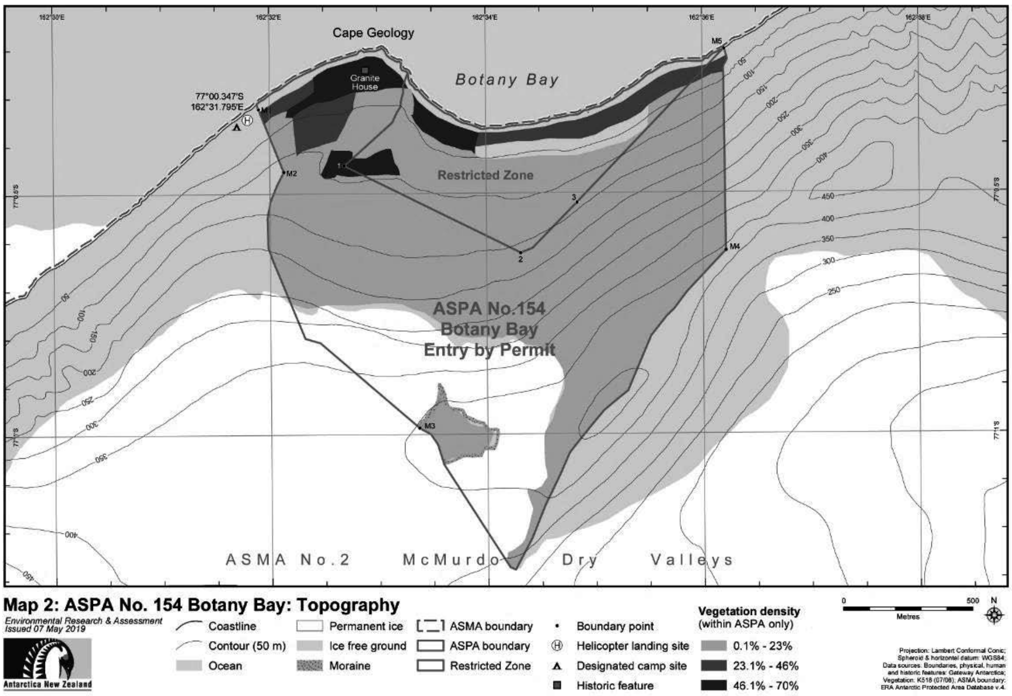
Acarospora gwynnii
Amandinea petermannii
Buellia frigida
[5]*Buellia* cf. *papillata*
[6]*Buellia subfrigida*
Caloplaca athallina
Caloplaca citrina
Caloplaca coeruleofrigida
Caloplaca cf. *schofieldii*
Caloplaca saxicola
Candelariella flava
[7]*Carbonea vorticosa*
Lecanora expectans
Lecanor mons-nivis
Lecidea andersonii
Lecidea cancriformis
Lecidella siplei
[8]*Leproloma cacuminum*
Physcia caesia
Physcia dubia
Rhizocarpon geminatum
Rhizocarpon geographicum
Rhizoplaca melanophthalma
Rhizoplaca cf. *priestleyi*
Sarcogyne privigna
*Turgidosculum complicatulum**
Umbilicaria aprina
[9]*Xanthomendoza borealis*
Xanthoria elegans

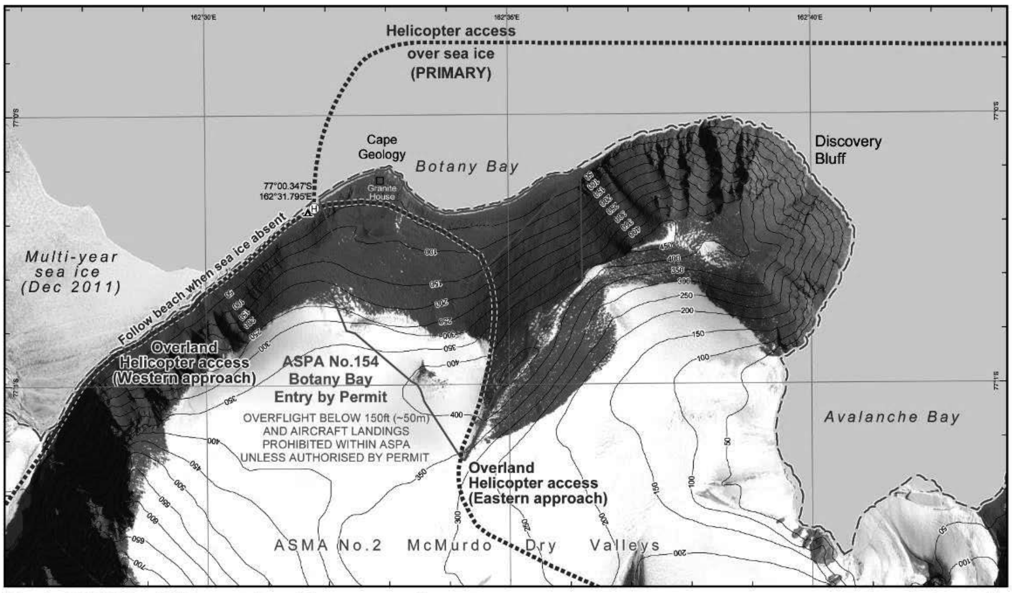
---

[1] *Cephaloziella varians* has previously been referred to as *C. exiliflora* (Bednarek-Ochyra et al., 2000).
[2] *Bryum argenteum var. muticum* has previously been referred to as *Bryum subrotundifolium* (Ochyra et al., 2008).
[3] *Didymodon brachyphyllus* has previously been referred to as *Didymodon gelidus* (Ochyra et al., 2008).
[4] *Syntrichia sarconeurum* has previously been referred to as *Sarconeurum glaciale* (Ochyra et al., 2008).
[5] *Buellia* cf. *papillata* has previously been referred to as *Buellia grimmiae*.
[6] *Buellia subfrigida* has previously been referred to as *Aspicilia glacialis* (Seppelt et al., 1995) and *Hymenelia glacialis* (Ovstedal and Lewis Smith, 2001).
[7] *Carbonea vorticosa* has previously been referred to as *Lecidea blackburnii* (Seppelt et al., 1995).

[8] *Leproloma cacuminum* has previously been referred to as *Lepraria* sp.
[9] *Xanthomendoza borealis* has previously been referred to as *Xanthoria mawsonii* (Lindblom and Sochting, 2008).
** The most southerly record of these species.*

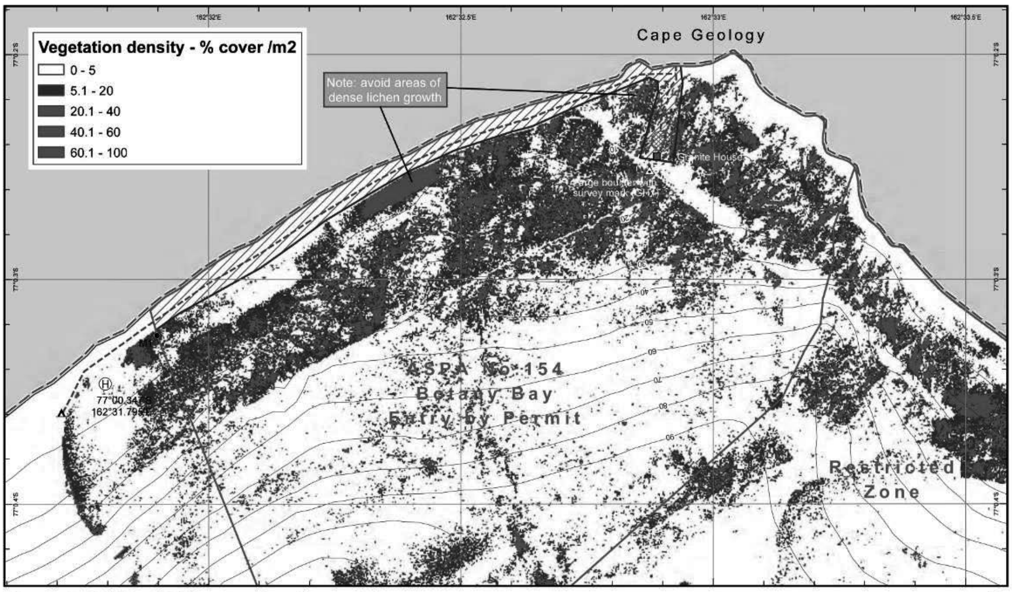






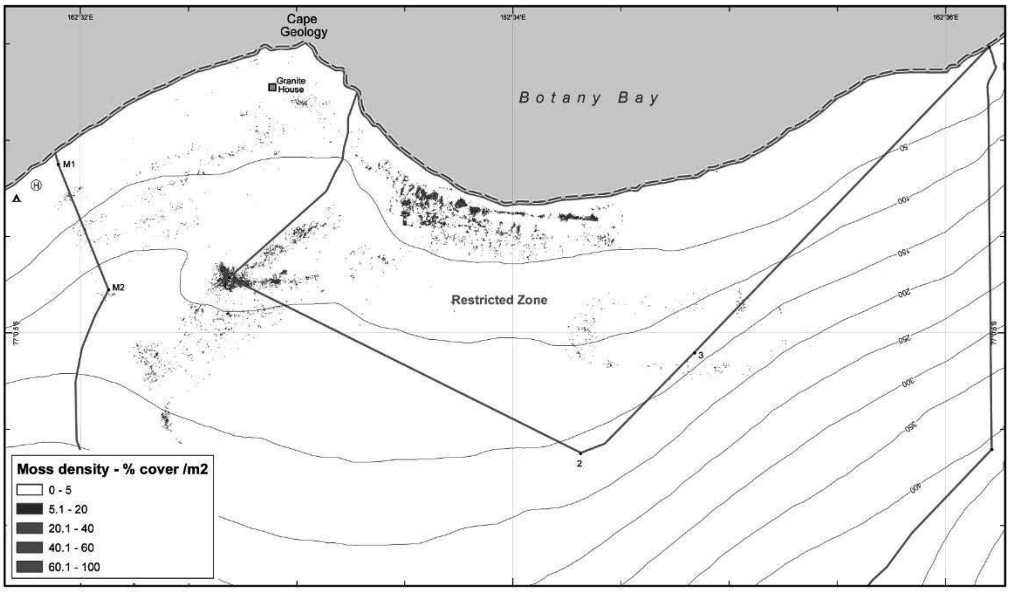
Map 3: ASPA No. 154 Botany Bay: Air access guidance

Environmental Research & Assessment
Issued 12 Mar 2019



Map 4: ASPA No. 154 Botany Bay: Access Zone

Environmental Research & Assessment
Issued 12 Mar 2019



Map 5A: ASPA No. 154 Botany Bay: Moss density

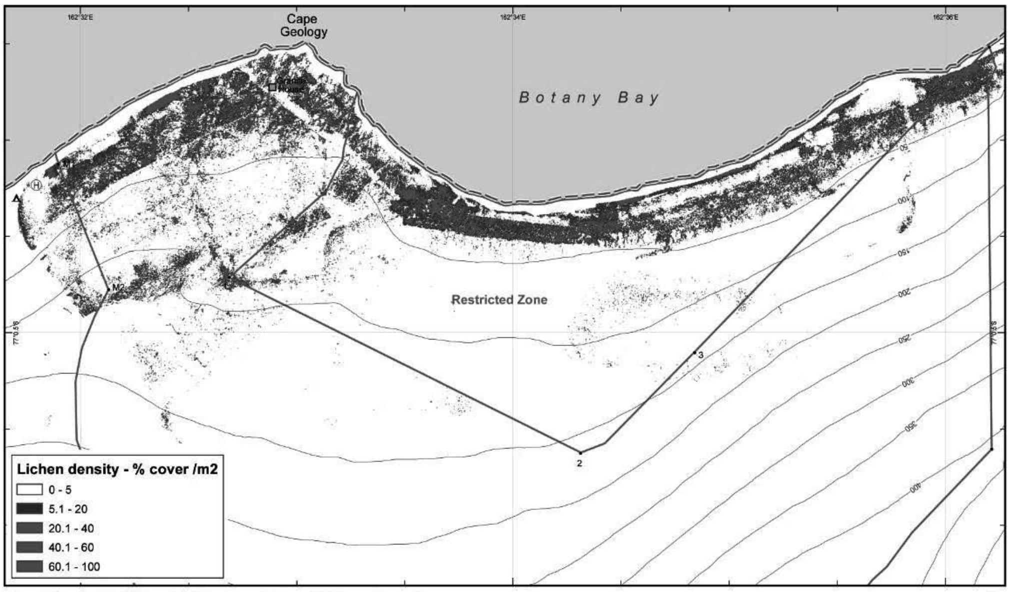
Environmental Research & Assessment
Issued 12 Mar 2019

Antarctica New Zealand

Coastline · Contour (50 m) · Ocean · Ice free ground · ASMA boundary · ASPA boundary · Restricted Zone · Boundary point · Helicopter landing site · Designated camp site · Historic feature

0 – 500 Metres

Projection: Lambert Conformal Conic; Spheroid & horizontal datum: WGS84; Data sources: Boundaries, human and historic features: Gateway Antarctica; Contours: USGS 50K series; Vegetation: survey data acquired by Bollard, K503 (17/18); ASMA boundary: ERA Antarctic Protected Area Database v.4



Map 5B: ASPA No. 154 Botany Bay: Lichen density

Environmental Research & Assessment
Issued 12 Mar 2019

Antarctica New Zealand

Coastline · Contour (50 m) · Ocean · Ice free ground · ASMA boundary · ASPA boundary · Restricted Zone · Boundary point · Helicopter landing site · Designated camp site · Historic feature

0 – 500 Metres

Projection: Lambert Conformal Conic; Spheroid & horizontal datum: WGS84; Data sources: Boundaries, human and historic features: Gateway Antarctica; Contours: USGS 50K series; Vegetation: survey data acquired by Bollard, K503 (17/18); ASMA boundary: ERA Antarctic Protected Area Database v.4

Measure 7 (2019)

Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 161 (Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea): Revised Management Plan

The Representatives,

Recalling Articles 3, 5 and 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, providing for the designation of Antarctic Specially Protected Areas ("ASPA") and approval of Management Plans for those Areas;

Recalling

- Measure 2 (2003), which designated Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea as ASPA 161 and adopted a Management Plan for the Area;
- Measures 14 (2008) and 15 (2013), which adopted revised Management Plans for ASPA 161;

Noting that the Committee for Environmental Protection ("CEP") has endorsed a revised Management Plan for ASPA 161;

Desiring to replace the existing Management Plan for ASPA 161 with the revised Management Plan;

Recommend to their Governments the following Measure for approval in accordance with paragraph 1 of Article 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty:

That:

1. the revised Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 161 (Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea), which is annexed to this Measure, be approved; and
2. the Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 161 annexed to Measure 15 (2013) be revoked.

Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No. 161

TERRA NOVA BAY, ROSS SEA

Introduction

The ASPA of Terra Nova Bay is a coastal marine area encompassing 29.4 km2 between Adélie Cove and Tethys Bay, Terra Nova Bay, immediately to the south of the Italian Mario Zucchelli Station (MZS). Terra Nova Bay was originally designated as Antarctic Specially Protected Area through Measure 2 (2003) after a proposal of Italy. CCAMLR considered and approved its designation during CCAMLR XXVI, Hobart 2007. The Management Plan has been revised in 2008, through measure 14 (2008) and in 2013 through measure 15 (2013).

The primary reason for the designation of Terra Nova Bay as an Antarctic Specially Protected Area (ASPA) is its particular interest for ongoing and future research. Long term studies conducted in the last 30 years by Italian scientists have revealed a complex array of species assemblages, characterized by unique symbiotic interactions. In this Area, several VME species are also present, above all the Antarctic scallop Adamussium colbecki and pterobranchs, and new species continue to be described.

The high ecological and scientific values derived from the diverse range of species and assemblages, together with the vulnerability of the Area to disturbance by scientific oversampling, alien introductions, and direct human impacts arising from increasing activities at the nearby permanent scientific stations (also considering the construction of the new gravel runway at Boulder Clay - Final CEE, 2017) are such that the Area requires long-term special protection.

No Domain nor ACBR number is proposed as the Environmental Domain Analysis for Antarctica (Resolution 3, 2008) and Antarctic Conservation Biogeographic Regions (Resolution 6, 2012) classifications are based on terrestrial criteria.

1. Description values to be protected

This coastal marine area is an important area for well-established and long-term scientific investigations that allowed, up to now, to collect an extensive amount of scientific data. The site typically remains ice-free in summer, which is rare for coastal areas in the Ross Sea region, making it an ideal and accessible site for research into the near-shore benthic communities of the region. Extensive marine ecological research has been carried out at Terra Nova Bay since 1986/87, contributing substantially to our understanding of the marine communities in this area, and of the effect of katabatic winds on the physical, chemical and biological processes occurring in the water column (Povero et al., 2001).

High diversity at both species and community levels make this Area of high ecological and scientific value. Studies have revealed a complex array of species assemblages, often co-existing in mosaics (Sarà et al., 1992; 2002; Gambi et al., 1997; Cantone et al., 2000; Ghiglione et al., 2013) and characterized by unique symbiotic interactions (Schiaparelli et al., 2011; 2015; Regoli et al., 2004). There exist assemblages with high species richness and complex functioning, such as the sponge and anthozoan communities, alongside loosely structured, low diversity assemblages. In this area several VME species also occur, above all the Antarctic scallop Adamussium colbecki (Schiaparelli and Linse, 2006) and pterobranchs (Schiaparelli et al., 2004), and new species continue to be described (Schiaparelli and Jirkov, 2016). A population of Adélie penguins (Pygoscelis adeliae) is present nearby the Area.

The collected scientific data over the years, allowed the site to serve as reference for the determination of impacts arising from human activities (Berkman and Nigro, 1992; Focardi et al., 1993; Minganti et al., 1995; Bruni et al., 1997; Nonnis Marzano et al., 2000, Lo Giudice et al., 2013).

2. Aims and objectives

- avoid degradation of, or substantial risk to, the values of the Area by preventing
- unnecessary human disturbance to the Area;
- allow scientific research on the ecosystem, in particular on the marine species assemblages and long-term monitoring, while ensuring protection from oversampling or other possible human impacts;
- allow other scientific research and support activities provided they are for compelling reasons which cannot be served elsewhere;
- minimise the possibility of introduction of alien plants, animals and microbes to the Area;
- allow visits for management purposes in support of the aims of the Management Plan.

3. Management activities

The following management activities are to be undertaken to protect the values of the Area:

- A map showing the location of the Area (stating the special restrictions that apply) shall be displayed, and a copy of this Management Plan shall be kept available, at all the scientific stations located within 50 km of the Area. Information illustrating the location and boundaries with clear statements of entry restrictions is displayed on Posters at MZS;
- Buoys, or other markers or structures established for scientific or management purposes shall be secured and maintained in good condition, and removed when no longer necessary;
- Any abandoned equipment or material shall be removed to the maximum

extent possible, provided that doing so does not adversely impact on the environment and the values of the Area;

- Visits shall be made as necessary to assess whether the Area continues to serve the purposes for which it was designated and whether management and maintenance measures are adequate.
- National Antarctic Programs are encouraged to consult together to prevent oversampling within the Area.

4. Period of designation

Designated for an indefinite period.

5. Maps and photographs

Map 1: Terra Nova Bay, Antarctic Specially Protected Area No. 161, bathymetric map. *Map specifications*: Projection: UTM Zone 58S; Spheroid: WGS84. Bathymetric contour interval 50 m. Land contours and coast derived from 1:50,000 Northern Foothills Satellite Image Map (Frezzotti *et. al.* 2001). Bathymetry within ASPA derived from high resolution sidescan sonar data surveyed by Kvitek, 2002. Bathymetry outside of ASPA supplied by Italian Hydrographic Office 2000. Marine data collected under Terra Nova Bay marine protected area Project (PNRA 1999-2001). Inset 1: The location of Terra Nova Bay in Antarctica. Inset 2: Terra Nova Bay location map, showing the region covered by Map 1, stations, and sites of nearby protected areas.

6. Description of the Area

6(i) Geographical co-ordinates, boundary markers and natural features

- *General description, borders and coordinates*

The Area is situated in Terra Nova Bay, between the Campbell Glacier Tongue and Drygalski Ice Tongue, Victoria Land (Map 1). It is confined to a narrow strip of coastal waters to the south of MZS (Italy), extending approximately 9.4 km in length and generally within 1.5 – 7 km of the shore, comprising an area of 29.4 km2 (Map 1). No marine resource harvesting has been, is currently, or is planned to be conducted within the Area, nor in the immediate surrounding vicinity.

The western boundary of the Area is defined as the mean high water mark along the coastline extending between 74°42'57"S in the north (2.3 km south of MZS) and 74°48'00"S in the south (the southern shore of Adélie Cove), and includes the intertidal zone (Map 1). The northern boundary of the Area is defined as the 74°42'57"S line of latitude, extending from the coast 1.55 km eastward to the 164°10'00"E line of longitude. The boundary position may be recognised near the shore by the presence of a large and distinctive offshore rock in the northernmost cove on the coast south of MZS, which is an unique feature on this stretch of coast. The southern boundary is defined as the 74°48'00"S line of latitude, extending from the coast 3.63 km eastward to the 164°10'00"E line of longitude. The boundary position may be recognized visually as being at the southern shore of the mouth of Adélie Cove, immediately south of a distinctive rocky outcrop at the base of the coastal cliffs. The eastern boundary of the Area is defined as the 164°10'00"E line of longitude extending between 74°42'57"S in the north and 74°48'00"S in the south.

- *Geology*

The coastline of Terra Nova Bay is characterised predominantly by rocky cliffs, with large boulders forming occasional 'beaches' (Simeoni et al., 1989). In the sheltered areas, the soft bottom begins at a depth of 20–30 m. The tidal range is 1.5–2 m and pack ice approximately 2–2.5 m thick covers the sea surface for 9–10 months of the year (Stocchino and Lusetti, 1988; 1990). Data available for the summer period suggest that ocean currents in the Area are likely to be slow and to flow generally in a north-south direction. Along the coastline of the Area there are two main coves; the larger Adélie Cove in the south and a smaller cove around 3 km to its north. The sea floor substrate of the smaller consists of pebbles of various sizes, while Adélie Cove is characterised by fine-grained, muddy sediments. The seafloor within the Area is primarily granitic rock, with softer substrates composed of coarse sands or gravels.

- *Invertebrates (0-40 m)*

In the supralittoral zone, only cyanobacteria and diatoms colonise the hard substrates, while the intertidal zone (1.5–2.0 m wide) has, in the most sheltered areas, a high coverage of the green alga *Urospora penicilliformis* and *Prasiola crispa* (Cormaci et al., 1992b). Below the tidal zone, down to 2–3 m depth, the community is very poor, due to the persistent presence and scouring action of pack ice, and is mainly composed of epilithic diatoms and the crustacean amphipod *Paramoera walkeri*. Immediately deeper, rocks can be fully colonised by the red alga *Iridaea cordata* (Cormaci et al., 1996), frequently found with *Plocamium cartilagineum*, to a depth of 12 m (Gambi et al., 1994; 2000a). At this level, large sessile animals such as *Alcyonium antarcticum* and *Urticinopsis antarctica* can be occasionally observed, while frequent are the asteroid *Odontaster validus* and the echinoid *Sterechinus neumayeri*. *Phyllophora antarctica* is another red alga forming expanded mats from 12 to 25 m depth, often fully colonised by sessile organisms, mainly hydroids (Cerrano et al., 2000c, Puce et al., 2002), serpulids and bryozoans (*Celleporella antarctica* and *Harpecia spinosissima*). The upper algal belts represent shelter and a food source for diversified and abundant communities of mobile fauna. Numerous invertebrates, such as the polychaete *Harmothoe brevipalpa*, the mollusc *Laevilittorina antarctica*, the crustacean amphipod *Paramoera walkeri* and the isopod *Nototanais dimorphus* feed on these algal species and can be very abundant. On rocky bottoms in deeper layers, the algal colonisation is replaced by a calcareous crustose coralline alga (*Clathromorphum lemoineanum*) on which sea-urchins feed.

The soft bottoms from 20–40 m depth are coarse sands and gravels, where the community is characterised by the mollusc bivalve *Laternula elliptica* and the polychaete *Aglaophamus ornatus* (Nephtiidae). The bivalve *Yoldia eightsi* is abundant in fine-sand sediments especially in the Adelie Cove.

- *Invertebrates (30-70 m)*

Between 30–70 m, the substrate becomes finer and is completely colonised by the bivalve *Adamussium colbecki*, the shells of which are colonised by a micro-community comprising mainly forams, bryozoans (*Aimulosia antarctica, Arachnopusia decipiens, Ellisina antarctica*, *Micropora brevissima*) and the spirorbid *Paralaeospira levinsenii* (Albertelli et al., 1998; Ansell et al., 1998; Chiantore et al., 1998; 2000; 2001; 2002; Vacchi et al., 2000a; Cerrano et al., 2001a; 2001b). In this region, large predators such as the gastropod *Neobuccinum eatoni* and the nemertean *Parborlasia corrugatus* are frequent. The echinoid *Sterechinus neumayeri* and the starfish *Odontaster validus* are still very frequent at all depths on both hard and mobile substrates (Chiantore et al., 2002; Cerrano et al., 2000b). Several unique biotic associations have been described at these depths, e.g. between sponges and other invertebrates (Schiaparelli et al., 2000; 2003; 2007; 2010; 2011; 2015). Sponge also represent a key taxon, which has been widely investigated in terms of symbionts (Regoli et al., 2004) and associated microbes (Lo Giudice et al., 2019). In recent years also new species for science have been described as the parasitic amphipod *Lepidepecreella debroyeri* (Schiaparelli et al., 2015) and the ampharetid polychaete *Amphicteis teresae* (Schiaparelli and Jirkov, 2016). Other data have been produced about VME species, such as *Cephalodiscus densus* (Schiaparelli et al., 2004) and *Adamussium colbecki* (Schiaparelli and Linse, 2006). About the latter species, new analyses of data collected in 2006-2007, thank to the presence of a mooring within the ASPA boundaries (Mooring "L" under the Italian mooring code system), showed that this species recruits during summer months in coincidence with an increase of the seawater temperature and a seasonal shift in the water currents and intensity (Schiaparelli and Aliani, 2019).

- *Invertebrates (70-130 m)*

Below 70–75 m down to 120–130 m depth, heterogeneous substrates allow hard- and soft-bottom communities to coexist. On the sparse rocky outcrops the encrusting algae disappear and the benthic communities are dominated by the sessile zoobenthos. This diversified filter feeding assemblage is mainly characterised by sponges and anthozoans, while in soft sediments detritus-feeder polychaetes and bivalves dominate. Among sponges, which can reach very high biomass values, A*xociella nidificata, Calyx arcuarius, Gellius rudis, Phorbas glaberrima, Tedania charcoti,* are very abundant (Sarà et al., 1992; 2002; Gaino et al., 1994; Cattaneo-Vietti et al., 1996; 2000c; Bavestrello et al., 2000; Cerrano et al., 2000a). Numerous invertebrates constitute an important component of this assemblage which develops down to 120-140 m depth. These include crustacean peracarids, pycnogonids, mollusc opisthobranchs (*Austrodoris kerguelenensis, Tritoniella belli*) (Cattaneo-Vietti, 1991; Gavagnin et al., 1995) and bivalves, ophiuroids and holothuroids, bryozoans, and a variety of endobionts. The conspicuous sponge spicule mats found at these depths underline the important role of sponges in this area, besides the one played by diatoms, in determining the sediment texture and silica content. A peculiar community, dominated by polychaetes and by the bivalve *Limatula hodgsoni*, can be associated with these mats.

- *Invertebrates (below 130 m)*

Below 130 m the hard substrates become very sparse and are mainly colonised by the polychaete *Serpula narconensis* (Schiaparelli et al., 2000) and several bryozoans (*Arachnopusia decipiens, Ellisina antarctica*, *Flustra angusta*, *F. vulgaris* and *Isoschizoporella similis*). The dominant muddy bottoms are instead characterised by tubicolous polychaetes (Gambi et al., 2000b), mainly *Spiophanes*. Much deeper, at about 150-200 m depth, brachiopods and various species of bivalves characterise the environment on small gravels as well as on the soft bottom (Cattaneo-Vietti et al., 2000b). The great heterogeneity of these substrates contributes to the creation of communities with considerable species richness, diversity and biomass.

- *Bird, fish and mammals*

An Adélie penguin (Pygoscelis adeliae) colony is situated nearby the Area at Adélie Cove, with a 2013 population of 13,408 breeding pairs (Humphries et al., 2017) (Map 1). About 30 Skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) pairs breed close to the penguins (Final CEE – 2017).

The faunal assemblage of the Area includes notothenioid fishes, represented especially by species of the *Trematomus* group, including *T. bernacchi*, *T. pennelli*, *T. hansoni* and *T. loennbergii*. These exert an important role in benthic food webs as consumers of many invertebrate species, mainly crustaceans and polychaetes (Vacchi et al., 1991; 1992; 1994a; 1994b; 1995; 1997; 2000b; La Mesa et al., 1996; 1997; 2000; Guglielmo et al., 1998).The platelet ice occurring at Terra Nova Bay in early spring has been shown to house an important nursery for the Antarctic silverfish, *Pleuragramma antarcticum,* a key organism in the ecology of Antarctic food webs (La Mesa et al., 2004; Vacchi et al., 2004). The platelet ice environment has strong prooxidant characteristics at the beginning of austral spring, and the marked responsiveness of antioxidant defences represents a fundamental strategy for *P. antarcticum* (Regoli et al., 2005b).

An aerial survey on cetacean species, conducted in the coastal area surrounding the Italian Station Mario Zucchelli, showed the presence of Killer Whale *Orcinus orca (L.)*, types B and C and Minke Whale (*Balaenoptera bonaerensis Burmeister*). (Lauriano et al., 2007a; 2007b; Lauriano pers.com.). Leopard seals (*Hydrurga leptonix*) were sighted several times at the end of the slope that penguins climb to reach the colony in the area represented in Map 1.

- *Environmental characterization*

Studies on industrial pollutants in biomarkers allowed to monitor the impact of human activities on the Antarctic biota in Terra Nova Bay area (Focardi et al., 1995;

Regoli et al., 1998; Jimenez et al., 1999; Regoli et al., 2005a; Benedetti et al., 2005, 2007; Canapa et al., 2007; Di Bello et al., 2007, Corsolini, 2009).

In Terra Nova Bay, organisms are exposed to a naturally elevated bioavailability of cadmium causing tissue concentrations generally 10-50 folds higher than those typical of temperate species (Mauri et al., 1990; Nigro et al., 1992, 1997; Canapa et al., 2007, Mangano et al., 2014, Caruso et al., 2018). Elevated level of cadmium at Terra Nova Bay modulates bioaccumulation and metabolism of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons and of organochlorine xenobiotics in local marine organisms (Regoli et al., 2005a; Benedetti et al., 2007; Canapa et al., 2007). Recent analyses (Signa et al. 2019) reported increased concentrations of Pb and Hg (Pb: Grotti et al., 2008; Ianni et al., 2010; Hg: Bargagli et al., 1998; Negri et al., 2006), and phytoplankton reached trace elements levels from 2-fold (Hg) to 4-fold (Cd) and even 10-fold (Pb) higher than those previously recorded (Bargagli et al., 1996, 1998; Dalla Riva et al., 2003). In contrast, Hg concentration measured in feathers of Adelie penguins (*Pygoscelies adelie*) and Skua (*Catharacta maccormlcki*) in 2013 (Signa et al. 2019) did not differ from those measured in 1989-1991 (Bargagli et al. 1998).

A systematic publication of faunal check-lists for the Terra Nova Bay area has been stated by the Italian National Antarctic Museum (MNA, https://steu.shinyapps.io/MNA-generale/) in 2013, with the final target to provide to GBIF distributional information for all taxa occurring in the area. Data are available for: Mollusca (Ghiglione et al., 2013), Tanaidacea (Piazza et al., 2014), Ophiuroidea (Cecchetto et al., 2017), Porifera (Ghiglione et al., 2018), Bryozoa (Cecchetto et al., 2019).

In recent years, remotely operated vehicle surveys and transects were performed. Georeferenced images were taken at specific points identifying the appearing species (Canese et al., 2015). These activities allow to monitor changes in coastal benthic communities (Piazza et al., 2018; Piazza et al., in press). Ongoing studies on food web structure will enable to quantify trophic interactions between species and potential community vulnerability to biodiversity loss and changes in sea-ice dynamics (Calizza et al., 2018, Signa et al., 2019).

- *Human Activities*

The Area is close to the Italian Station Mario Zucchelli (74°41’39”S ,164°06’55”E) that can accommodate approximately 90 people, has facilities for helicopter operations and a jetty for the docking of small boats. Fuel used at the station is Jet-A1. The station is equipped with a waste water treatment plant. Treated water is discharged into the sea adjacent to the station 2.3 km from the northern boundary of the Area. A support ship regularly visits Mario Zucchelli Station during the summer, and there are occasional visits by tourist ships. These usually stop offshore several kilometers to the north of the Area.

Other nearby stations are Gondwana (74°38’0.7”S, 164°13’19” E; Germany), a summer station with capacity for approximately 25 personnel, Jang Bogo station (74°37’15”S ,164°11’57”E; Republic of Korea) year round station with a complement of 60 personnel during summer and 17 during winter. China is currently establishing a new station on nearby Inexpressible Island which will operate year-round with a complement of up to 30 in winter and 80 summer personnel (CAA 2018).

A gravel runway is under construction at Boulder Clay site, Terra Nova Bay (74°44’45”S, 164°01’17”E, 205 m a.s.l.). The end of the runway is about 1.8 km from the penguin colony of Adelie Cove. An Environmental Impact Monitoring Plan has been developed to evaluate changes in the ecosystem during construction and operation of the runway (Draft CEE – MZS gravel runway ATCM39).

6(ii) Access to the Area

Access into the Area is generally by ship. Access into the Area may be made by air or over sea ice when conditions allow. Access routes within the Area have not been defined.

6(iii) Location of structures within and adiacent to the Area

There are no structures within the Area. The nearest structure is the atmospheric monitoring facility (locally referred to as ‘Campo Icaro’) 650 m north of the northern boundary of the Area, while Mario Zucchelli Station (74°41'42"S, 164°07'23"E) is situated on a small peninsula on the coast adjacent to Tethys Bay, a further 1.65 km to the north. A gravel runway is under construction at Boulder Clay site, Terra Nova Bay (74°44’45”S, 164°01’17”E, 205 m a.s.l.). The end of the runway is about 1.8 km from the penguin colony of Adelie Cove.

6(iv) Location of other protected areas in the vicinity

ASPA No. 175 the high altitude geothermal sites on Mount Melbourne, is a terrestrial site situated 45 km to the NE, which is the only other protected area within close proximity.

6(v) Special zones within the Area

There are no special zones within the Area.

7. Terms and conditions for entry permits

7(i) General permit conditions

Entry into the Area is prohibited except in accordance with a permit issued by the appropriate national authority. Conditions for issuing a permit are that:

- it is issued for scientific purposes, or for educational purposes which cannot be served elsewhere; and/or
- it is issued for essential management purposes consistent with plan objectives such as inspection, maintenance or review;

- the actions permitted will not jeopardise the values of the Area;
- any management activities are in support of the objectives of the Management Plan;
- the actions permitted are in accordance with the Management Plan;
- The permit , or a copy, shall be carried by the holder within the Area;
- permits shall be issued for a stated period.

7(ii) Access to and movement within the Area

Access into the Area shall be by sea, land, over sea ice or by air. There are no specific restrictions on routes of access to and movement within the Area, although movements should be kept to the minimum necessary consistent with the objectives of any permitted activities and every reasonable effort should be made to minimise disturbance. Anchoring is prohibited within the Area. There are no overflight restrictions within the Area and aircraft may land by permit when sea ice conditions allow, taking into consideration the Penguin colony situated at Adelie Cove and following the Guidelines for Operations of Aircraft near Concentration of Birds in Antarctica (Resolution 2, 2004), to limit disturbance.

7(iii) Activities that may be conducted within the Area

Activities that may be conducted in the Area should not jeopardise the values of the Area and include:

- Scientific research that cannot be served elsewhere;
- Sampling, which should be the minimum required to reach the scientific goals. Selective and less-invasive sampling methods should always be considered to reduce disturbance of the rich bottom communities;
- Essential management activities, including monitoring and inspection;
- Operational activities in support of scientific research or management of the Area;
- Activities for educational and outreach purposes.

7(iv) Installation, modification or removal of structures

Structures or scientific equipment shall not be installed within the Area except as specified in a permit. All markers, structures or scientific equipment installed in the Area shall be clearly identified by country, name of the principal investigator and year of installation. All such items should be made of materials that pose minimal risk of contamination of the Area. Removal of specific equipment for which the permit has expired is mandatory.

7(v) Location of field camps

None within the Area.

7(vi) Restrictions on materials and organisms which can be brought into the Area

- No living animals, plant material, pathogens or microorganisms shall be deliberately introduced into the Area.
- Poultry products, including food products containing uncooked dried eggs, shall not be introduced into the Area.
- No herbicides or pesticides shall be introduced into the Area.
- Chemicals, including radio-nuclides or stable isotopes, which may be introduced for the scientific or management purposes specified in the permit, shall be used in the minimum quantities necessary to achieve the purpose of the activity for which the permit was granted.
- All materials introduced in the Area shall be stored and handled so that risk of their accidental release into the environment is minimized and removed at the end of the period allowed in the permit.
- Visitors shall take special precautions against marine pollution and ensure that sampling equipment or markers brought into the Area are clean. Vessels that are found to show fuel leakage, or a significant risk of such leakage, are prohibited from entering the Area.

7(vii) Taking or harmful interference with native flora or fauna

Taking or harmful interference with native flora or fauna is prohibited, except by permit issued in accordance with Annex II to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty. Careful environmental evaluation is needed concerning trawling, dragging, grabbing, dredging, or deployment of nets because of the sensitivity of the rich bottom communities to disturbance. More selective and less-invasive sampling methods should always be considered;

Where taking of or harmful interference with animals is involved, the *SCAR Code of Conduct for the Use of Animals for Scientific Purposes in Antarctica* (ATCM XXXIV-CEP XIV, 2011) should be used as a minimum standard.

7(viii) Collection or removal of materials not brought into the Area by the permit holder

Any antrophogenic material found should be notified to the appropriate national authority.

Material may be collected or removed from the Area only in accordance with a permit. In this case removal of material should not create an impact greater than leaving the material in situ.

7(ix) Disposal of waste

All wastes, including all human wastes, shall be removed from the Area.

7(x) Measures that may be necessary to continue to meet the aims of the Management Plan

Permits may be granted to enter the Area to:

- carry out monitoring and site inspection activities, which may involve the collection of limited samples for analysis or review, or for protective measures;
- Install markers on specific sites of long-term monitoring.

7(xi) Requirements for reports

The holder of each permit issued should report to the appropriate national competent authority about the activity undertaken in the Area.

Such reports should include, as appropriate, the information identified in Appendix 2- ASPA visit report form of the Guide to the Preparation of Management plans for ASPAs (Resolution 2, 2011). Parties should, wherever possible, exchange with the Party that proposed the Management Plan, information on reports received to assist managing the Area.

8. References and relevant supporting bibliography

Accornero A., Manno C., Arrigo K.R., Martini Atucci S., 2003. "The vertical flux of particulate matter in the polynya of Terra Nova Bay. Part I. Chemical constituents" Antarctic Science 15 (1), 119-132.

Albertelli G., Cattaneo-Vietti R., Chiantore M., Pusceddu A., Fabiano M., 1998. Food availability to an Adamussium bed during the austral Summer 1993/94 (Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea). Journal of Marine Systems 17: 425-34.

Alvaro M.C, Blazewicz-Paszkowycz M., Davey N., Schiaparelli S., 2011. Skin-digging tanaidaceans: the unusual parasitic behaviour of Exspina typica (Lang, 1968) in Antarctic waters and worldwide deep basins. Antarct Sci, vol. 23 (4); p. 343-348, ISSN: 0954-1020, doi: 10.1017/S0954102011000186

Ansell A.D., Cattaneo-Vietti R., Chiantore M., 1998. Swimming in the Antarctic scallop Adamussium colbecki: analysis of in situ video recordings. Antarctic Science 10 (4): 369-75.

Ballerini T., Tavecchia G., Olmastroni S., Pezzo F., Focardi S., 2009. Nonlinear effects of winter sea ice on the survival probabilities of Adélie penguins. Oecologia 161:253–265.

Bargagli R., Nelli L., Ancora S., Focardi S., 1996. Elevated cadmium accumulation in marine organisms from Terra Nova bay (Antartica). Polar Biology 16: 513-520.

Bargagli R., Monaci F., Sanchez-Hernandez J.C., Cateni D., 1998. Biomagnification of mercury in an Antarctic marine coastal food web. Marine Ecology Progress Series 169: 65-76.

Bargagli R.,2005. Antarctic Ecosystems. Environmental Contamination, Climate Change, and Human Impact. Ecological Studies ,vol. 175; Springer-Verlag, Heidelberg, 395 pp.

Bargagli R.,2008. Environmental contamination in Antarctic ecosystems. Sci. Total Environ. 400: 212-226.

Bavestrello G., Arillo A., Calcinai B., Cattaneo-Vietti R., Cerrano C., Gaino E., Penna A., Sara' M., 2000. Parasitic diatoms inside Antarctic sponges. Biol. Bull. 198: 29-33.

Benedetti M., Gorbi S., Bocchetti R., Fattorini D., Notti A., Martuccio G., Nigro M., Regoli F. (2005). Characterization of cytochrome P450 in the Antarctic key sentinel species Trematomus bernacchii. Pharmacologyonline 3: 1-8 ISSN-1827-8620.

Benedetti M., Martuccio G., Fattorini D., Canapa A., Barucca M., Nigro M., Regoli F. (2007). Oxidative and modulatory effects of trace metals on metabolism of polycyclic aromatic hydrocarbons in the Antarctic fish Trematomus bernacchii. Aquat. Toxicol. 85: 167-175

Berkman P.A., Nigro M., 1992. Trace metal concentrations in scallops around Antarctica: Extending the Mussel Watch Programme to the Southern Ocean. Marine Pollution Bulletin 24 (124): 322-23.

Borghesi N., Corsolini S., Focardi S., 2008. Levels of polybrominated diphenyl ethers (PBDEs) and organochlorine pollutants in two species of Antarctic fish (Chionodraco hamatus and Trematomus bernacchii). Chemosphere, 73, 155–160.

Bruni V., Maugeri M.L., Monticelli L.S., 1997. Faecal pollution indicators in the Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antarctica). Marine Pollution Bulletin 34 (11): 908-12.

Budillon G., Spezie G., 2000. "Thermoaline structure and variability in the Terra Nova Bay polynya (Ross Sea) between 1995-98". Antarctic science 12, 243-254.

Calizza E., Careddu G., Sporta Caputi S., Rossi L., Costantini M.L., 2018. Time-and depth-wise trophic niche shifts in Antarctic benthos. PloS one 13: e0194796.

Canapa A., Barucca M., Gorbi S., Benedetti M., Zucchi S., Biscotti MA., Olmo E., Nigro M., Regoli F., 2007. Vitellogenin gene expression in males of the Antarctic fish Trematomus bernacchii from Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea): A role for environmental cadmium? Chemosphere, 66:1270-1277.

Canese S., Mazzoli C., Montagna P., Schiaparelli S., Taviani M., 2015. The Terra Nova Bay 'Canyon': ROV survey of nearshore shallow to deep carbonate factories. XII International Symposium on Antarctic Earth Sciences ISAES, 13-17 July 2015, Goa, India.

Cantone G., Castelli A., Gambi M.C., 2000. The Polychaete fauna off Terra Nova Bay and Ross Sea: biogeography, structural aspects and ecological role. In: Ross Sea Ecology, F. Faranda, L. Guglielmo and A. Ianora Eds., Springer Verlag, Berlin Heidelberg: 551-61.

Caruso C., Rizzo C., Mangano S., Poli A., Di Donato P., Nicolaus B., Di Marco G., Michaud L., Lo Giudice A. (2018). Extracellular polymeric substances with metal adsorption capacity produced by Pseudoalteromonas sp. MER144 from Antarctic seawater. Environmental Science and Pollution Research, 25: 4667-4677.

Castellano M. 2006. “Aspetti trofo-funzionali dell'ecosistema marino costiero antartico: sostanza organica particellata e disciolta”, Univeristà degli Studi di Genova, PhD Thesys.
Cattaneo-Vietti R., 1991. Nudibranch Molluscs from the Ross Sea, Antarctica. J. Moll. Stud. 57: 223-28.
Cattaneo-Vietti R., Bavestrello G., Cerrano C., Gaino E., Mazzella L., Pansini M., Sarà M., 2000c. The role of sponges of Terra Nova Bay ecosystem. In: Ross Sea Ecology, F. Faranda, L. Guglielmo and A. Ianora Eds., Springer Verlag, Berlin Heidelberg: 539-49.
Cattaneo-Vietti R., Bavestrello G., Cerrano C., Sara’ M., Benatti U., Giovine M., Gaino E., 1996. Optical fibres in an Antarctic sponge. Nature 383: 397-98.
Cattaneo-Vietti R., Chiantore M., Albertelli G., 1997. The population structure and ecology of the Antarctic Scallop, Adamussium colbecki in Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antarctica). Scientia Marina 61 (Suppl. 2): 15-24.
Cattaneo-Vietti R., Chiantore M., Gambi M.C., Albertelli G., Cormaci M., Di Geronimo I., 2000a. Spatial and vertical distribution of benthic littoral communities in Terra Nova Bay. In: Ross Sea Ecology, F. Faranda, L. Guglielmo and A. Ianora Eds., Springer Verlag, Berlin Heidelberg: 503-14.
Cattaneo-Vietti R., Chiantore M., Misic C., Povero P., Fabiano M., 1999. The role of pelagic-benthic coupling in structuring littoral benthic communities at Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea) and inside the Strait of Magellan. Scientia Marina 63 (Supl. 1): 113-21.
Cattaneo-Vietti R., Chiantore M., Schiaparelli S., Albertelli G., 2000b. Shallow and deep-water mollusc distribution at Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antarctica). Polar Biology 23: 173-82.
Cecchetto M., Alvaro M.C., Ghiglione C., Guzzi A., Mazzoli C., Piazza P., Schiaparelli S., 2017. Distributional records of Antarctic and sub-Antarctic Ophiuroidea from samples curated at the Italian National Antarctic Museum (MNA): check-list update of the group in the Terra Nova Bay area (Ross Sea) and launch of the MNA 3D model ‘virtual gallery’. ZooKeys, 705: 61-79. https://doi.org/10.3897/zookeys.705.13712.
Cecchetto M., Lombardi C., Canese S., Cocito S., Kuklinski P., Mazzoli C., Schiaparelli S., 2019. Bryozoa collection of the Italian National Antarctic Museum (MNA), with an updated checklist from Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea). Zookeys 812: 1-22.
Cerrano C., Calcinai B., Cucchiari E., Di Camillo C., Nigro M., Regoli F., Sarà A., Schiapparelli S., Totti C., Bavestrello G., 2004. Are diatoms a food source for Antarctic sponges?. Chemistry and Ecology, vol. 20: 57-64.
Cerrano C., Arillo A., Bavestrello G., Calcinai B., Cattaneo-Vietti R., Penna A., Sarà M., Totti C., 2000a. Diatom invasion in the Antarctic hexactinellid sponge Scolymastra joubini. Polar Biology 23: 441-44.
Cerrano C., Bavestrello G., Calcinai B., Cattaneo-Vietti R., Sarà A., 2000b. Asteroids eating sponges from Tethys Bay, East Antarctica. Antarctic Science 12(4): 431-32.
Cerrano C., G. Bavestrello, B. Calcinai, R. Cattaneo-Vietti, M. Chiantore, M. Guidetti, A. Sarà, 2001a. Bioerosive processes in Antarctic seas. Polar Biology 24: 790-92.

Cerrano C., Puce S., Chiantore M., Bavestrello G., 2000c. Unusual trophic strategies of Hydractinia angusta (Cnidaria, Hydrozoa) from Terra Nova Bay, Antarctica. Polar Biology 23(7): 488-94.
Cerrano C., S. Puce, M. Chiantore, G. Bavestrello, R. Cattaneo-Vietti, 2001b. The influence of the epizooic hydroid Hydractinia angusta on the recruitment of the Antarctic scallop Adamussium colbecki. Polar Biology 24: 577-81.
Chiantore M., Cattaneo-Vietti R., Albertelli G., Misic M., Fabiano M., 1998. Role of filtering and biodeposition by Adamussium colbecki in circulation of organic matter in Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antarctica). Journal of Marine Systems 17: 411-24.
Chiantore M., Cattaneo-Vietti R., Berkman P.A., Nigro M., Vacchi M., Schiaparelli S., Albertelli G., 2001. Antarctic scallop (Adamussium colbecki) spatial population variability along the Victoria Land Coast, Antarctica. Polar Biology 24: 139-43.
Chiantore M., Cattaneo-Vietti R., Povero P., Albertelli G., 2000. The population structure and ecology of the antarctic scallop Adamussium colbecki in Terra Nova Bay. In: Ross Sea Ecology, F. Faranda, L. Guglielmo and A. Ianora Eds., Springer Verlag, Berlin Heidelberg: 563-73.
Chiantore M., R. Cattaneo-Vietti, L. Elia, M. Guidetti, M. Antonini, 2002. Reproduction and condition of the scallop Adamussium colbecki (Smith 1902), the sea-urchin Sterechinus neumayeri (Meissner, 1900) and the sea-star Odontaster validus Koehler, 1911 at Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea): different strategies related to inter-annual variations in food availability. Polar Biology 22: 251-55.
Chiantore M., Vacchi M., 2012. Dense populations of the Antarctic scallop Adamussium colbecki in Terra Nova Bay (Subarea 88.1J): potential VMEs adiacent to the Terra Nova Bay ASPA (No. 161). CCAMLR WG-MME-12/23, 12 pp.
Cormaci M., Furnari G., Scammacca B., 1992b. The benthic algal flora of Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antarctica). Botanica Marina 35(6): 541-52
Cormaci M., Furnari G., Scammacca B., 1992c. Carta della vegetazione marina di Baia Terra Nova (Mare di Ross, Antartide). Biologia Marina 1: 313-14.
Cormaci M., Furnari G., Scammacca B., Alongi G., 1996. Summer biomass of a population of Iridaea cordata (Gigartinaceae, Rhodophyta) from Antarctica. In: Lindstrom SC, Chapman DJ (Eds) Proceedings of the XV Seeweeds Symposium. Hydrobiologia 326/327: 267-72.
Cormaci M., Furnari G., Scammacca B., Casazza G., 1992a. Il fitobenthos di Baia Terra Nova (Mare di Ross, Antartide): osservazioni sulla flora e sulla zonazione dei popolamenti. In: Gallardo VA, Ferretti O, Moyano HI (eds) Actas del Semin. Int. Oceanografia in Antartide. Centro EULA, Universitad de Concepción, Chile. ENEA: 395-408.
Corsolini S, Nigro M, Olmastroni S, Focardi S, Regoli F 2001 Susceptibility to oxidative stress in Adelie and Emperor penguin, Polar Biology, vol. 24: 365-368.
Corsolini S. Borghesi N., Ademolo N., Focardi S., 2011. Chlorinated biphenyls and pesticides in migrating and resident seabirds from East and West Antarctica. Environment International 37(8): 1329-1335.

Corsolini S., 2009. Industrial contaminants in Antarctic biota. Journal of Chromatography A, 1216, 598–612.
Corsolini S., 2011. Antarctic: Persistent Organic Pollutants and Environmental Health in the Region. In: Nriagu JO (ed.) Encyclopedia of Environmental Health, volume 1, pp. 83–96 Burlington: Elsevier,NVRN/978-0-444-52273-3.
Corsolini S., Kannan K., Imagawa T., Focardi S., Giesy J.P., 2002. Polychloronaphthalenes and other dioxin-like compounds in Arctic and Antarctic marine food webs. Environmental Science and Technology, 36: 3490-3496.
Dalla Riva S., Abelmoschi M.L., Magi E., Soggia F., 2004. The utilization of the antarctic environmental specimen bank (BCAA) in monitoring Cd and Hg in an antarctic coastal area in Terra Nova bay (Ross Sea - Northern Victoria land). Chemosphere 56: 59-69.
Di Bello D., Vaccaio E., Longo V., Regoli F., Nigro M., Benedetti M., Gervasi PG, Pretti C. (2007). Presence and inducibility by β-Naphtoflavone of CYP 1A1, CYP 1B1, UDP-GT, GST and DT-Diaphorase enzymes in Trematomus bernacchii, an Antarctic fish. Aquatic Toxicol. 84: 19-26
Fabiano M., Chiantore M., Povero P., Cattaneo-Vietti R., Pusceddu A., Misic C., Albertelli G., 1997. Short-term variations in particulate matter flux in Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea. Antarctic Science 9(2): 143-149.
Fabiano M., Danovaro R., Crisafi E., La Ferla R., Povero P., Acosta Pomar L., 1995. Particulate matter composition and bacterial distribution in Terra Nova Bay (Antarctica) during summer 1989-90. Polar Biology 15: 393-400.
Fabiano M., Povero P., Danovaro R., 1996. Particulate organic matter composition in Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antarctica) during summer 1990. Antarctic Science 8(1): 7-13.
Focardi S., Fossi M.C., Lari L., Casini S., Leonzio C., Meidel S.K., Nigro M., 1995. Induction of MFO Activity in the Antarctic fish Pagothenia bernacchii: Preliminary results. Marine Environmental Research., 39: 97-100.
Focardi S., Bargagli R., Corsolini S., 1993. Organochlorines in marine Antarctic food chain at Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea). Korean Journal of Polar Research 4: 73-77.
Frezzotti, M., Salvatore, M.C., Vittuari, L., Grigioni, P., De Silvestri L., 2001. Satellite Image Map: Northern Foothills and Inexpressible Island Area (Victoria Land, Antarctica). Terra Antarctica Reports n° 6, 8 p. + map - ISBN 88-900221-9-1.
Gaino E., Bavestrello G., Cattaneo-Vietti R., Sara' M., 1994. Scanning electron microscope evidence for diatom uptake by two Antarctic sponges. Polar Biology 14: 55-58.
Gambi M.C., Buia M.C., Mazzella L., Lorenti M., Scipione M.B., 2000a. Spatio-temporal variability in the structure of benthic populations in a physically controlled system off Terra Nova Bay: the shallow hard bottoms. In: Ross Sea Ecology, F. Faranda, L. Guglielmo and A. Ianora Eds., Springer Verlag, Berlin Heidelberg: 527-538.
Gambi M.C., Castelli A., Guizzardi M., 1997. Polychaete populations of the shallow soft bottoms off Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antarctica): distribution, diversity and biomass. Polar Biology 17: 199-210.

Gambi M.C., Giangrande A., Patti F.P., 2000b. Comparative observations on reproductive biology of four species of Perkinsiana (Polychaeta, Sabellidae). Bulletin of Marine Science 67(1): 299-309.

Gambi M.C., Lorenti M., Russo G.F., Scipione M.B., 1994. Benthic associations of the shallow hard bottoms off Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antarctica): zonation, biomass and population structure. Antarctic Science 6(4): 449-62.

Gavagnin M., Trivellone E., Castelluccio F., Cimino G., Cattaneo-Vietti R., 1995. Glyceryl ester of a new halimane diterpenoic acid from the skin of the antarctic nudibranch Austrodoris kerguelenensis. Tetrahedron Letters 36: 7319-22.

Ghiglione C, Alvaro M.C., Griffiths H.J., Linse K., Schiaparelli S., 2013. Ross Sea Mollusca from the Latitudinal Gradient Program: R/V Italica 2004 Rauschert dredge samples. ZooKeys, 341: 37-48.

Grotti M., Soggia F., Lagomarsino C., Dalla Riva S., Goessler W., Francesconi, K.A., 2008. Natural variability and distribution of trace elements in marine organisms from Antarctic coastal environments. Antarctic Science 20: 39-51.

Guglielmo G., Zagami G., Saggiorno V., Catalano G., Granata A., 2007. "Copepods in spring annual sea ice at Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antarctica)" Polar Biology 30, 747-758.

Guglielmo L., Carrada G.C., Catalano G., Dell'Anno A., Fabiano M., Lazzara L., Mangoni O., Pusceddu A., Saggiomo V., 2000. Structural and functional properties of sympagic communities in the annual sea ice at Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antarctica). Polar Biology 23(2): 137-46.

Guglielmo L., Granata A., Greco S., 1998. Distribution and abundance of postlarval and juvenile Pleuragramma antarticum (Pisces, Nototheniidae)of Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antartica). Polar Biology 19: 37-51.

Humphries G.R.W., Che-Castaldo C., Naveen R., Schwaller M., McDowall P., Schrimpf M., and Lynch H.J. 2017. Mapping Application for Penguin Populations and Projected Dynamics (MAPPPD): Data and tools for dynamic management and decision support. Polar Records .

Ianni C., Magi E., Soggia F., Rivaro P., Frache R., 2010. Trace metal speciation in coastal and off-shore sediments from Ross Sea (Antarctica). Microchemical Journal 96: 203-212

Jimenez B., Fossi M.C., Nigro M., Focardi S., 1999. Biomarker approach to evaluating the impact of scientific stations on the Antarctic environment using trematomus bernacchii as a bioindicator organism. Chemosphere, 39: 2073-2078.

La Mesa M., Arneri E., Giannetti G., Greco S., Vacchi M., 1996. Age and growth of the nototheniid fish Trematomus bernacchii Boulenger from Terra Nova Bay, Antartica. Polar Biology16: 139-45.

La Mesa M., J.T. Eastman, M. Vacchi, 2004. The role of notothenioid fish in the food web of the Ross Sea shelf waters: a review. Polar Biol., 27: 321-338.

La Mesa M., Vacchi M., Castelli A., Diviacco G., 1997. Feeding ecology of two nototheniid fishes Trematomus hansoni and Trematomus loennbergi from Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea. Polar Biology 17: 62-68.

La Mesa M., Vacchi M., T. Zunini Sertorio, 2000. Feeding plasticity of Trematomus newnesi (Pisces, Nototheniidae) in Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea, in relation to environmental conditions. Polar Biology 23(1): 38-45.

Lauriano G., Fortuna C.M., Vacchi M., 2007a. Observation of killer whale (Orcinus orca)

Lauriano G., Vacchi M., Ainley D., Ballard G., 2007b. Observations of top predators foraging on fish in the pack ice of the southern Ross Sea. Antarctic Science, 19(4): 439-440.

Lo Giudice A., Casella P., Bruni V., Michaud L. (2013). Response of bacterial isolates from Antarctic shallow sediments towards heavy metals, antibiotics and polychlorinated biphenyls. Ecotoxicology, 22: 240-250

Lo Giudice A., Azzaro M., Schiaparelli S. (2019). Microbial Symbionts of Antarctic Marine Benthic Invertebrates. In The Ecological Role of Micro-organisms in the Antarctic Environment, Castro-Sowinski S. (Ed.), Chapter 13, Springer Polar Sciences. Pp. 277-296. https://doi.org/10.1007/978-3-030-02786-5_13.

Mangoni O., Modigh M., Conversano F., Carrada G.C., Saggiorno V., 2004. “Effects of summer ice coverege on phytoplankton assemblages in the Ross Sea, Antarctica” Deep-Sea Research I, 51, 1601-1617.

Massolo S., Messa R., Rivaro P., Leardi R., 2009. "Annual and spatial variations of chemical and physical properties in the Ross Sea surface waters (Antarctica)" Continental Shel Research 29, 2333-2344.

Mauri M., Orlando E., Nigro M., Regoli F., 1990. Heavy metals in the Antarctic scallop Adamussium colbecki (Smith). Mar. Ecol. Progr. Ser. 67: 27-33.

Minganti V., Capelli R., Fiorentino F., De Pellegrini R., Vacchi M., 1995. Variations of mercury and selenium concentrations in Adamussium colbecki and Pagothenia bernacchii from Terra Nova Bay (Antarctica) during a five year period. Int. J. Environ. Anal. Chem. 61: 239-48.

Negri A., Burns K., Boyle S., Brinkman D., Webster N., 2006. Contamination in sediments, bivalves and sponges of McMurdo Sound, Antarctica. Environmental Pollution 143: 456-467.

Nigro M., Orlando E., Regoli F., 1992. Ultrastructural localisation of metal binding sites in the kidney of the Antarctic scallop Adamussium colbecki. Marine Biology, 113: 637-643.

Nigro M., Regoli F., Rocchi R., Orlando E., 1997. Heavy metals in Antarctic Molluscs. In "Antarctic Communities" (B. Battaglia, J. Valencia and D.W.H Walton Eds.), Cambridge University Press, 409-412

Nonnis Marzano F., Fiori F., Jia G., Chiantore M., 2000. Anthropogenic radionuclides bioaccumulation in Antarctic marine fauna and its ecological relevance. Polar Biology 23: 753-58.

Pane L., Feletti M., Francomacaro B., Mariottini G.L., 2004. “Summer coastal zooplankton biomass and copepod community structure near the Italian Terra Nova Base (Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea, Antarctica)” Journal of Plankton Research, vol 26, issue 12, 1479-1488.

Piazza et al (IN PRESS) Antarctic benthos monitoring using underwater photogrammetry: lessons learned, legacy data rescue and future developments for long-term monitoring programmes. Poalr Biology (POBI-D-18-00100).

Piazza P., Cummings V., Lohrer D., Marini S., Marriott P., Menna F., Nocerino E., Peirano A., Schiaparelli S., 2018. Divers-operated underwater photogrammetry: applications in the study of Antarctic benthos. The International Archives of the Photogrammetry, Remote Sensing and Spatial

Information Sciences, Volume XLII-2, 885-892. https://doi.org/10.5194/isprs-archives-XLII-2-885-2018.
Piazza P., Błażewicz-Paszkowycz M., Ghiglione C., Alvaro M.C., Schnabel K., Schiaparelli S., 2014. Distributional records of Ross Sea (Antarctica) Tanaidacea from museum samples stored in the collections of the Italian National Antarctic Museum (MNA) and the New Zealand National Institute of Water and Atmospheric Research (NIWA). ZooKeys, 451: 49–60.
Povero P., Castellano M., Ruggieri N., Monticelli L.S., Saggiomo V., Chiantore M.C., Guidetti M., Cattaneo-Vietti R., 2006. “Water column features and their relationship with sediments and benthic communities along the Victoria Land coast, Ross Sea, Antarctica, summer 2004” Antarctic Science 18 (4), 603-613.
Povero P., Chiantore M., Misic C., Budillon G., Cattaneo-Vietti R., 2001. Pelagic-benthic coupling in Adélie Cove (Terra Nova Bay, Antarctica): a strongly land forcing controlled system? Polar Biology 24: 875-882.
Puce S., Cerrano C., Bavestrello G., 2002. Eudendrium (Cnidaria, Anthomedusae) from the Antarctic Ocean with a description of new species. Polar Biology 25: 366-73.
Pusceddu A., Cattaneo-Vietti R., Albertelli G., Fabiano M., 1999. Origin, biochemical composition and vertical flux of particulate organic matter under the pack ice in Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antarctica) during late summer 1995. Polar Biology 22: 124-32.
Regoli F., Nigro M., Benedetti M., Fattorini D., Gorbi S., 2005b. Antioxidant efficiency in early life stages of the Antarctic silverfish Pleuragramma antarcticum: Responsiveness to pro-oxidant conditions of platelet ice and chemical exposure. Aquatic Toxicology, vol. 75: 43- 52.
Regoli F., Nigro M., Benedetti M., Gorbi S., Pretti C., Gervasi P.G., Fattorini D., 2005a. Interactions between metabolism of trace metals and xenobiotics agonist of the aryl hydrocarbon receptor in the Antarctic fish Trematomus bernacchii: environmental perspectives. Environmental Toxicology and Chemistry, vol. 24(6): 201-208
Regoli F., Nigro M., Bertoli E., Principato G.B., Orlando E., 1997b. Defences against oxidative stress in the Antarctic scallop Adamussium colbecki and effects of acute exposure to metals. Hydrobiologia, 355: 139-144.
Regoli F., Nigro M., Bompadre S., Wiston G., 2000a. Total oxidant scavenging capacity (TOSC) of microsomal and cytosolic fractions from Antarctic Arctic and Mediterranean Scallops: differentiation between three different potent oxidants. Aquatic Toxicology, 49: 13-25.
Regoli F., Nigro M., Chiantore M.C., Gorbi S., Wiston G., 2000b. Total oxidant scavenging capacity of Antarctic, Arctic and Mediterranean scallops. Italian Journal of Zoology, vol. 67: 5-94.
Regoli F., Nigro M., Chierici E., Cerrano C., Schiapparelli S., Totti C., Bavestrello G., 2004. Variations of antioxidant efficiency and presence of endosymbiontic diatoms in the Antarctic porifera Haliclona dancoi, Marine Environmental Research, vol. 58: 637-640.
Regoli F., Nigro M., Orlando E., 1998. Lysosomal and antioxidant defences to metals in the Antarctic scallop Adamussium colbecki. Aquatic Toxicology, 40: 375-392.

Regoli F., Principato G.B., Bertoli E., Nigro M., Orlando E., 1997a. Biochemical characterisation of the antioxidant system in the scallop Adamussium colbecki, a sentinel organism for monitoring the Antarctic environment. Polar Biology, 17: 251-25.

Regoli F., M. Nigro, M. Chiantore, G.W. Winston, 2002. Seasonal variations of susceptibility to oxidative stress in Adamussium colbecki, a key bioindicator species for the Antarctic marine environment. The Science of the Total Environment, 289: 205-211.

Regoli F., Nigro M., Chierici E., Cerrano C., Schiaparelli S., Totti C., Bavestrello G., 2004. Variations of antioxidant efficiency and presence of endosymbiotic diatoms in the Antarctic porifera Haliclona dancoi. Marine Environmental Research, 58: 637–640.

Sarà A., Cerrano C., Sarà M., 2002. Viviparous development in the Antarctic sponge Stylocordyla borealis Loven, 1868. Polar Biology 25: 425-31.

Sarà M., Balduzzi A., Barbieri M., Bavestrello G., Burlando B., 1992. Biogeographic traits and checklist of Antarctic demosponges. Polar Biology 12: 559-85.

Schiaparelli S., Aliani, 2019. Oceanographic moorings as year-round laboratories for investigating growth performance and settlement dynamics in the Antarctic scallop Adamussium colbecki (E.A. Smith, 1902). PeerJ 7:e6373, DOI 10.7717/peerj.6373

Schiaparelli S., Linse K., 2006. A reassessment of the distribution of the common Antarctic scallop Adamussium colbecki (Smith, 1902). Deep-Sea Research II, 53: 912–920.

Schiaparelli S., Albertelli G., Cattaneo-Vietti R., 2003. The epibiotic assembly on the sponge Haliclona dancoi (Topsent, 1901) at Terra Nova Bay (Antarctica, Ross Sea). Polar Biology, 26: 342-347.

Schiaparelli S., Alvaro M.C., Kilgallen N., Scinto A., Lorz A.N., 2015. Host-shift speciation in Antarctic symbiotic invertebrates: further evidence from the new amphipod species Lepidepecreella debroyeri from the Ross Sea? Hydrobiologia 761: 143-159.

Schiaparelli S., Alvaro M.C; Barnich R., 2011. Polynoid polychaetes living in the gut of irregular sea urchins: a first case of inquilinism in the Southern Ocean and an overview of polychaete-echinoderm associations. Antarctic Science, 144- 151 23 (2).

Schiaparelli S., Cattaneo-Vietti R., Chiantore M., 2000. Adaptive morphology of Capulus subcompressus Pelseneer, 1903 (Gastropoda: Capulidae) from Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea (Antarctica). Polar Biology 23: 11-16.

Schiaparelli S., Ghirardo C., Bohn J., Chiantore M., Albertelli G., Cattaneo-Vietti R. 2007. Antarctic associations: the parasitic relationship between the gastropod Bathycrinicola tumidula (Thiele, 1912) (Ptenoglossa: Eulimidae) and the comatulid Notocrinus virilis Mortensen, 1917 (Crinoidea: Notocrinidae) in the Ross Sea. Polar Biology, 30: 1545-1555.

Schiaparelli S., Lörz A.N., Cattaneo-Vietti R., 2006. Diversity and distribution of mollusc assemblages on the Victoria Land coast and the Balleny Islands, Ross Sea, Antartica. Antarctic Science, 18 (4): 615–631.

Schiaparelli S., Cattaneo-Vietti R., Mierzejewski P., 2004. A "protective shell" around the larval cocoon of Cephalodiscus densus Andersson, 1907 Graptolithoidea (Hemichordata). Polar Biology, 27: 813-817.

Schiaparelli S., Alvaro M.C., Bohn J., Albertelli G., 2010. "Hitchhiker" polynoid polychaetes in cold deep waters and their potential influence on benthic soft bottom food webs. Antarctic Science, 399- 407 22 (4).

Schiaparelli S., Jirkov I.A., 2016A reassessment of the genus Amphicteis Grube, 1850 (Polychaeta: Amphaetidae) with the description of Amphicteis teresae sp nov from Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antarctica). Italian Journal of Zoology 83: 531-542.

Signa G., Calizza E., Costantini, M.L., Tramati C., Sporta Caputi S., Mazzola A., Rossi L., Vizzini, S., 2019. Horizontal and vertical food web structure drives trace element trophic transfer in Terra Nova Bay, Antarctica. Environmental Pollution 246: 772-781.

Simeoni U., Baroni C., Meccheri M., Taviani M., Zanon G., 1989. Coastal studies in Northern Victoria Land (Antarctica): Holocene beaches of Inexpressible island, Tethys Bay and Edmonson Point. Boll. Ocean. Teor. Appl. 7(1-2): 5-16.

Stocchino C., Lusetti C., 1988. Le costanti armoniche di marea di Baia Terra Nova (Mare di Ross, Antartide). F.C. 1128 Istituto Idrografico della Marina, Genova.

Stocchino C., Lusetti C., 1990. Prime osservazioni sulle caratteristiche idrologiche e dinamiche di Baia Terra Nova (Mare di Ross, Antartide). F.C. 1132 Istituto Idrografico della Marina, Genova.

Swadling K.M., Penot F., Vallet C., Rouyer A., Gasparini S., Mousseau L., Smith M., Goffart A., Koubbi P., 2003. "Interannual variability of zooplancton in the Dumont d'Urville sea (39°E-146°E), east Antarctica, 2004-2008" Polar Science 5, 118-133, (2011)

Tagliabue A. & Arrigo K.R., “Anomalously low zooplankton abundane in the Ross Sea: An alternative explanation” Limnol. Oceanogr. 48, 686-699.

Vacchi M., Cattaneo-Vietti R., Chiantore M., Dalù M., 2000a. Predator-prey relationship between nototheniid fish Trematomus bernacchii and Antarctic scallop Adamussium colbecki at Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea). Antarctic Science 12(1): 64-68.

Vacchi M., Greco S., 1994a. Capture of the giant Nototheniid fish Dissostichus mawsoni in Terra Nova Bay (Antarctica): Notes on the fishing equipment and the specimens caught. Cybium 18(2): 199-203.

Vacchi M., Greco S., La Mesa M., 1991. Ichthyological survey by fixed gears in Terra Nova Bay (Antarctica). Fish list and first results. Memorie di Biologia Marina e di Oceanografia 19: 197-202.

Vacchi M., La Mesa M., 1995. The diet of Antarctic fish Trematomus newnesi Boulenger, 1902 (Notothenidae) from Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea. Antarctic Science 7(1): 37-38.

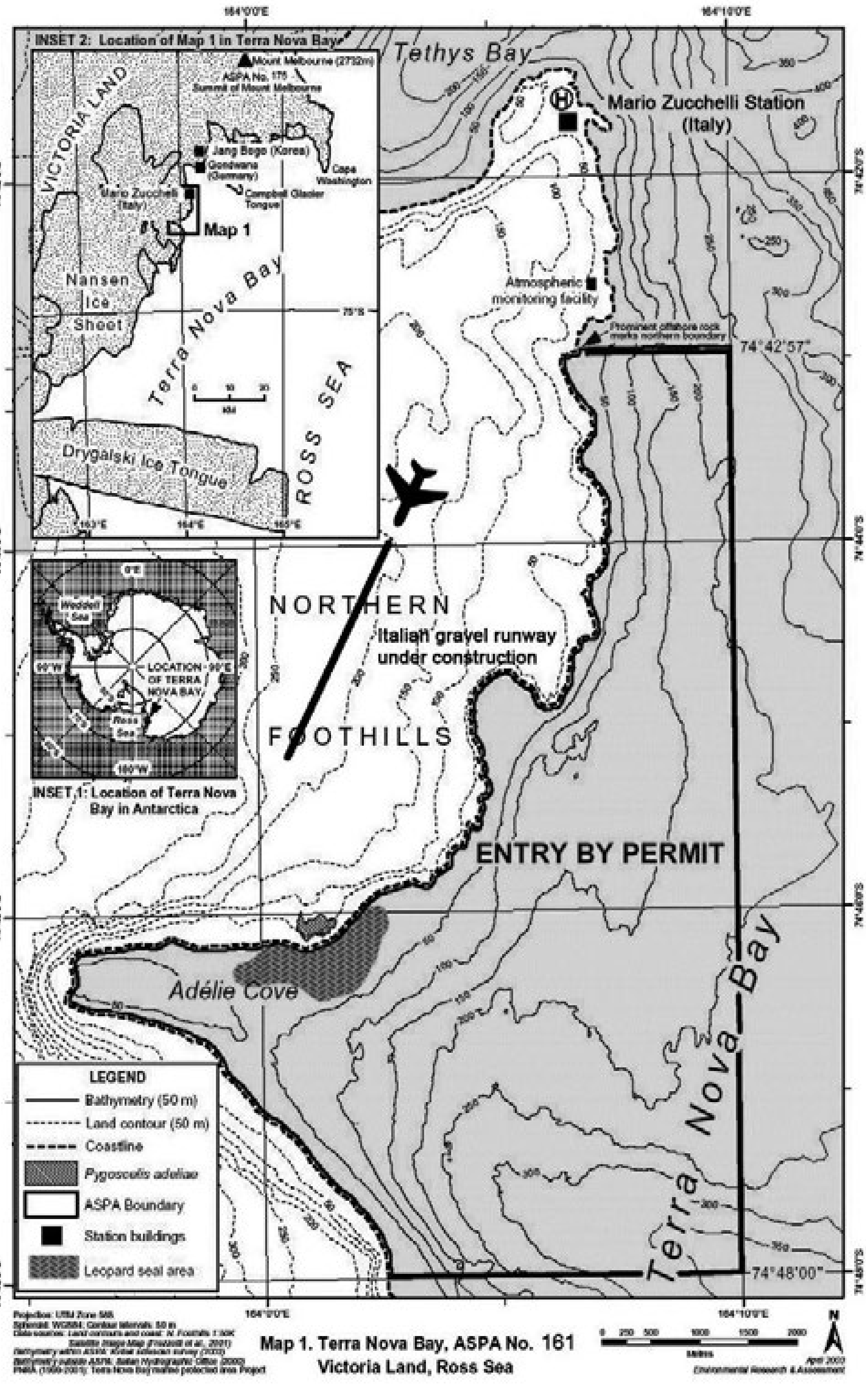
Vacchi M., La Mesa M., 1997. Morphometry of Cryodraco specimens of Terra Nova Bay. Cybium 21(4): 363-68.

Vacchi M., La Mesa M., Castelli A., 1994b. Diet of two coastal nototheniid fish from Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea. Antarctic Science 6(1): 61-65.

Vacchi M., La Mesa M., Greco S., 2000b. The coastal fish fauna of Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea (Antarctica). In: Ross Sea Ecology, F. Faranda, L. Guglielmo and A. Ianora Eds., Springer Verlag, Berlin Heidelberg: 457-68.

Vacchi M., La Mesa M., Eastman J.T., 2004a."The role of notothenioid fish in the food web of the Ross Sea shelf waters: a review" Polar Biology 27(6), 321-338, (2004)
Vacchi M., La Mesa M., Dalù M., MacDonald J., 2004b. Early life stages in the life cycle of Antarctic silverfish,Pleuragramma antarcticum in Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea. Antarctic Science
Vacchi M., Romanelli M., La Mesa M., 1992. Age structure of Chionodraco hamatus (Teleostei, Channichthyidae) samples caught in Terra Nova Bay, East Antarctica. Polar Biology 12: 735-38.
Van dijken G.L., Arrigo K.R., 2005. " Annual cycles of sea ice and phytoplankton in three Ross Sea polynyas" Poster at 3rd International Conference on the Oceanography of the Ross Sea Antarctica. Venezia, Italy, 10-14 Oct

Map 1 Terra Nova Bay ASPA N° 161, Victoria Land, Ross Sea.



Measure 8 (2019)

Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 171 (Narębski Point, Barton Peninsula, King George Island): Revised Management Plan

The Representatives,

Recalling Articles 3, 5 and 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, providing for the designation of Antarctic Specially Protected Areas ("ASPA") and approval of Management Plans for those Areas;

Recalling

- Measure 13 (2009), which designated Narębski Point, Barton Peninsula, King George Island as ASPA d adopted a Management Plan for the Area;
- Measure 11 (2014), which adopted a revised Management Plan for ASPA 171;

Noting that the Committee for Environmental Protection ("CEP") has endorsed a revised Management Plan for ASPA 171;

Desiring to replace the existing Management Plan for ASPA 171 with the revised Management Plan;

Recommend to their Governments the following Measure for approval in accordance with paragraph 1 of Article 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty:

That:

1. the revised Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 171 (Narębski Point, Barton Peninsula, King George Island), which is annexed to this Measure, be approved; and
2. the Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 171 annexed to Measure 11 (2014) be revoked.

Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No. 171

NARĘBSKI POINT, BARTON PENINSULA, KING GEORGE ISLAND

Introduction

Narębski Point is located on the southeast coast of Barton Peninsula, King George Island. The Area is delimited as latitude 62° 13' 40"S - 62° 14' 23"S and longitude 58° 45' 25"W - 58° 47' 00"W, and easily distinguished by mountain peaks on the north and the east boundaries and coastline on the southwest boundary.

The unique topography of the Area gives the outstanding aesthetic beauty with panoramic views, and the Area provides exceptional opportunities for scientific studies of terrestrial biological communities with high diversity and complexity of ecosystem. In particular, the coverage of mosses and lichens is very extensive.

The Area also includes water-shed systems, such as lakes and creeks, where dense microbial and algal mats with complex species assemblages are frequently found. These fresh water resources are essential to the diverse life forms in this Area. The high biodiversity of terrestrial vegetation with complexity of habitats enhance the potential values of the Area to be protected.

Through the Korea Antarctic Research Program, scientists have visited the Area regularly since 1980s in order to study its fauna, flora and geology. In recent years, however, Narębski Point has been frequented by visitors from the nearby stations with purposes other than scientific research, particularly during the reproductive season, and vulnerability to human interference has been increasing. Some studies note that King George Island has the potential for tourism development (ASOC, 2007 & 2008; Peter et al., 2005) and visitors to the King Sejong Station have increased from less than 20 people a year in the late 1980s to over 110 in recent years.

The primary reason for designation of the Area as an Antarctic Specially Protected Area is to protect its ecological, scientific, and aesthetic values from human interference. Long-term protection and monitoring of diverse range of species and assemblages at Narębski Point will contribute to the development of appropriate regional and global conservation strategies for the species and will provide information for comparisons with elsewhere.
The ASPA was designated in 2009 (Measure 13: ASPA No 171 – Narębski Point, Barton Peninsula, King George Island) and the management plan was revised in 2014 (Measure 11).

The APSA is described as Domain A (Antarctic Peninsula northern geologic) based on the Environmental Domains Analysis for the Antarctic continent (Resolution 3, 2008), with ASPA No 111, 128, and 151. Moreover, the ASPA sits within Antarctic Conservation Biogeographic Region (ACBR) 3 – North-west Antarctic Peninsula Regions (Resolution 3, 2017).

1. Description of Values to be Protected

The Narębski Point area is designated as an Antarctic Specially Protected Area to protect its outstanding environmental values and to facilitate ongoing and planned scientific research.

The Area provides exceptional opportunities for scientific studies of terrestrial biological communities. Scientific research, including the monitoring of penguin colonies, has been carried out by several countries since the early 1980s. Outcomes of the research revealed the potential value of the Area as a reference site, particularly in relation to global warming and the impacts from human activities.

The most conspicuous vegetal communities are the associations of lichens and the moss turf dominated by *Usnea* spp, *Himantormia lugbris* and *Chorisodontium aciphyllum.* The present flora includes one Antarctic flowering plant species (only two flowering plant species were found as yet in the Antarctica), 51 lichen species, 29 moss species, six liverwort species, and at least one algae species.

Another noticeable feature in the Area is that over 2,800 pairs of Chinstrap Penguins (*Pygoscelis antarcticus*) – the largest number in King George Island – and over 2,300 pairs of Gentoo Penguins (*Pygoscelis papua*) inhabit in the Area (MOE 2018). There are also 16 other bird species. Among them, eight breeding birds include the Brown Skua (*Stercorarius antarcticus lonnbergi*), South Polar Skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*), Kelp Gull (*Larus dominicanus*), Antarctic Tern (*Sterna vittata*), Wilson's Storm Petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus*), Black-bellied Storm Petrel (*Fregetta tropica*), Snowy Sheathbill (*Chionis albus*), and the Southern Giant Petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*).
The unique topography of the Area, together with the abundance and diversity of fauna and flora, gives the Area an exceptional aesthetic value. Among others, the mountain peaks and the southernmost peaks provide breathtaking panoramic views. For above reasons, the Area should be protected and subject to minimal disturbance by human activities with the exception of occasional monitoring studies including vegetation, bird populations, geological and geomorphologic studies.

The total area of the Area is 984,951 m^2.

2. Aims and Objectives

Management of Narębski Point aims to:

- Avoid degradation of or substantial risk to the values of the Area by preventing unnecessary human disturbance to the Area;
- Allow scientific research that cannot be carried out elsewhere, as well as the continuity of ongoing long term biological studies established in the Area;
- Allow other scientific research, scientific support activities and visits for educational and outreach purposes (such as documentary reporting (visual, audio or written) of educational resources or services) provided that such

activities are for compelling reasons that cannot be served elsewhere and that will not jeopardize the natural ecological system in that Area;

- Allow visits for management purposes in support of the aims of the management plan;
- Prevent, to the maximum extent practicable, the introduction of non-native species and pathogen that may endanger or alter the ecosystem of the Area
- Protect the Area's aesthetic and scientific values.

3. Management Activities

The following management activities are to be undertaken to protect the values of the Area:

- Personnel accessing the site shall be specifically instructed, by their national program (or competent authority) as to the content of the Management Plan;
- Signboard illustrating the location and boundaries, with clear statements of entry restrictions, shall be placed at appropriate locations at the boundaries of the Area (see Map 2);
- Copies of this Management Plan shall be made available to all vessels and aircraft visiting the Area and/or operating in the vicinity of the adjacent stations, and all pilots and ship captains operating in the region shall be informed of the location, boundaries and restrictions applying to entry and overflight within the Area;
- All signs as well as scientific equipments and markers erected in the Area will be secured and maintained in proper conditions;
- The biological condition of the Area will be adequately monitored, including census on penguins and other birds populations;
- Any abandoned equipment or materials shall be removed to the maximum extent possible provided doing so does not adversely impact on the environment and the values of the Area;
- Visits shall be made as necessary (no less than once every five years) to assess whether the Area continues to serve the purposes for which it was designated and to ensure that maintenance and management measures are adequate;
- National Antarctic Programs operating in the region are encouraged to consult with each other and exchange information to ensure that activities in the Area are undertaken in a manner consistent with the aims and objectives of this Management Plan.

4. Period of Designation

Designated for an indefinite period.

5. Maps

Maps 1 to 6 are attached at the end of this management plan as Annex II.

- Map 1: Location of Narębski Point in relation to the King George Island and the existing protected areas (ASMA, ASPAs, and HSMs)
- Map 2: Boundary of the ASPA No. 171
- Map 3: Distribution of bird colonies and seal haul-out sites within the ASPA No. 171
- Map 4: Distribution of the plant communities in the ASPA No. 171
- Map 5: Geomorphologic details of the ASPA No. 171
- Map 6: Access routes to the ASPA No. 171

6. Description of the Area

6(i) Geographical co-ordinates, boundary markers, and natural features

Narębski Point is located on the southeast coast of Barton Peninsula, King George Island, and the Area is delimited as latitude 62° 13' 40"S - 62° 14' 23"S and longitude 58° 45' 25" W - 58° 47' 00" W. Boundaries are delimited by mountain peaks on the north and the east and coastline on the southwest. The southwest boundary can be easily recognized due to its distinguished geomorphology. The Area includes only the terrestrial area, excluding the intertidal zone.

The Area is rich in flora and fauna, of which the abundance of some species is exceptional. The cover of mosses and lichens is very extensive. There are large numbers of Chinstrap and Gentoo Penguins and the breeding areas of eight other birds including the nests of the Southern Giant Petrel. The high diversity in relief and coastal forms, due to the presence of different geologies and a prominent system of fractures, in addition to an extensive and varied vegetation cover, provides unusual scenic diversity in the Antarctic environment.

- *Climate*

Meteorological data for the Area are confined entirely to observations at the King Sejong Station (1988-2017), about 2 km northwest of Narębski Point. The climate is humid and relatively mild because of a strong maritime effect. The Area has an annual average temperature of -1.8 °C (maximum 10.5°C, minimum -25.6°C), relative humidity of 88.2%, average total precipitation of 526.5 mm, and cloud cover of 6.8 Octas. The mean wind velocity is 8.0 m/s (51.9 m/s at the greatest), predominantly from the northwest and east throughout the year. The occurrence of blizzards from 1988 to 2017 was 22.9 (average total duration time 271.6 hours).

- *Geology*

The lowermost lithostratigraphic unit in Barton peninsula is the Sejong formation (Yoo *et al*., 2001), formally regarded as a lower volcanic member. The Sejong formation is distributed in the southern and southeastern cliffs of Barton Peninsula (Lee *et al*., 2002). It is largely composed of volcaniclastic constituents gently dipping to the south and southwest. Mafic to intermediated volcanic lavas overlying the Sejong formation are widespread in Barton Peninsula, including the Area. They are mostly plagioclase-phyric or plagioclase- and clinopyroxene-phyric basaltic andesite to andesite with rare massive andesite. Some thick-bedded lapilli tuffs are intercalated with the lava flows. Mafic dikes, Narębski Point being one of them, cut the Sejong formation along the southern coast of the peninsula. Soils of the peninsula are subdivided into four suites based on bedrock type, namely those on granodiorite, basaltic andesite, lapilli tuff, and the Sejong formation (Lee *et al*., 2004). Soils are generally poor in organic materials and nutrients, except for those near seabird colonies.

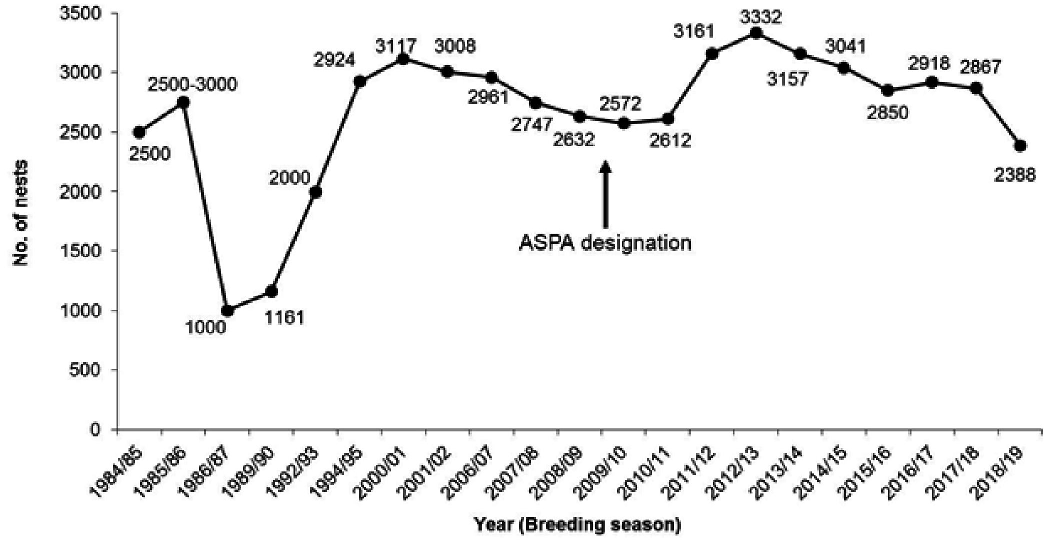
- *Penguins*

Breeding colonies of Chinstrap Penguins (*Pygoscelis antarcticus*) and Gentoo Penguins (*Pygoscelis papua*) are distributed on rocky inclines and hill crests of Narębski Point.

The Chinstrap Penguin is the most abundant breeding species at the site, with a total of 2,388 nests observed in 2018/19 (Figure 1A). Chinstrap Penguins begin to lay eggs in early November and incubate for 32-43 days, and the peak seasons of laying and hatching are estimated to be mid-November and mid-December, respectively (Kim, 2002). The maximum number of breeding Chinstrap Penguins was estimated at 3,332 nests in 2012/13 (MOE, 2013. Breeding nests of Chinstrap Penguins have maintained its population between 2,300 and 3,300 nests from 1994/95 to 2018/19 (see Figure 1A).

Breeding nests of Gentoo Penguins have increased steadily from 500 nests, since1984/85. A total of 2,224 nests of Gentoo Penguins were counted in 2018/19 (see Figure 1B). Gentoo Penguins start to lay eggs during mid-October, with the peak season occurring in late October. They incubate for 33-40 days and hatch in early December (Kim, 2002).

(A)



(B)

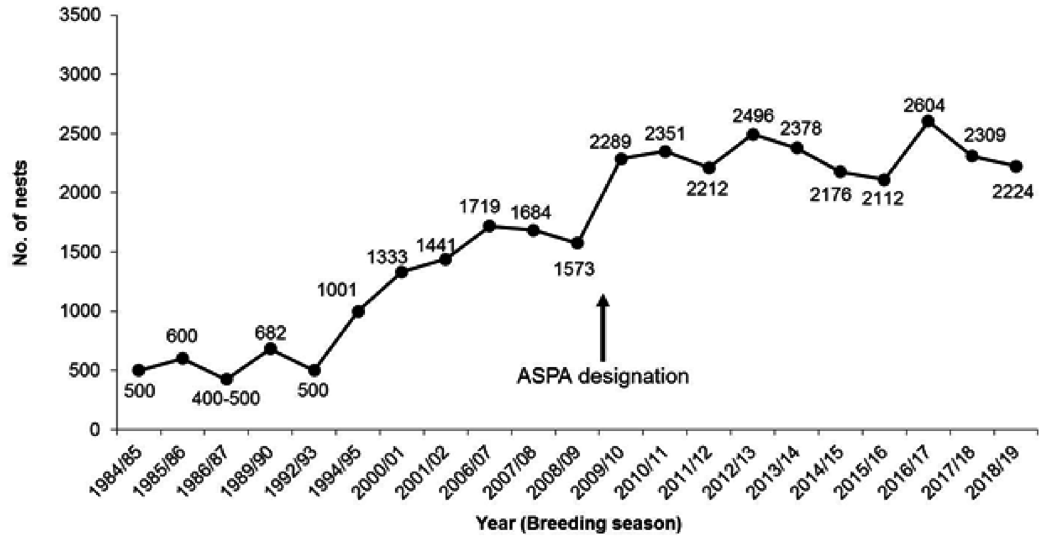


Figure 1. Breeding populations of (A) Chinstrap Penguins and (B) Gentoo Penguins at the Narębski Point (Peter et al., 1986; Rauschert et al., 1987; Mönke & Bick, 1988; Yoon, 1990; MOST, 1993; MAF, 1997; Kim, 2002; MOE, 2007; MOE, 2011, 2012, 2013, 2014, 2015, 2016, 2017, 2018)

- *Other birds*

There are eight more nesting bird species in the Area along with two penguin species: the Brown Skua (Stercorarius antarcticus lonnbergi), South Polar Skua (Stercorarius maccormicki), Kelp Gull (Larus dominicanus), Antarctic Tern (Sterna vittata), Southern Giant Petrel (Macronectes giganteus), Wilson's Storm Petrel (Oceanites oceanicus), Black-bellied Storm Petrel (Fregetta tropica), and Snowy Sheathbill (Chionis albus). In addition, eight non-breeding bird species have been recorded in the Area, including the Adélie Penguin (Pygoscelis adelie), Macaroni Penguin (Eudyptes chrysolophus), Antarctic Shag (Leucocarbo bransfieldensis), Arctic Tern

(Sterna paradisaea), Cape Petrel (Daption capense), Antarctic Petrel (Thalassoica antarctica), Snow Petrel (Pagodroma nivea), and Southern Fulmar (Fulmarus glacialoides). A summary of the estimated number of nests by species is presented in Table 1.

Brown Skuas and South Polar Skuas prey on penguin eggs and chicks, and some pairs of skuas occupy penguin sub-colonies as feeding territory during breeding season (Trivelpiece et al., 1980; Hagelin and Miller, 1997; Pezzo et al., 2001; Hahn and Peter, 2003). South Polar Skuas nesting in the Area do not depend on penguin eggs and chicks for their chick-rearing. On the contrary, during the 2018/19 season, all Brown Skua pairs (5 pairs) breeding in this Area were observed to occupy their own feeding territory in penguin sub-colonies and defend them.

Number of breeding pairs of Snowy Sheathbill near penguin rookery increased to five in Narębski Point in 2018/2019. Snowy Sheathbills are omnivores and forage for food around the breeding colonies of seabirds. They feed on penguin faeces, eggs, and dead chicks, and also steal krill from penguins at the site.

Table 1. Estimated number of nests, by species (2006/07, 2013/14, 2018/2019)

Species		Number of nests		
		2006/2007	2013/2014	2018/2019
Gentoo Penguin	*Pygoscelis papua*	1,719	2,378	2,224
Chinstrap Penguin	*Pygoscelis antarcticus*	2,961	3,157	2,388
Brown Skua	*Stercorarius antarcticus lonnbergi*	4	7	5
South Polar Skua	*Stercorarius maccormicki*	27	-	7
Kelp Gull	*Larus dominicanus*	6	-	-
Antarctic Tern	*Sterna vittata*	41	-	4
Southern Giant Petrel	*Macronectes giganteus*	9	5	15
Wilson's Storm Petrel	*Oceanites oceanicus*	19	>10	>7
Snowy Sheathbill	*Chionis albus*	2	2	5

- *Vegetation*

Most of the ice-free areas of Barton Peninsula are covered by relatively rich vegetation, dominated by cryptogamic species. The cover of mosses and lichens is very extensive within the Area. The most conspicuous vegetal communities are the associations of dominant lichens Usnea-Himantormia and the moss turf dominated by Sanionia-Chorisodontium. The algal community is dominated by the green fresh water alga Prasiola crispa, which is established around penguin colonies. The present flora includes one Antarctic flowering plant species, 51 lichen species, 29 moss species, six liverwort species, and one algae species. In the case of algae, only the species forming macroscopically detectable stands were recorded. No information on cyanobacteria and mycobiota occurring in this Area is available, as studies have not been undertaken. The detailed vegetation list is shown in Annex I.

- *Human activities / impacts*

Two permanent scientific stations are located at nearby Narębski Point. The King Sejong Station (62°13'S, 58°47'W; Republic of Korea), established in 1988, and the Carlini Station (62°14'S, 58°40'W; Argentina), established in 1953, operate year-round activities.

6(ii) Access to the area

Access to the Area is possible on foot along the coast or by small boat without anchoring. The access routes and the landing site are shown in Map 6. Vehicle traffic of any type is not permitted inside the Area. Access restrictions apply within the Area, the specific conditions for which are set out in Section 7(ii) below.

6(iii) Location of structures within and adjacent to the Area

Only one refuge facility is located at the southeastern coast in the Area. The King Sejong Station (Republic of Korea, 62°13'S, 58°47'W; Map 2), which is located 2 km to the northwest of Narębski Point, is the closest major facility and the Carlini Station (Argentina) is located 5 km to the southeast of Narębski Point.

6(iv) Location of other protected areas in the vicinity

- ASMA No. 1, Admiralty Bay, King George Island, South Shetland islands lies about 8 km northeast.
- ASPA No. 125, Fildes Peninsula, King George Island, South Shetland islands lies about 11 km west.
- ASPA No. 128, Western Shore of Admiralty Bay, King George Island, South Shetland islands lies about 17 km east.
- ASPA No. 132, Potter Peninsula, King George Island, South Shetland islands lies about 5 km east.
- ASPA No. 133, Harmony Point, Nelson Island, South Shetland islands lies about 25 km southwest.
- ASPA No. 150, Ardley Island, King George Island, South Shetland islands lies about 9 km to the west.
- ASPA No. 151, Lions Rump, King George Island, South Shetland islands lies about 35km northeast.
- HSM No. 36, Replica of a metal plaque erected by Eduard Dallmann at Potter Cove, King George Island, lies about 5 km east.
- HSM No. 50, Plaque to commemorate the research vessel Professor Siedlecki

which landed in February 1976, Fildes Peninsula, King George Island lies about 10 km west.

- HSM No. 51, Grave of W. Puchalski, an artist and a producer of documentary films, who died on 19 January 1979, lies about 18 km northeast.
- HSM No. 52, Monolith erected to commemorate the establishment on 20 February 1985 of Great Wall Station (China), Fildes Peninsula, King George Island lies about 10 km west.
- HSM No. 82, Plaque at the foot of the monument commemorating the Signatories to the Antarctic Treaty and successive IPYs, lies about 12 km west.
- HSM No. 86, No.1 Building at Great Wall Station, lies about 10 km west.

6(v) Special zones within the Area

There are no special zones within the Area.

7. Terms and conditions for entry permits

7(i) General permit conditions

Entry into the Area is prohibited except in accordance with a permit issued by appropriate national authorities as designated under Article 7 of Annex V of the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty.

Conditions for issuing a permit to enter the Area are that:

- It is issued only for scientific study of the ecosystem, or for compelling scientific or educational (such as documentary reporting or the production of educational resources or services) reasons that cannot be served elsewhere, or for reasons essential to the management of the Area;
- The actions permitted will not jeopardize the natural ecological system of the Area;
- The actions permitted are in accordance with this Management Plan;
- Any management activities are in support of the objectives of the Management Plan;
- The permit, or an authorized copy, must be carried within the Area;
- Permits shall be valid for a stated period and identify the competent authority.

7(ii) Access to, and movements within or over, the Area

- Access to the Area is possible on foot along the coast or by small boat without anchoring. The access routes and the landing site are shown in Map 6.
- Pedestrian movements should be kept with caution so as to minimize disturbance to flora and fauna, and should walk on snow or rocky terrain if practical, but taking care not to damage lichens.

- Vehicle traffic of any type is not permitted inside the Area.
- The operation of aircraft over the Area will be carried out, as a minimum requirement, in compliance with Resolution 2 (2004), "Guidelines for the Operation of Aircraft near Concentrations of Birds". As a general rule, no aircraft should fly over the ASPA at less than 610 meters (2000 ft), except in cases of emergency or aircraft security. Over flights, however, should be avoided.
- Overflight of bird colonies within the Area by Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS) shall not be permitted unless for scientific or operational purposes in compliance with Resolution 4 (2018), and in accordance with a permit issued by an appropriate national authority.

7(iii) Activities which may be conducted within the Area;

Activities which may be conducted within the Area shall not jeopardize ecological, scientific and aesthetic values of the Area. Activities which may be conducted within the Area include:

- Compelling scientific research which cannot be undertaken elsewhere;
- Essential management activities, including monitoring;
- Constraints may be placed on the use of motor-driven tools and any activity likely to generate noise and thereby cause disturbances to nesting birds during the breeding period (from October 1 to March 31);
- Activities for educational or outreach purposes (such as documentary reporting (e.g. visual, audio or written) or the production of educational resources or services) that cannot be served elsewhere;
- Sampling, which should be the minimum required for approved research programmes.

7(iv) Installation, modification, or removal of structures

- No structures will be built and no equipment installed within the Area, with the exception of scientific or management activities, as specified in the permit.
- Any scientific equipment installed in the Area should be approved by a permit and clearly identify the permitting country, name of the principal investigator, and the year of installation and date of expected removal. All the equipment should pose a minimum risk of pollution to the Area or a minimum risk of causing disturbances to the flora or to the fauna.
- Signs of investigation should not remain after the permit expires. If a specific project cannot be finished within the allowed time period, an extension should be sought that authorizes the continued presence of any object in the Area.

7(v) Location of field camps

- The use of the refuge facility located on the shore near the eastern boundary of the Area is strongly encouraged in emergency (see Map 2).

- For scientific purposes, temporary camping is permitted within the Area in accordance with a permit. There are no specific restrictions on the precise locality for temporary camp sites within the Area, although it is recommended that initial sites selected should be away from breeding bird nests.

7(vi) Restriction on material and organisms which may be brought into the Area

In addition to the requirements of the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, restrictions on materials and organisms which may be brought into the Area are:

- No living animals or plant material shall be deliberately introduced into the Area.
- No uncooked poultry products or fresh fruit and vegetables are to be taken into the Area.
- To minimize the risk of microbial or vegetation introductions from soils at other Antarctic sites, including the station, or from regions outside Antarctica, footwear and any equipment (particularly sampling equipment and markers) to be used in the Area shall be thoroughly cleaned before entering the Area.
- No herbicides or pesticides shall be introduced into the Area. Any other chemical product, which shall be introduced with the corresponding permit, shall be removed from the Area upon conclusion of the activity for which the permit was granted. The use and type of chemical products should be documented, as clearly as possible, for the knowledge of other researchers.
- Fuel, food, and other material are not to be stored in the Area, unless required for essential purposes connected with the activity for which the permit has been granted, provided it is securely stored so that wildlife cannot have access to it.
- To ensure that ecological values of the Area are maintained, special precautions shall be taken against accidentally introducing microbes, invertebrates or plants from other Antarctic sites, including stations, or from regions outside Antarctica.
- Further guidance can be found in the CEP Non-native species manual (CEP, 2017) and *SCAR's Environmental Code of Conduct for Terrestrial Scientific Field Research in Antarctica* (Resolution 5, 2018).

7(vii) Taking of, or harmful interference with, native flora and fauna

- Any taking or harmful interference, except in accordance with a permit, is prohibited and should be consistent with the *SCAR Code of Conduct for the use of Animals for Scientific Purposes in Antarctica* (ATCM XXXIV and CEP XIV, 2011) as a minimum requirement.
- Information on taking or harmful interference will be exchanged through the System of Information Exchange of the Antarctic Treaty.

7(viii) The collection or removal of materials not brought into the Area by the permit holder

- Collection or removal of materials from the Area may be only in accordance with a permit and should be limited to the minimum necessary to meet scientific or management needs.
- Anything of human origin likely to compromise the values of the Area, which were not brought into the Area by the permit holder or otherwise authorized, may be removed unless the impact of removal is likely to be greater than leaving the material *in situ*: if this is the case, the appropriate authority should be notified.

7(ix) Disposal of waste

- All wastes, including all human wastes, shall be removed from the Area.

7(x) Measures that may be necessary to continue to meet the aims of the Management Plan

- Permits may be granted to enter the Area to:
- carry out biological monitoring and Area inspection activities, which may involve the collection of a small number of samples for scientific analysis or review;
- install or maintain signboards, markers, structures or scientific equipment;
- carry out protective measures.
- Any long-term monitoring sites shall be appropriately marked and the markers or signs maintained.

7(xi) Requirements for reports

- The principal permit holder for each issued permit shall submit a report of activities undertaken in the Area.
- Such reports should include, as appropriate, the information identified in the visit report form contained in the *Revised Guide to the Preparation of Management Plans for Antarctic Specially Protected Areas* (Resolution 2, 2011).
- This report shall be submitted to the authority named in the permit as soon as practicable, but not later than 6 months after the visit has taken place.
- Records of such reports should be stored indefinitely and made accessible to any interested Party, SCAR, CCAMLR, and COMNAP if requested, so as to provide necessary information of human activities in the Area to ensure adequate management of the Area.
- The appropriate authority should be notified of any activities / measures undertaken, and / or of any materials released and not removed, that were not included in the authorized permit.

8. Supporting documentation

Aguirre, C.A. & Acero, J.M. (1995) Distribution and abundance of birds in the Errera Channel, Antarctic Peninsula during the 1992/93 breeding season. Mar. Ornithol. 23, 129-134.

ASOC (2007) Implementing the Madrid Protpcol: A case study of Fildes Peninsula, King George Island, XXX ATCM/IP136.

ASOC (2008) Some land-based facilities used to support/manage Antarctic tourism in King George Island, XXXI ATCM/IP41.

Bednarek-Ochyra, H., Vana, R. & Lewis-Smith, R.I. (2000) The liverwort flora of Antarctica. Polish Academy of Sciences, Institute of Botany, Cracow.

Chang, S.K. (2004) Preliminary report on the ecology of the penguins observed in the cold years and a less cold year in the vicinity of King Sejong Station, King George Island off the Antarctic Peninsula. In: Annual report of environmental monitoring on human impacts at the King Sejong Station, Antarctica. KORDI, ECPP 03 102.

Esponda, C.M.G. Coria, N.R. & Montalti, D. (2000) Breeding birds at Halfmoon Island, South Shetland Islands, Antarctica, 1995/96. Mar. Ornithol. 28, 59-62.

Hagelin, J.C., and Miller, G.D. (1997) Nest-site selection in South polar skuas: Balancing nest safty and access to recources. Auk 114, 638-546.

Hahn, S., Peter, H-U., Quillfeldt, P. & Reinhardt, K. (1998) The birds of the Potter Peninsula, King George Island, South Shetland, Antarctica, 1965–1998, Mar. Ornithol. 26, 1-6.

Jablonski, B. (1984) Distribution and number of penguins in the region of King George Island, South Shetland Islands in the breeding season 1980/81. Polish Polar Research 5, 17-30.

Kim, D. (2002) Effect of variation in food supply on reproduction in Gentoo (*Pygoscelis papua)* and Chinstrap penguins (P. *antarctica)*. p.195-222. In: Annual report of environmental monitoring on human impacts at the King Sejong Station, Antarctica. KORDI EC PP 01 001-B2.

Kim, J.H. Ahn, I.Y., Lee , K.S., Chung, H. & Choi, H.-G. (2007) Vegetation of Barton Peninsula in the neighbourhood of King Sejong Station (King George Island, Maritime Antarctic). Polar Biol. 30, 903-916.

Kim J.-H., Chung, H., Kim, J.H., Yoo, J.C. & Ahn, I.Y. (2005) Nest distribution of skuas on Barton and Weaver peninsulas of the King George Island, the Antarctic. Ocean and Polar Research 27(4), 443-450.

Lee, J.I., Hur, S.D., Yoo, C.M., Ueo, J.P., Kim, H., Hwang J., Choe, M.Y., Nam, S.H., Kim. Y., Park, B-K., Zheng X. & López- Martínez, J. (2002) Explanatory text of the geological map of Barton and Weaver Peninsulas, King George Island, Antarctica. Korea Ocean Research and Development Institute.

Lee YI, Lim HS & Yoon HI (2004) Geochemistry of soils of King George Island, South Shetland Islands, West Antarctica: implication for pedogenesis in cold polar regions. Geochim Cosmochim Acta 68, 4319–4333.

Lewis-Smith, R.I. and Poncet, S. (1985) New southernmost record for Antarctic flowering plants. Polar Record 22, 425-427.

López- Martínez, J., Serrano, E. & Lee, J.I. (2002) Geomorphological map of Barton and Weaver Peninsulas, King George Island, Antarctica. Korea Ocean Research and Development Institute.

Lumper, P., and Weidinger, K. (2000) Distribution, numbers and breeding of birds at the Northern Ice-free areas of Nelson Island, South Shetland Islands, 1990–1992. Mar. Ornithol. 28, 41-56.
Ministry of Environment (MOE) (2007) The fundamental study for designation of Antarctic Specially Protected Area. BSPN07030-71-3.
Ministry of Environment (MOE) (2011) Management of and monitoring on Antarctic Specially Protected Area. Ministry of Environment.
Ministry of Environment (MOE) (2012) Management of and monitoring on Antarctic Specially Protected Area (II). Ministry of Environment.
Ministry of Environment (MOE) (2013) Management of and monitoring on Antarctic Specially Protected Area (III). Ministry of Environment.
Ministry of Environment (MOE) (2014) Development of Environmental Monitoring Techniques of Antarctic Specially Protected Area. Ministry of Environment.
Ministry of Environment (MOE) (2015) Development of Environmental Monitoring Techniques of Antarctic Specially Protected Area (II). Ministry of Environment.
Ministry of Environment (MOE) (2016) Development of Environmental Monitoring Techniques of Antarctic Specially Protected Area (III). Ministry of Environment.
Ministry of Environment (MOE) (2017) Development of Environmental Monitoring Techniques of Antarctic Specially Protected Area (IV). Ministry of Environment.
Ministry of Environment (MOE) (2018) Development of Environmental Monitoring Techniques of Antarctic Specially Protected Area (V). Ministry of Environment.
Ministry of Maritime Affairs and Fisheries (MAF) (1997) Overwintering Report of the 8th Korea Antarctic Research Program at King Sejong Station (November 1994-December 1995). BSE 520001-982-7.
Ministry of Science and Technology (MOST) (1989) A study on Natural Environment in the area around the Korea Antarctic Station, King George Island (II). BSPG00081-246-7.
Ministry of Science and Technology (MOST) (1992) The Research on Natural Environments and Resources of Antarctica. BSPG 00169-5-485-7.
Ministry of Science and Technology (MOST) (1993) Overwintering Report of the 4th Korea Antarctic Research Program at King Sejong Station (December 1991-December 1992). BSPN 00221-1-678-7.
Mönke, R. & Bick, A. (1988) Fachlicher Bericht über die Teilnahme der DDRBiologengruppe an der 31. Sowjetischen Antarktisexpedition (SAE), Station "Bellingshausen", King-George-Island (Südshetland Inseln/Antarktis), Berlin, Potsdam.
Ochyra, R. (1998) The moss flora of King George Island Antarctica. Polish Academy of Sciences, W. Szafer Institute of Botany, Cracow.
Øvstedal, D.O. & Lewis-Smith. R.I. (2001) Lichens of Antarctica and South Georgia: a guide to their identification and ecology. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge, P. 411.
Peter, H.-U., Kaiser, M. & Gebauer, A. (1986) Reisebericht - Teil 2, Wissenschaftliche Ergebnisse der Teilnahme an der 29. Sowjetischen

Antarktisexpedition Überwinterungsgruppe, Station Bellingshausen 21.11.1983-18.05.1985, Berlin, Potsdam.
Peter, H.-U., Busser, C., Mustafa, O & Pfeiffer, S. (2005) Preliminary Results of the Research Project "Risk assessment for the Fildes Peninsula and Ardley Island and the development management plans for designation as ASMA (unpublished survey results presented at the Fildes meeting at INACH).
Pezzo, F.,Olmastroni, S., Corsolini, S., & Focardi, S. (2001) Factors affecting the breeding success of the south polar skua Catharacta maccormicki at Edmonson Point, Victoria Land, Antarctica. Polar Biol 24, 389-393.
Rauschert, M., Zippel, D. & Gruner, M. (1987) Reisebericht Teil 2. Fachlicher Bericht über die Teilnahme der Biologengruppe der DDR an der 30. Sowjetischen Antarktisexpedition (SAE), Station "Bellingshausen", King George Island (Südshetlandinseln/Antarktis), unveröffentl. Ber. Berlin, Potsdam.
Schroeter, B., Kappen, L. Green, T.G.A. & Seppelt, R.D. (1997) Lichens and the Antarctic environment: effect of temperature and water availability on phytosynthetisis. In Ecosystem processes in Antarctic ice-free landscapes, ed. W.B. Lyons, C. Howard-Williams & I. Hawes, pp. 103-117. Rotterdam, Balkema.
Shuford, W.D. & Spear, L.B. (1988) Survey of Breeding Penguins and other seabirds in the South Shetland Islands, Antarctica, January-February 1987. NOAA Technical Memorandum NMFS-F/NEC-59.
Takahashi, A., Kokubun N., Mori, Y. & Shin, H-C. (2008) Krill-feeding behaviour of gentoo penguins as shown by animal-borne camera loggers. Polar Biol. 31, 1291-1294.
Trivelpiece, W, Butler, R.G. & Volkman, N.J. (1980) Feeding territoties of brown skuas (Catharacta lonnbergi). Auk 97, 669-676.
Trivelpiece, W.Z., Trivelpiece, S.G. & Volkman, N.J. (1987) Ecological segregation of adélie, gentoo, Chinstrap penguins at King George Island, Antarctica. Ecology 68, 351-361.
Yoon, M.B. (1990) Observation of birds around King Sejong Station during 1989/90 austral summer. In A study on Natural Environment in the Area Around the Korean Antarctic Station, King George Island (III). pp.433-459. MOST BSPG-00111-317-7.
Yoo, C.M., Choe, M.Y., Jo, H.R., Kim, Y. & Kim, K.H. (2001) Vocaniclastic sedimentation of the Sejong Formation (Late Paleocene-Eocene), Barton Peninsula, King George Island, Antarctica. Ocean and Polar Research, 23, 97-107.
Vaughan, D.G., Marshall, G.J., Connolley, W.M., King, J.C. & Mulvaney, R. (2001) Devil in the detail. Science 293, 1777-1779.

ANNEX I. List of flora in the Site

Taxa

Lichens
Acrospora austroshetlandica (C.W. Dodge) Øvstedal
Bryoria sp.
Buellia anisomera Vain.
Buellia russa (Hue)Darb.
Caloplaca lucens (Nyl.) Zahlbr.
Caloplaca sublobulata (Nyl.) Zahlbr.
Cetraria aculeata (Schreb.) Fr.
Cladonia borealis S. Stenroos
Cladonia chlorophaea (Flörke ex Sommerf.) Spreng.
Cladonia furcata (Huds.) Schaer.
Cladonia gracilis (L.) Willd.
Cladonia merochlorophaea var *novochlorophaea* Sipman
Cladonia pleurota (Flörke) Schaer.
Cladonia pyxidata (L.) Hoffm.
Cladonia scabriuscula (Delise) Nyl.
Haematomma erythromma (Nyl.) Zahlbr
Himantormia lugubris (Hue.) I. M. Lamb
Huea coralligera (Hue) C. W. Dodge & G. E. Baker
Lecania brialmontii (Vain.) Zahlbr.
Lecania gerlachei (Vain.) Darb.
Lecanora polytropa (Hoffm.) Rabenh.
Lecidea cancriformis C.W. Dodge and G.E. Baker
Lecidella carpathica Körb.
Massalongia carnosa (Dicks.) Körb.
Ochlorechia frigida (Sw.) Lynge
Pannaria austro-orcadensis Øvstedal
Pertusaria excudens Nyl.
Physcia caesia (Hoffm.) Fürnr.
Physcia dubia (Hoffm.) Lettau
Physconia muscigena (Ach.) Poelt
Placopsis contourtuplicata I. M. Lamb
Porpidia austrosheltandica Hertel
Pseudophebe pubescens (L.) M. Choisy
Psoroma cinnamomeum Malme
Psoroma hypnorum (Vahl) Gray
Ramalina terebrata Hook f, & Taylor
Rhizocarpon geographicum (L.) DC.
Rhizoplaca aspidophora (Vain.) Redón
Rhizoplaca melanophthalma (Ram.) Leuckert & Poelt
Rinodina olivaceobrunnea C.W. Dodge & G. B. Baker
Sphaerophorus globosus (Huds.) Vain.
Stereocaulon alpinum Laurer
Tephromela atra (Huds.) Hafellmer ex Kalb
Tremolecia atrata (Ach.) Hertel
Turgidosculum complicatulum (Nyl.) J. Kohlm. & E. Kohlm
Umbilicaria antarctica Frey & I. M. Lamb
Umbilicaria decussata (Vill.) Zahlbr.

Usnea antarctica Du Rietz
Usnea aurantiaco-atra (Jacq.) Bory
Xanthoria candelaria (L.) Th. Fr.
Xanthoria elegans (Link) Th. Fr.

Mosses
Andreaea depressinervis Cardot
Andreaea gainii Cardot
Andreaea regularis Müll. Hal.
Bartramia patens Brid.
Bryum argenteum Hedw.
Bryum orbiculatifolium Cardot & Broth.
Bryum pseudotriquetrum (Hedw.) C.F. Gaertn. et al.
Ceratodon purpureus (Hedw.) Brid.
Chorisodontium aciphyllum (Hook. f. & Wils.)
Dicranoweisia brevipes (Müll. Hal.) Cardot
Dicranoweisia crispula (Hedw.) Lindb. Ex Milde
Ditrichum hyalinum (Mitt.) Kuntze
Ditrichum lewis-smithii Ochyra
Encalypta rhaptocarpa Schwägr.
Hennediella antarctica (Ångstr.) Ochyra & Matteri
Notoligotrichum trichodon (Hook. f. Wils.) G. L. Sm.
Pohlia drummondii (Müll. Hal.) A. K. Andrews
Pohlia nutans (Hedw.) Lindb.
Pohlia wahlenbergii (Web. & Mohr) A. L. Andrews
Polytrichastrum alpinum (Hedw.) G. L. Sm.
Polytrichum strictum Brid.
Racomitrium sudeticum (Funck) Bruch & Schimp.
Sanionia georgico-uncinata (Müll. Hal.) Ochyra & Hedenäs
Sanionia uncinata (Hedw.) Loeske
Schistidium antarctici (Card.) L. I. Savicz & Smirnova
Syntrichia filaris (Müll. Hal.) Zand.
Syntrichia princeps (De Not.) Mitt.
Syntrichia saxicola (Card.) Zand.
Warnstorfia sarmentosa (Wahlenb.) Hedenäs

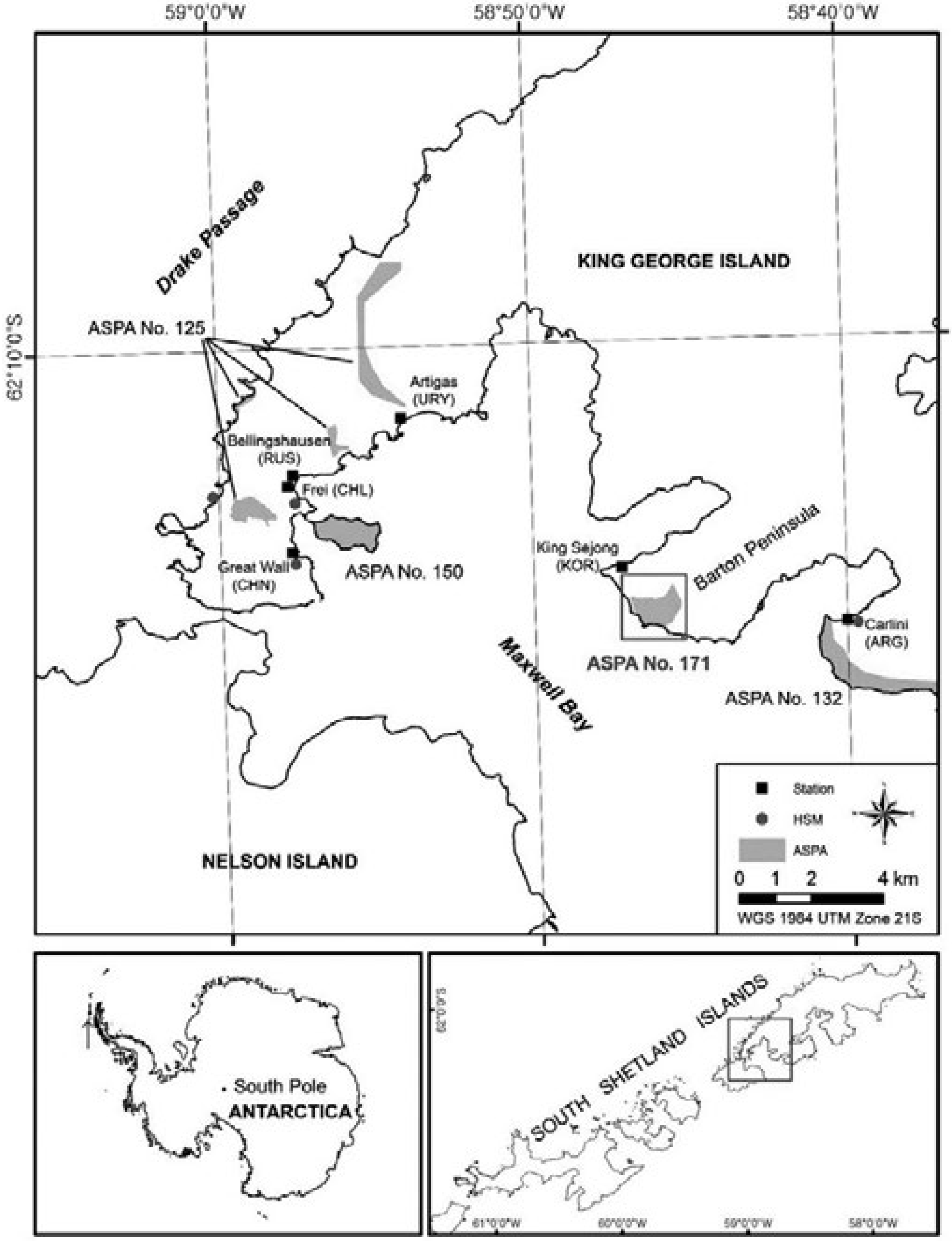
Liverworts
Barbilophozia hatcheri (A. Evans) Loeske
Cephalozia badia (Gottsche) Steph.
Cephaloziella varians (Gottsche) Steph.
Herzogobryum teres (Carrington & Pearson) Grolle
Lophozia excisa (Dicks.) Dumort.
Pachyglossa disstifidolia Herzog & Grolle

Algae
Prasiola crispa (Ligtf.) Menegh.

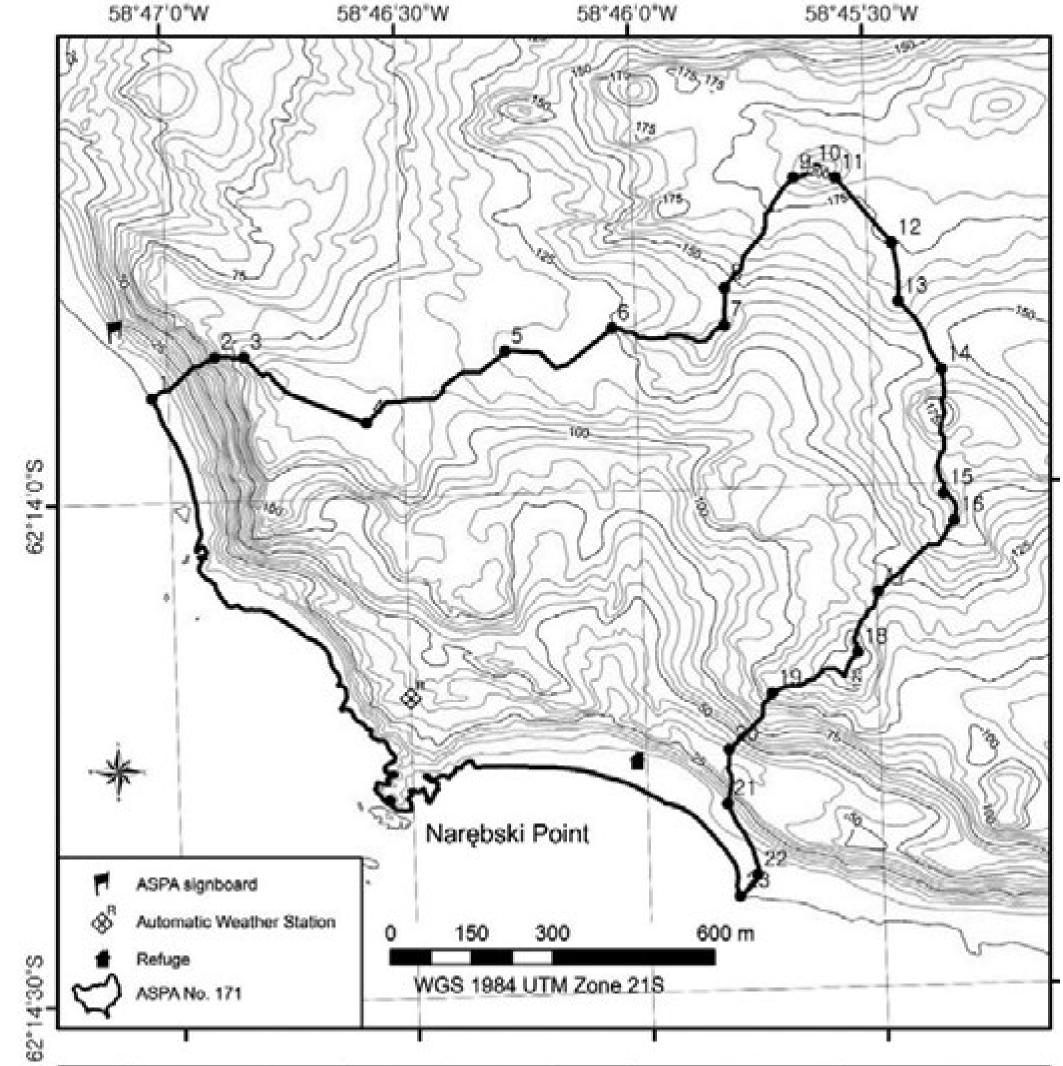
Flowering plant
Deschampsia antarctica Desv

ANNEX II. Maps

Map 1. Location of Narębski Point (ASPA No. 171) in relation to King George Island and the existing protected areas (ASMA, ASPAs, and HSMs)

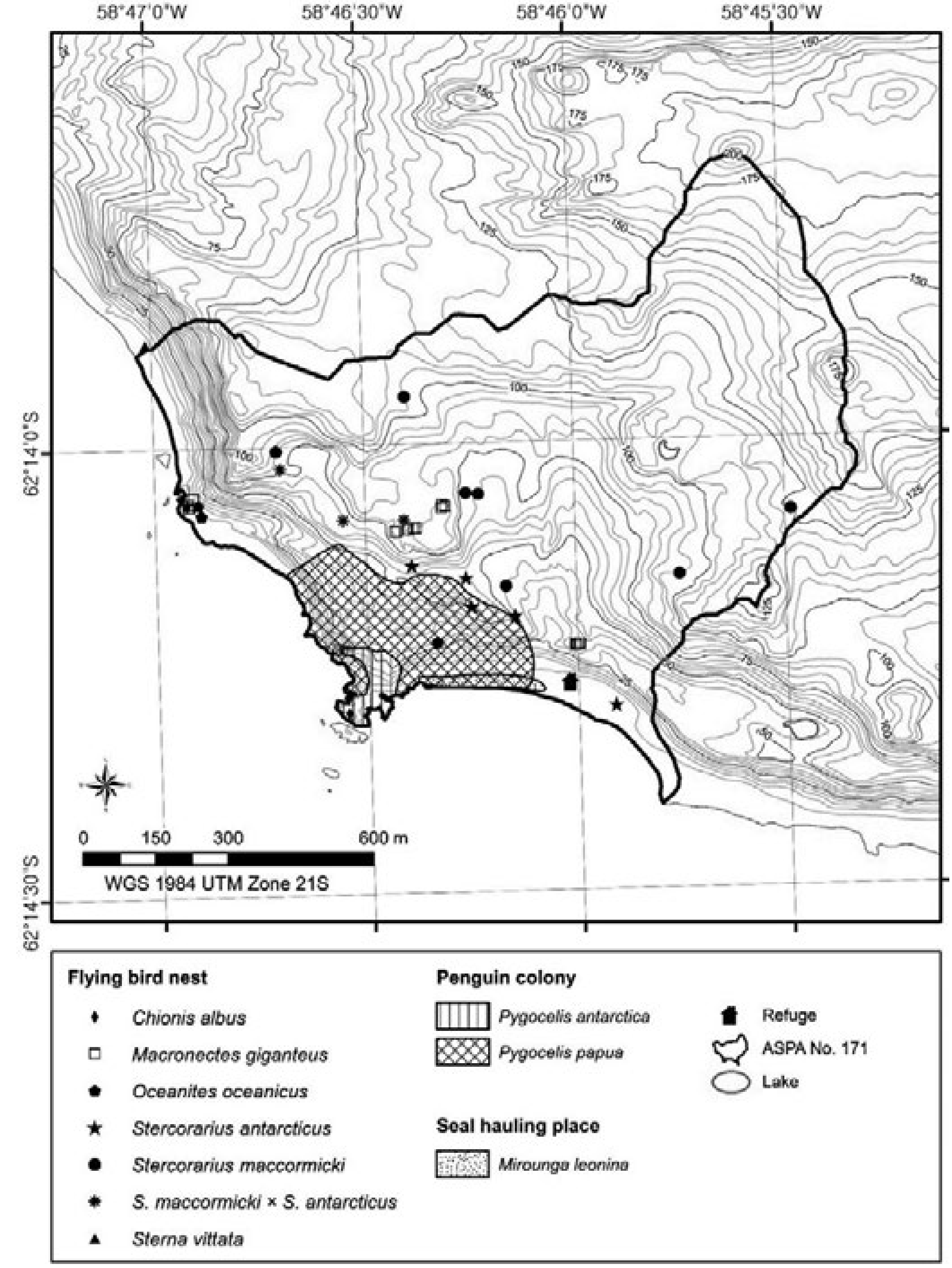


Map 2. Boundary of the ASPA No. 171

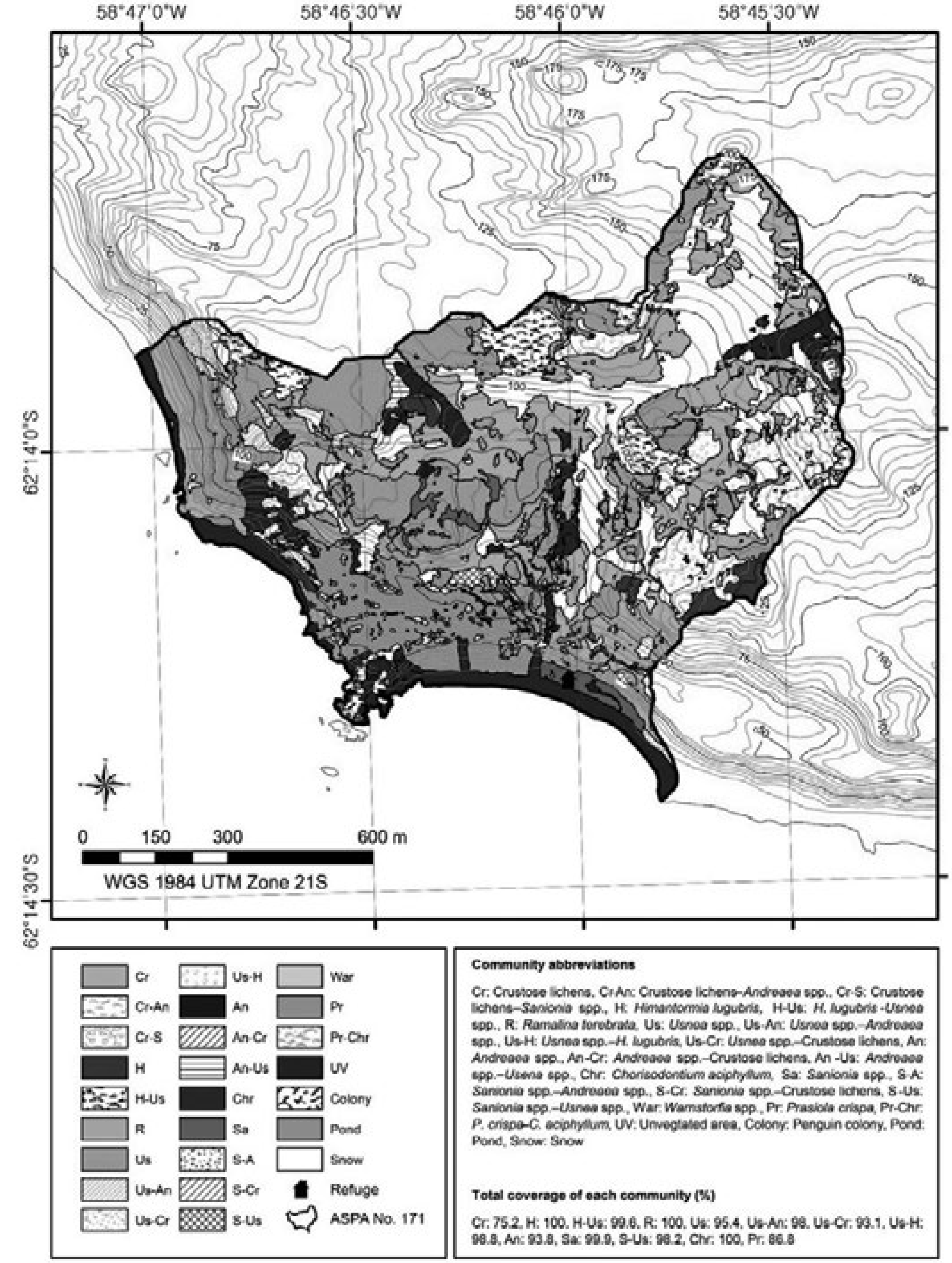


	Latitude	Longitude		Latitude	Longitude
1	62° 13' 53.757" S	58° 47' 02.093" W	13	62° 13' 49.089" S	58° 45' 26.162" W
2	62° 13' 51.395" S	58° 46' 53.906" W	14	62° 13' 53.212" S	58° 45' 20.781" W
3	62° 13' 51.419" S	58° 46' 50.136" W	15	62° 14' 00.629" S	58° 45' 20.934" W
4	62° 13' 55.537" S	58° 46' 34.700" W	16	62° 14' 02.277" S	58° 45' 19.645" W
5	62° 13' 51.459" S	58° 46' 16.650" W	17	62° 14' 06.378" S	58° 45' 29.655" W
6	62° 13' 50.273" S	58° 46' 02.924" W	18	62° 14' 09.993" S	58° 45' 32.489" W
7	62° 13' 50.256" S	58° 45' 48.464" W	19	62° 14' 12.312" S	58° 45' 43.585" W
8	62° 13' 48.041" S	58° 45' 48.312" W	20	62° 14' 15.627" S	58° 45' 49.304" W
9	62° 13' 41.529" S	58° 45' 39.156" W	21	62° 14' 18.883" S	58° 45' 49.666" W
10	62° 13' 41.050" S	58° 45' 36.106" W	22	62° 14' 23.167" S	58° 45' 46.055" W
11	62° 13' 41.592" S	58° 45' 33.772" W	23	62° 14' 24.421" S	58° 45' 48.379" W
12	62° 13' 45.599" S	58° 45' 26.777" W	NP	62° 14' 18.170" S	58° 46' 32.990" W

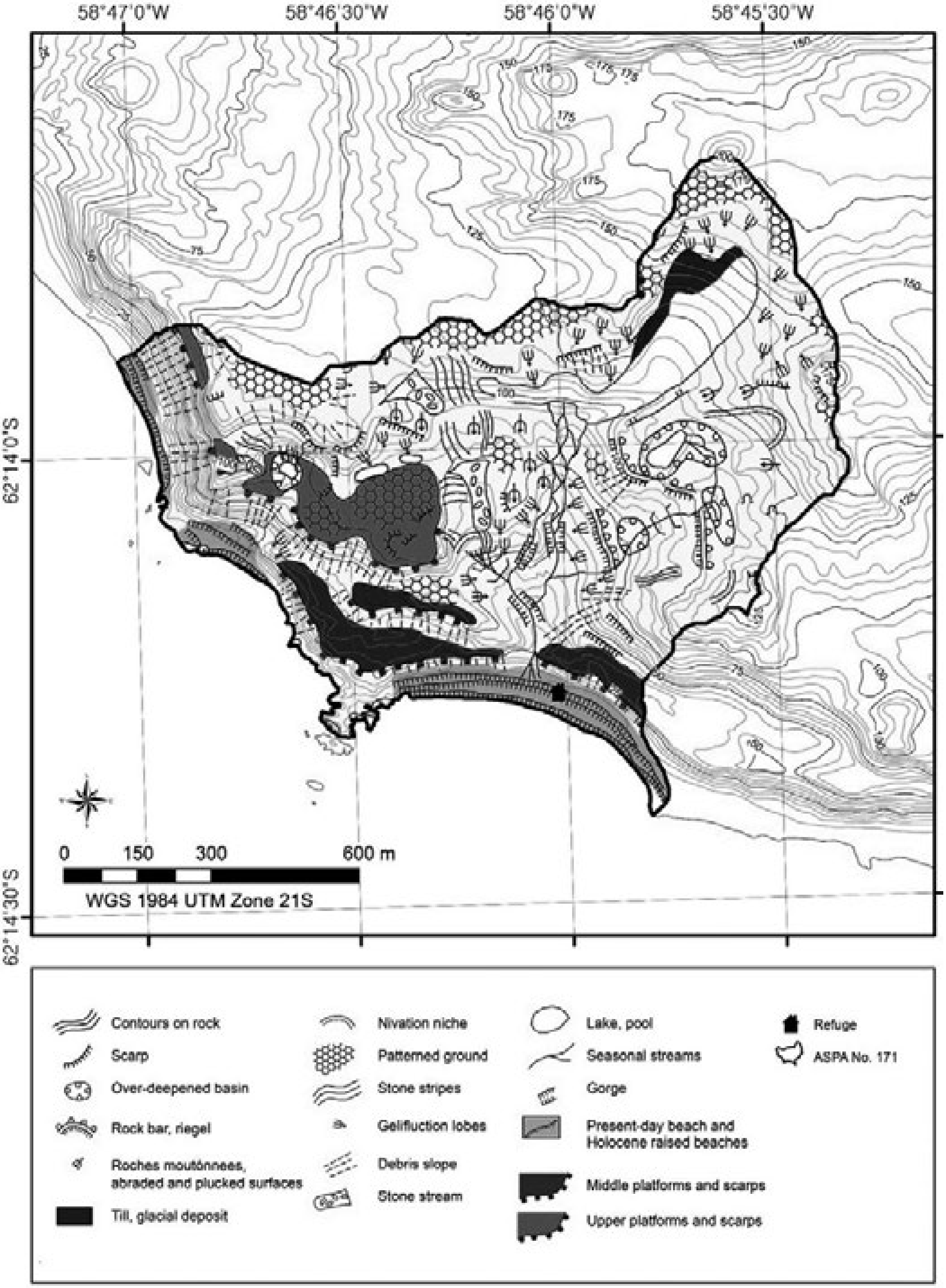
Map 3. Distribution of bird colonies and seal haul-out sites within the ASPA No. 171



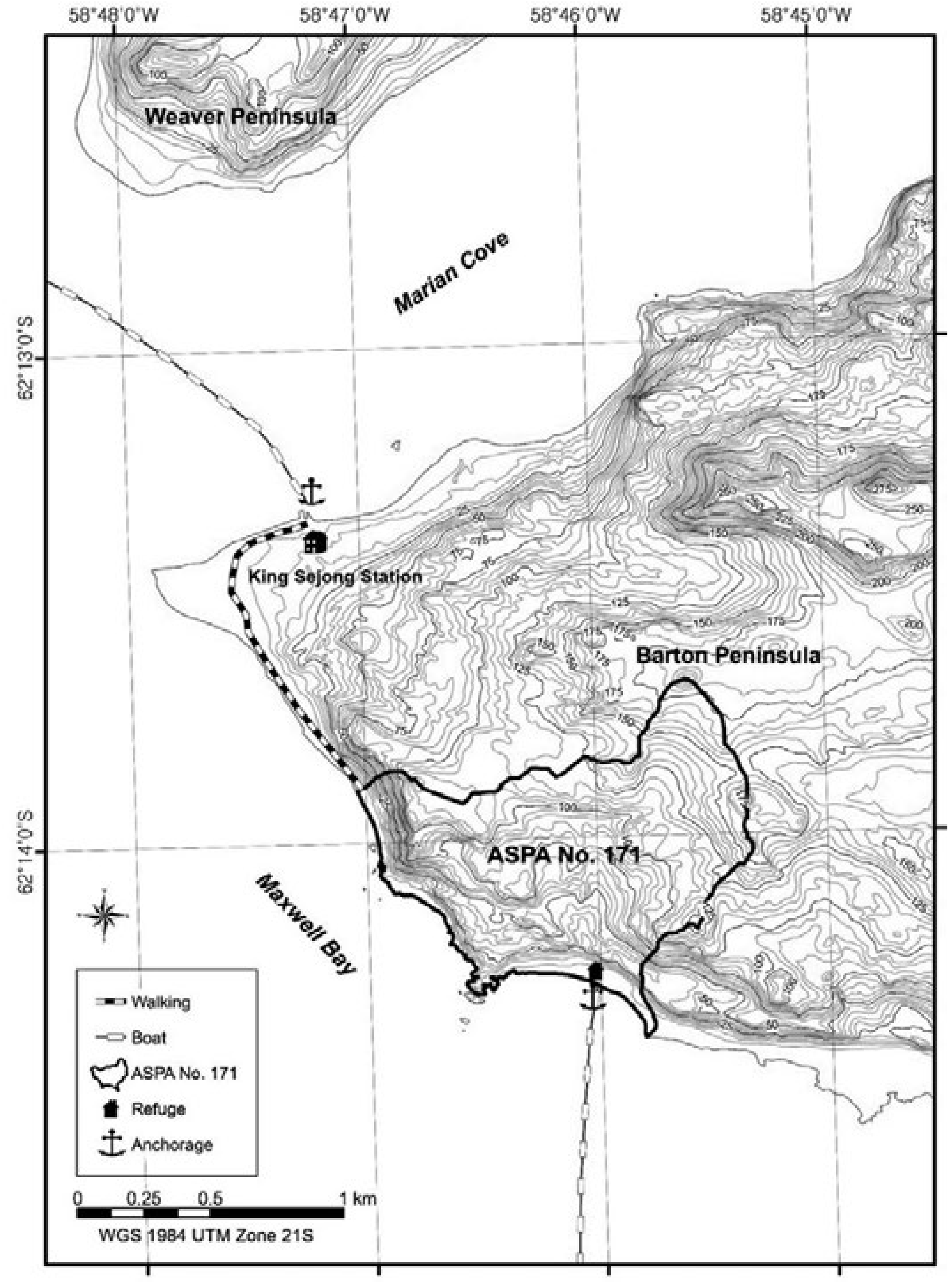
Map 4. Distribution of plant communities in the ASPA No. 171



Map 5. Geomorphologic details of the ASPA No. 171



Map 6. Access routes to the ASPA No. 171



Measure 9 (2019)

Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 173 (Cape Washington and Silverfish Bay, Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea): Revised Management Plan

The Representatives,

Recalling Articles 3, 5 and 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty providing for the designation of Antarctic Specially Protected Areas ("ASPA") and approval of Management Plans for those Areas;

Recalling Measure 17 (2013), which designated Cape Washington and Silverfish Bay, Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea as ASPA 173 and adopted a Management Plan for the Area;

Noting that the Committee for Environmental Protection ("CEP") has endorsed a revised Management Plan for ASPA 173;

Noting further the approval of the Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources ("CCAMLR"), at its thirty-first meeting, of the draft Management Plan for a new ASPA at Cape Washington and Silverfish Bay, Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea;

Desiring to replace the existing Management Plan for ASPA 173 with the revised Management Plan;

Recommend to their Governments the following Measure for approval in accordance with paragraph 1 of Article 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty:

That:

1. the revised Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 173 (Cape Washington and Silverfish Bay, Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea), which is annexed to this Measure, be approved; and
2. the Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No 173 annexed to Measure 17 (2013) be revoked.

Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area (ASPA) No. 173

CAPE WASHINGTON AND SILVERFISH BAY, TERRA NOVA BAY, ROSS SEA

Introduction

Cape Washington and Silverfish Bay are located in northern Terra Nova Bay, Victoria Land, Ross Sea. Approximate area and coordinates: 286 km^2 (centered at 164° 57.6' E, 74° 37.1' S), of which 279.5 km^2 is marine (98 %) and 6.5 km^2 is terrestrial (2 %). The primary reasons for designation of the Area are the outstanding ecological and scientific values. One of the largest emperor penguin (*Aptenodytes forsteri*) colonies in Antarctica breeds on sea ice adjacent to Cape Washington, with around 20,000 breeding pairs comprising approximately eight percent of the global emperor population and ~21% of the population in the Ross Sea. Several factors, such as location, ice conditions, weather and accessibility provide relatively consistent and stable opportunities to observe emperor chick fledging reliably and the presence of a variety of other species make it an ideal place to study ecosystem interactions. The extended record of observations of the emperor colony at Cape Washington is of important scientific value. Approximately 20 km west of Cape Washington, the first documented 'nursery' and hatching area for Antarctic silverfish (*Pleuragramma antarctica*) is located at Silverfish Bay. Recent research has shown that the concentration of spawning on occasions extends all the way across the embayment to Cape Washington. The first ground-breaking studies on the life-history of this species have been made at the site, and its relative accessibility to nearby research stations make the Area important for biological research. The Area also has important geoscientific values, as it features extensive volcanic rock exposures originating from the nearby active volcano Mount Melbourne.

The Area was originally designated though Measure 17 (2013) after approval under the Convention on the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources (CCAMLR). The Area requires long-term special protection because of the outstanding ecological and scientific values and the potential vulnerability of the Area to disturbance from scientific, logistic and tourist activities in the region.

Antarctic Important Bird Area No. 176 Cape Washington is identified within the Area. The Area is situated in Environment U – North Victoria Land Geologic based on the Environmental Domains Analysis for Antarctica (Resolution 3 (2008)) and in Region 8 – Northern Victoria Land based on the Antarctic Conservation Biogeographic Regions classification (Resolution 3 (2017)).

1. Description of values to be protected

The Area at northern Terra Nova Bay comprising Cape Washington and Silverfish Bay (Map 1) was proposed by Italy and the United States on the grounds that it contains one of the largest emperor penguin (*Aptenodytes forsteri*) colonies known, and the colony and its associated ecosystem is the subject of on-going scientific studies that began in 1986. Recently, large quantities of eggs of the Antarctic silverfish (*Pleuragramma antarctica*) were discovered under sea ice in northern Terra Nova Bay, making it the first documented 'nursery' and hatching area for this species. This discovery has greatly expanded understanding of the life-history of this species, and the proximity of the site to nearby scientific stations makes it of outstanding scientific value for continuing study. The site of the original Antarctic silverfish egg discovery was named Silverfish Bay (Map 2), and more recent research has revealed the rich concentration of *P. antarctica* eggs found there extends in some years across the embayment towards Cape Washington. The total area is 286 km^2, of which the marine component is ~279.5 km^2 (98 %) and the terrestrial component is 6.5 km^2 (2 %).

The Cape Washington emperor colony, usually centered around one kilometer northwest of the cape (at 165°22' E, 74°38.8' S), was the largest known in Antarctica in the 1993 and 1994 seasons, with counts of around 24,000 chicks being slightly greater than that of nearby Coulman Island at the time. In other years for which counts are available the Coulman Island colony was the slightly larger of the two. The colony appears to maintain a reasonably stable population, with ~17,000 chicks being counted in 2010. This relative stability makes the colony particularly suited to scientific study and monitoring, since long-term trends may be more readily studied and detected. Moreover, a relatively long time-series of scientific data exists for the Cape Washington emperor colony. Because of the location, ice conditions, weather and accessibility, Cape Washington is one of only two Ross Sea colonies where October through December studies can be conducted and emperor chick fledging can be observed reliably. All of these qualities make the Cape Washington emperor colony of outstanding ecological and scientific value.

The Area at Cape Washington and Silverfish Bay is also of considerable scientific interest because of the variety of other species that frequent the Area, making it an ideal location to study ecosystem interactions. Cape Washington itself is a nesting area for south polar skuas (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) and snow petrels (*Pagodroma nivea*). Adélie penguins (*Pygoscelis adeliae*) are present in the emperor colony and on the sea-ice edge daily from November to mid-January. Large groups of killer whales (*Orcinus orca*), both B_1 and C type, and Antarctic minke whales (*Balaenoptera bonaerensis*) are regularly present and/or forage in the area, as well as Weddell (*Leptonychotes weddellii*) and leopard (*Hydrurga leptonyx*) seals. The embayment is an important haul-out and breeding area for Weddell seals, with several hundred typically congregating along sea ice leads and near Markham Island throughout the season. Crabeater seals (*Lobodon carcinophagus*) and Arnoux's beaked whales (*Berardius arnuxii*) are occasionally seen at the sea ice edge in the region. Cape Washington is the only place known where the interaction between leopard seals and emperor penguins can be so reliably observed.

The Area has exceptional value for observations of the interactions and predator / prey relationships between many different members of the marine ecosystem within a relatively compact area that is accessible to scientists supported by nearby research stations.

The boundaries of the Area are defined taking an integrated approach to inclusion of all components of the local ecosystem.

The Area has considerable geoscientific value because it features extensive volcanic rock exposures related to the nearby active volcano Mount Melbourne. The Area serves as a key marker region for evaluating the young, neotectonic evolution of the western Ross Sea. It borders the deepest waters of the Ross Sea and includes Markham Island, a volcanic outcrop that is located over a negative magnetic anomaly, the origin of which is not yet known.

Cape Washington is relatively accessible by sea-ice, sea and air from nearby research stations in Terra Nova Bay. Aircraft activity in the region is frequent throughout the summer season, with fixed-wing aircraft operating from the sea ice runway in Gerlache Inlet (Map 2), and helicopter movements within the region around Mount Melbourne on a regular basis.

The Area requires long-term special protection because of the outstanding ecological and scientific values and the potential vulnerability of the Area to disturbance from scientific, logistic and tourist activities in the region.

2. Aims and objectives

Management at Cape Washington and Silverfish Bay aims to:

- avoid degradation of, or substantial risk to, the values of the Area by preventing unnecessary human disturbance to the Area;
- allow scientific research on the ecosystem, in particular on the emperor penguins and ecosystem interactions, while ensuring protection from oversampling or other possible scientific impacts;
- allow other scientific research, scientific support activities and visits for educational and outreach purposes (such as documentary reporting (visual, audio or written) or the production of educational resources or services) provided that such activities are for compelling reasons that cannot be served elsewhere and that will not jeopardise the natural ecological system in that Area;
- prevent or minimize the introduction of alien plants, animals and microbes into the Area;
- minimise the possibility of the introduction of pathogens that may cause disease in faunal populations within the Area;
- allow visits for management purposes in support of the aims of the management plan.

3. Management activities

The following management activities shall be undertaken to protect the values of the Area:

- Signs showing the location of the Area (stating the special restrictions that apply) shall be displayed prominently, and a copy of this Management Plan shall be kept available, at all scientific stations located within 75 km of the Area;
- Copies of this Management Plan shall be made available to all vessels and aircraft visiting the Area and/or operating in the vicinity of the adjacent stations, and all pilots and ship captains operating in the region shall be informed of the location, boundaries and restrictions applying to entry and overflight within the Area;
- National programs shall take steps to ensure the boundaries of the Area and The restrictions that apply within are marked on relevant maps and nautical / aeronautical charts;
- Markers, signs or structures erected within the Area for scientific or management purposes shall be secured and maintained in good condition, and removed when no longer required;
- Any abandoned equipment or materials shall be removed to the maximum Extent possible provided doing so does not adversely impact on the environment and the values of the Area;
- Visits shall be made as necessary (no less than once every five years) to assess whether the Area continues to serve the purposes for which it was designated and to ensure management and maintenance measures are adequate;
- National Antarctic Programs operating in the region shall consult together with a view to ensuring that the above provisions are implemented.

4. Period of designation

Designated for an indefinite period.

5. Maps and photographs

Map 1: ASPA No. 173: Cape Washington and Silverfish Bay – Regional map.
Projection: Lambert Conformal Conic; Standard parallels: 1st 74° 20' S; 2nd 75° 20' S; Central Meridian: 164° 00' E; Latitude of Origin: 74° 00' S; Spheroid and horizontal datum: WGS84; Contour interval 200 m; Bathymetry 200 m at coast, then 500 m interval.
Inset: Location of Terra Nova Bay in the Ross Sea region.

Map 2: ASPA No. 173: Cape Washington and Silverfish Bay – topographic map.
Projection: Lambert Conformal Conic; Standard parallels: 1st 74° 35' S; 2nd 74° 45' S; Central Meridian: 164° 42' E; Latitude of Origin: 74° 00' S;

Spheroid and horizontal datum: WGS84; Contour interval 200 m; Bathymetry 100 m interval.

Map 3: ASPA No. 173: Cape Washington and Silverfish Bay – Access Guidance. Map details as per Map 2.

Map 4: ASPA No. 173: Cape Washington and Silverfish Bay – Restricted Zone. Map details as per Map 2 except Central Meridian: 165° 20' E. Satellite image Ikonos acquired 30 Dec 2011, © GeoEye (2011).

6. Description of the Area

6(i) Geographical coordinates, boundary markers and natural features

- *General description*

Cape Washington is situated in northern Terra Nova Bay, 40 km east of Mario Zucchelli Station (Italy) (Map 1). The Area is 286 km^2, of which the marine component is 279.5 km^2 (98 %) and the terrestrial component is 6.5 km^2 (2 %).

Sea ice persists in Silverfish Bay and across Closs Bay to Cape Washington from March until January, providing a stable and reliable platform on which the emperors can breed and suitable conditions for the silverfish 'nursery'. The Cape Washington peninsula provides shelter to the emperor colony, which is relatively protected from the strong katabatic winds that descend into other parts of Terra Nova Bay. The eastern coast of the Cape Washington peninsula comprises precipitous cliffs of several hundred meters in height, while the west side comprises more gentle mixed snow and ice-free slopes with some rocky outcrops extending down to sea level. Closs Bay extends uninterrupted across to the Campbell Glacier Tongue, punctuated by the solitary and small Markham Island close to Oscar Point (Map 2).

- *Boundaries and coordinates*

The eastern boundary of the Area at the NE corner extends from the coordinates 165° 27' E, 74° 37' S on the eastern coast of the Cape Washington peninsula due south for ~5.6 km to 165° 27' E, 74° 40' S (Map 2). The boundary thence extends due west across Closs Bay on latitude 74° 40' S for ~26.8 km to the Campbell Glacier Tongue. It then follows the eastern margin of the Campbell Glacier Tongue for ~11.2 km northwards to the coast at Shield Nunatak. The boundary thence follows the coastline eastwards, around the Vacchi Piedmont Glacier, to the western coast of the Cape Washington peninsula, ~23 km in a straight-line from Shield Nunatak. The boundary thence follows the coastline southward ~7.5 km towards the first prominent rock outcrop at latitude 74° 37.03' S on the western coast of the Cape Washington peninsula. The boundary extends eastwards from this coast along the line of latitude 74° 37' S ~ 2.8 km to the NE corner boundary point located on the eastern coast of the Cape Washington peninsula.

- *Climate*

Four meteorological stations are located in Terra Nova Bay, of which ‘Eneide’, located at Mario Zucchelli Station (164° 05.533' E, 74° 41.750' S) and ~ 25 km from the center of the Area, has the longest time series of data. The mean annual air temperature at Mario Zucchelli Station was -13.8º C during the period 1987 – 2018, with the coldest month being July with an average minimum temperature of -22.6º C and the warmest months are January and December with an average maximum temperature between -0.7 and -0.9º C. The mean annual wind speed at Mario Zucchelli Station was 6.20 m/s (22.3 km/h; 1987 –2018) with an average maximum of 13 m/s (47.0 km/h) in June and an average minimum of 4.4 m/s (15.8 km/h) in December and January.

The strongest mean annual wind speed in the Terra Nova Bay area has been recorded near Inexpressible Island, measured at 12.3 m/s (44.3 km/h) between Feb 1988 – 1989 (Bromwich *et al.* 1993). This is significantly stronger than ordinary katabatic winds (< 10 m/s), as local topographic features channel the air into the ‘confluence zones’ of the Reeves and the Priestley glaciers (Bromwich *et al.* 1993). These offshore katabatic winds play a significant role in the formation of the Terra Nova Bay polynya.

- *Oceanography*

Terra Nova Bay is a deep basin that reaches a maximum depth of ~1100 m, which is the deepest water in the Ross Sea (Buffoni *et al.* 2002) (Map 1). Ocean circulation in the bay is characterized in summer by a prevailing northward movement in the upper layer, parallel to the coast, and a clockwise rotation with depth (Vacchi *et al.* 2012b). Warmer and more saline waters are observed near the coast, while cooler waters are found in the central part of the bay, and local eddies and upwelling processes are strongly influenced by katabatic winds (Budillon & Spezie 2000; Buffoni *et al.* 2002).

A perennial winter polynya forms in the bay through a combination of persistent katabatic winds driving newly formed ice offshore and the Drygalski Ice Tongue acting as a barrier to the northward drift of pack ice (Bromwich & Kurtz 1984; Van Woert 1999) (Map 1). The polynya generally forms with a maximum east-west extent that appears to be closely related to the length of the Drygalski Ice Tongue (Kurtz & Bromwich 1983). The polynya has been observed to cover a mean area of roughly 1300 km^2 (65 km N/S by 20 km E/W), although in some years it may not exist at all, while in others it can reach a maximum of ~ 5000 km^2 (65 km N/S by 75 km E/W) (Kurtz & Bromwich 1983).

This polynya plays an important role in the formation of High Salinity Shelf Waters (HSSW) in Terra Nova Bay (Buffoni *et al* 2002). The brine rejected during the ice formation process increases the salt content and density of the water, which consequently causes a thermohaline circulation and convective movements. The

HSSW found in this area have the highest salinity content in Antarctica reaching up to 34.87 and a potential temperature near the sea surface freezing point of -1.9 ºC.

- *Marine biology*

The silverfish (*Pleuragramma antarctica*) is the dominant pelagic fish (of both the abundance and biomass of Ross Sea midwater fish fauna) in waters of the continental shelf in the Ross Sea and is considered a keystone species providing one of the major links between lower and higher trophic levels (Bottaro *et al.* 2009; La Mesa *et al.* 2004; La Mesa *et al.* 2010; O'Driscoll *et al.* 2011; Vacchi *et al.* 2012). Silverfish represent the primary food item for most marine vertebrates, such as baleen whale, birds, and other fishes (La Mesa *et al.* 2004), and are the primary fish prey for both emperor penguins and Weddell seals (Burns & Kooyman 2001).

Until a few decades ago little was known of the early life history of silverfish (Guglielmo *et al.* 1998; Vacchi *et al.* 2004). Marine surveys in Terra Nova Bay in the late 1980s yielded samples that suggested the northern part of the bay may represent a nursery ground for early stages of *P. antarctica* (Guglielmo *et al.* 1998). From late October to early December 2002 large quantities of embryonated eggs of *P. antarctica* were found floating among platelet ice under sea ice in northern Terra Nova Bay (Vacchi *et al.* 2004). This was the first documented nursery and hatching area of the Antarctic silverfish. In 2014, Italy and Korea conducted collaborative research on the ecology of Antarctic silverfish, which extended towards winter. Eggs were collected in the nursery as early as September, allowing observation and description of early embryonic development (Ghigliotti et al. 2015).

Research conducted over subsequent years showed higher egg concentrations were consistently found within the embayment east of the Campbell Glacier Tongue (which led to naming this area Silverfish Bay), with greatest abundances in areas where the sea was at least 300 m in depth. Since 2005, regular late spring – early summer monitoring of the Antarctic silverfish nursery has been undertaken, revealing annual fluctuations (significant at the site scale) in the distribution patterns of eggs, possibly related to differences in the processes of sea ice formation and local hydrodynamic conditions and winds (Guidetti et al. 2015). This and other research has indicated that habitats with particular combinations of geographic and oceanographic features and conditions (e.g. close ice shelf or glacier tongues, canyons, water mass stratification, polynyas, katabatic winds, and sea ice cover) are favorable for the early life history of the silverfish (Vacchi *et al.* 2012b, Ghigliotti *et al.*, 2017). The spatial segregation of Antarctic silverfish eggs in the platelet ice makes this under-ice environment an essential habitat for this specific ecophase, and more research is needed on its biotic and abiotic characteristics (Koubbi et al. 2017). Specific molecular and functional adaptation mechanisms, possibly evolved in response to specific environmental conditions typical of the platelet ice, have been detected in the early life stages of Antarctic silverfish. For instance, a marked responsiveness of antioxidant defences has been described as a means to survive the extreme pro-oxidant conditions of platelet ice at the beginning of austral spring (Regoli *et al.* 2005). This feature also influences the susceptibility of this species toward pro-oxidant chemicals of anthropogenic origin (Regoli *et al.* 2005, Giuliani *et al*. 2017).

The Antarctic toothfish (*Dissostichus mawsoni*) is a unique piscine high trophic level predator. In a recent CCAMLR longline sub-adult survey in the Ross Sea, sampling stations were included in vicinity of the Area. The high catch rate at those stations, dominated by 8-10 year old fish, suggested the relevance of this area for slightly older sub-adult toothfish that would deserve regular monitoring (Hanchet *et al*., 2015). Opportunistic observations in Silverfish Bay, carried out through marine acoustics and visual methods, also supported the presence of Antarctic toothfish in the area, specifically large adult specimens under the sea-ice cover (O'Driscoll et al. 2018; Ghigliotti et al. 2018; Di Blasi et al. 2018).

- *Birds*

The emperor penguin colony at Cape Washington is one of the two largest known; the other is the Coulman Island colony 200 km to the north. While in some years the Cape Washington population has exceeded that at Coulman Island, available data suggests that usually the latter is the slightly larger of the two (Barber-Meyer *et al.* 2008). The population generally ranges between approximately 13,000 and 25,000 breeding pairs (Table 1; Barber-Meyer *et al.* 2008). The most recent count available, made on 31 October 2018 from an aerial survey, indicated approximately 14,000 breeding pairs were present (M. La Rue pers. comm. 2019). Data from earlier years indicate that live chick numbers have consistently remained around these levels since studies were initiated in 1986 (Kooyman *et al.* 1990).

Table 1. Cape Washington emperor penguin population from 2000 and 2018.

Year	**Live chick count** [1]	**Estimated breeding pairs (approx.)**
2000	17397	20000
2001	18734	20000
2002	11093	13000
2003	13163	15000
2004	16700	20000
2005	23021	25000
2010	17000 [2]	20000
2018	12178	14000

1. Barber-Meyer *et al.* 2008.
2. Kooyman pers. comm. 2012, Kooyman & Ponganis 2017.
3. M. La Rue pers. comm. 2019.

The emperor penguin colony breeds on sea ice that extends from Cape Washington to the Campbell Glacier Tongue in the northern part of Terra Nova Bay. Sea ice formation begins in March and the bay is generally covered by sea ice until ice break-up around mid-January. The Terra Nova Bay polynya generally offers the colony access to open sea throughout the breeding cycle.

The sea ice in the vicinity of the emperor breeding site may be covered with up to 25 cm of snow near the ice edge, with up to about 1 m of snow accumulating on the SW shoreline of the Cape Washington peninsula (Kooyman *et al.* 1990). This area is relatively sheltered from both SW and NW winds. The locality has been observed to enjoy relatively cloud-free conditions from October to January, resulting in elevated levels of direct solar irradiance. This causes the dirty guano-covered snow and ice to soften and melt, forming pools that are difficult or impossible for penguins, and humans, to walk through. As a result, the birds need to shift their breeding sites regularly throughout the summer period. The incubating birds generally cluster adjacent to the SW coast of Cape Washington until September, before spreading away from the Cape in an expanding semi-circle.

The center of the incubation area in 1996 was approximately 165°22.0' E, 74°38.8' S. Observations in 1986-87 found the colony dispersed into several groups by the end of October, each containing 1000 to 2000 chicks with attendant adults (Kooyman *et al.* 1990). From the Cape northward along the western coast of the peninsula, there was found to be a gradient in chick development, with the largest chicks in groups closest to the ice-edge near the Cape. By the time of fledging some groups of chicks had moved 5 to 6 km away from the original breeding locality. In 1986-87 fledging occurred abruptly over a ten-day period at the end of December and the beginning of January.

There is evidence that the Cape Washington colony is comparatively stable in population and that it appears to enjoy relatively high levels of breeding success, averaging almost 95% of chicks successfully fledged over a six-year study period (Barber-Mayer *et al.* 2008). This compares with breeding successes of only around 60-70 % at the Point Géologie, Taylor Glacier and Auster colonies in the East Antarctic. The Cape Washington colony is particularly valuable for scientific study because of its comparative low variability in breeding success, which may be in part a function of its large size, with smaller colonies exhibiting greater population fluctuations (Barber-Mayer *et al.* 2008). Moreover, the colony is relatively accessible to nearby scientific stations, making research more practical.

A south polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) colony comprising approximately 50 pairs is located on the ice-free slopes of Cape Washington, overlooking the emperor colony. Snow petrels (*Pagodroma nivea*) have been recorded as breeding in niches in the Cape Washington cliffs (Greenfield & Smellie 1992), feeding along the ice edge, and have been noted as the most abundant flying bird in the vicinity over the summer months (Kooyman *et al.* 1990). Adélie penguins (*Pygoscelis adeliae*) are observed along the ice edge and within the emperor colony during summer months, while Wilson's storm petrels (*Oceanites oceanicus*) are frequently observed along the ice edge from mid- to late-November. Southern giant petrels (*Macronectes giganteus*) have been observed overflying and landing within the Area (Kooyman *et al.* 1990).

- *Mammals (whales, seals)*

Minke whales (Balaenoptera bonaerensis), Arnoux's beaked whale (Beradius arnuxii) and both B1 and C Killer whale forms are common in Terra Nova Bay (Kooyman et al. 1990; Lauriano et al. 2010). Arnoux's beaked whales and minke whales are seasonally present, taking advantage of the highly productive waters and associated prey that becomes available as the ice breaks up. Higher cetacean encounter rates were observed in the region between Edmonson Point and the Campbell Glacier Tongue than in the region south from Mario Zucchelli Station onwards (Lauriano et al. 2010). The B1 type killer whale feeds on mammals and commonly occurs along the ice shelf in the austral summer to take advantage of both the seals and Adélie penguin colonies in the area (Andrews et al., 2008; Lauriano et al., 2007). The C type killer whale (or Ross Sea Killer Whale - RSKW) feeds on fish, and is observed in the area between Campbell Ice Tongue and Cape Washington. A satellite telemetry study revealed deep dives (up to 300 m) and Area of Restricted Search (ARS) behaviours in Closs Bay compared to the transit behaviour outside of this area (Lauriano & Panigada, 2015a,b; Lauriano *et al*. submitted). These data emphasise the role of the Area as a feeding ground for this dwarf killer whale form. Moreover, resightings between 2004 and 2015 highlight a site fidelity and confirm the value of the Area. Stable isotope analysis indicates Antarctic toothfish (Dissostichus mawsoni) as the main component of the diet of the biopsied animals (Lauriano *et al*. submitted).

Three species of seal – Weddell (*Leptonychotes weddellii*), leopard (*Hydrurga leptonyx*) and crabeater (*Lobodon carcinophagus*) – are common in the Area. The embayment is an important haul-out and breeding area for Weddell seals, which typically congregate along sea ice leads and openings that dynamically form throughout the season. At least 200 Weddell seals were recorded in the bay west of Cape Washington in 1986-87, with 31 pups counted near Markham Island (Kooyman *et al.* 1990), and a similar number of adults was counted in the same region from satellite imagery acquired in November 2011 (La Rue pers. comm. 2012).

Leopard seals (*Hydrurga leptonyx*) were recorded within the Area from mid-November through December in 1986-87, and were observed to prey on emperor penguins around the ice edge. Kooyman *et al.* (1990) estimated that the three individuals they monitored over this period would have taken approximately 150 – 200 adult birds, or about 0.5 % of breeding emperor adults at the colony. Crabeater seals were recorded on occasion at the ice edge or on nearby ice flows in the same season (Kooyman *et al.* 1990).

- *Human activities / impacts*

Three permanent scientific stations are located at nearby Gerlache Inlet and one is under construction on Inexpressible Island. Mario Zucchelli (164° 06.917' E, 74° 41.650' S; Italy), established in 1987, operates summer only with a complement of about 90 personnel. Gondwana (164° 13.317' E, 74° 38.133' S; Germany), established in 1983, operates on occasional summers with capacity for approximately 25 personnel. Jang Bogo station (164° 11.950' E, 74° 37.250' S; Republic of Korea) has been operational since February 2014 and carries a complement of ~20 winter personnel and up to 60 in summer. China is currently establishing a new station on nearby Inexpressible Island at 163° 42.5' E, 74° 56.15' S, which will operate year-round with a complement of up to ~30 winter and ~80 summer personnel (CAA 2018).

A gravel airstrip is under construction in the Northern Foothills, approximately six km south of Mario Zucchelli Station and around 40 km from the Area. The airstrip will be capable of receiving large 4-engined wheeled aircraft, although all aircraft operating in the vicinity will be subject to the minimum flying heights specified in this Management Plan when overflying the Area.

The Cape Washington emperor colony has been of interest for tourism for around 20 years, with an average of ~200 tourists visiting Cape Washington per annum over the last decade. The colony has also been of interest for recreational visits by station personnel from nearby Mario Zucchelli Station prior to the designation of the Area. An area frequented by emperor penguins lies immediately south of the southern boundary of the Area at 74° 40' S (Maps 3 & 4). This region lies within the approximate 6 km buffer from the nominal centroid of the breeding colony within which the birds have been consistently observed when sea ice is present. This region outside of the protected area allows continued opportunities for tourism or recreational visits to view emperor penguins in the Cape Washington vicinity, and other opportunities exist at colonies elsewhere in the Ross Sea and Antarctica more generally.

6(ii) Access to the Area

The Area may be accessed by traversing over land or sea ice, by sea or by air. Particular access routes have not been designated over land or sea ice or for vessels entering the Area by sea. Access to Cape Washington by helicopter should follow the designated access route over the northern part of the Cape Washington peninsula. Overflight, aircraft landing and ship access restrictions apply within the Area, the specific conditions for which are set out in Section 7(ii) below.

6(iii) Location of structures within and adjacent to the Area

There are no structures within the Area. Several geodetic reference markers have been established by the Italian Antarctic program at Markham Island and at Cape Washington on ice-free ground, and these are the only known permanent markers in the Area. Mario Zucchelli Station (164° 06.917' E, 74° 41.650' S; Italy) is situated ~13 km southwest of the western boundary of the Area on the southern shore of Gerlache Inlet (Map 2). Gondwana Station (164° 13.317' E, 74° 38.133' S; Germany) is located 8.7 km west of the western boundary of the Area, also in Gerlache Inlet and 7.2 km north of Mario Zucchelli Station. Jang Bogo Station (164° 11.95' E, 74° 37.25' S; South Korea) is located ~9 km west of the western boundary of the Area, ~1.8 km NW of Gondwana Station. A new station is being constructed by China on

Inexpressible Island at 163° 42.5' E, 74° 56.15' S, ~40 km southwest of the southern boundary of the Area, which is expected to be operational around 2021/22 (CAA 2018). A number of structures associated with national program operations are located nearby, such as a communications facility near the summit of Mount Melbourne, several radar and non-directional beacons to assist summer air operations, and Italy is constructing a new gravel airstrip in the Northern Foothills, although these are all outside of the Area.

6(iv) Location of other protected areas in the vicinity

The nearest protected areas to Cape Washington are the high altitude geothermal sites on Mount Melbourne (ASPA No.175) 23 km north of the northern boundary of the Area, Edmonson Point (ASPA No.165) 24 km north of the northern boundary of the Area, and Terra Nova Bay (ASPA No.161) 13 km from the western boundary of the Area.

6(v) Special zones within the Area

This Management Plan establishes a Restricted Zone within the Area which applies during the period from 01 April through to 01 January inclusive.

- *Restricted Zone*

The Restricted Zone is designated east of the line of longitude 165° 10’ E and south of the line of latitude 74° 35.5’ S (Map 3), which encompasses the primary emperor breeding area and is considered the most ecologically sensitive part of the Area. The Restricted Zone has an area of 62.5 km^2. Access to the Restricted Zone should be for compelling reasons that cannot be served elsewhere within the Area and detailed conditions for access are described in Section 7(ii) below.

7. Terms and conditions for entry permits

7(i) General permit conditions

Entry into the Area is prohibited except in accordance with a permit issued by an appropriate national authority. Conditions for issuing a permit to enter the Area are that:

- it is issued only for scientific study of the ecosystem, or for compelling scientific or educational (such as documentary reporting or the production of educational resources or services) reasons that cannot be served elsewhere, or for reasons essential to the management of the Area;
- the actions permitted are in accordance with this Management Plan;
- the activities permitted will give due consideration via the environmental impact assessment process to the continued protection of the environmental, ecological and scientific values of the Area;

- access to the Restricted Zone is allowed only for compelling reasons that cannot be served elsewhere within the Area;
- the permit shall be issued for a finite period;
- the permit, or a copy, shall be carried when in the Area.

7(ii) Access to, and movement within or over, the Area

Access into the Area is permitted on foot or by vehicle, by ship or small boat, or by fixed-wing or rotor-wing aircraft.

- *Access on foot or by vehicle*

No special access routes are designated for access to the Area on foot or by vehicle over sea ice or by land. Vehicles may be used over sea ice and glaciers although are prohibited from ice-free ground within the Area. Pedestrian and vehicular traffic should be kept to the minimum necessary consistent with the objectives of any permitted activities and every reasonable effort should be made to minimize disturbance. Vehicle use should be avoided within 100 m of concentrations of emperor penguins or Weddell seals, and permitted visitors should avoid entering penguin sub-groups or approaching seals except as required for essential scientific, educational or management purposes.

- *Access and overflight by piloted aircraft and Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS)*

Resolution 2 (2004), the Guidelines for the Operation of Aircraft near Concentrations of Birds in Antarctica, should be followed at all times. Restrictions on aircraft operations apply during the period from 01 April through to 01 January inclusive, when aircraft shall operate and land within the Area according to strict observance of the following conditions:

- Overflight below 2000 ft (610 m) and landings within the Area by piloted aircraft, including by helicopters, are prohibited except in accordance with a permit issued by an appropriate national authority;
- Piloted aircraft landings on sea ice within ½ nautical mile (~930 m) of the emperor colony are prohibited. Pilots should note that the emperor colony may move throughout the breeding season up to six kilometers from the nominal center coordinate of the colony at 165°22' E, 74°38.8' S (Map 3), and the colony may break up into a number of smaller units within the Area;
- Piloted aircraft landings on sea ice within ½ nautical mile (~930 m) of concentrations of Weddell seals are prohibited. Pilots should note that Weddell seals may be present throughout the Area, although tend to congregate along sea ice leads and around Markham Island (Map 3). In the context of management of the Area, a concentration is defined as five or more animals within 300 m of each other;
- Pilots shall ensure piloted aircraft maintain the minimum separation distance

from any part of the emperor colony and / or any concentration of seals when operating over sea ice at all times, excepting when this is impractical because the animals have voluntarily moved closer to the aircraft after it has landed;

- Pilots making authorized landings beyond ½ nautical mile (~930 m) of the emperor colony and / or concentrations of seals may select landing sites according to visit needs, local conditions and safety considerations. Pilots of piloted aircraft should make a reconnaissance of suitable landing sites from above 2000 feet (~610 m) before descending to land;
- Landings by helicopter may be made on land within the Restricted Zone at Cape Washington. The preferred helicopter approach route to the Cape is from the north over the Cape Washington peninsula, avoiding overflight of the emperor colony, breeding skua territories situated immediately west of the access route, and seabird breeding sites along the cliffs of the Cape Washington peninsula (Map 3). Pilots flying to the Cape should follow the designated approach route to the maximum extent practicable and abort the journey should it be likely that conditions would force a route that might lead to overflight of the emperor colony;
- Approaches by fixed wing aircraft to sea ice landing sites in Terra Nova Bay adjacent to Mario Zucchelli Station (Italy) (Map 2) should maintain designated approach paths and elevations as defined in the most recent edition of the Antarctic Flight Information Manual (COMNAP 2019). Should visibility or other conditions be prohibitive of maintaining these paths and / or elevations, pilots should ensure that alternative approaches adopted avoid exceeding the minimum overflight heights that apply within the Restricted Zone.
- Overflight below 2000 ft (610 m) and landings within the Area by Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS) are prohibited except in accordance with a permit issued by an appropriate national authority. RPAS use within the Area should follow the Environmental Guidelines for Operation of Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS) in Antarctica (Resolution 4 (2018)).

- *Access by ship or small boat*

Restrictions on ship and / or small boat operations apply during the period from 01 April through to 01 January inclusive, when ships and / or small boats shall operate within the Area according to strict observance of the following conditions:

- Ships and / or small boats are prohibited from the Area, including entering sea ice within the Area, unless authorized by permit for purposes allowed for by this Management Plan;
- Ships are prohibited within the Restricted Zone;
- There are no special restrictions on where access can be gained to the Area by small boat, although small boat landings should avoid areas where penguins are accessing the sea unless this is necessary for purposes for which the permit was granted.

7(iii) Activities that may be conducted within the Area

- Scientific research that will not jeopardize the values of the Area;
- Essential management activities, including monitoring and inspection;
- Activities for educational or outreach purposes (such as documentary reporting (e.g. visual, audio or written) or the production of educational resources or services) that cannot be served elsewhere.

7(iv) Installation, modification or removal of structures / equipment

- No structures are to be erected within the Area except as specified in a permit and, with the exception of permanent survey markers and signs, permanent structures or installations are prohibited;
- All structures, scientific equipment or markers installed in the Area shall be authorized by permit and clearly identified by country, name of the principal investigator, year of installation and date of expected removal. All such items should be free of organisms, propagules (e.g. seeds, eggs) and non-sterile soil, and be made of materials that can withstand the environmental conditions and pose minimal risk of contamination of the Area;
- Installation (including site selection), maintenance, modification or removal of structures or equipment shall be undertaken in a manner that minimizes disturbance to the values of the Area;
- Removal of specific structures / equipment for which the permit has expired shall be the responsibility of the authority which granted the original permit, and shall be a condition of the permit.

7(v) Location of field camps

Permanent field camps are prohibited within the Area. Temporary camp sites are permitted within the Area. There are no specific restrictions on the precise locality for temporary camp sites within the Area, although it is recommended that initial sites selected should be more than 1000 m from concentrations of breeding emperor penguins. It is recognized that the birds move from their original breeding locations throughout the season. As the birds will subsequently set their own distance limits from any camp established, it is not considered necessary to keep moving the camp in response to the shifting positions of the emperor colony. It is recommended that camp sites be located approximately 500 m offshore from the western coast of the Cape Washington peninsula because the near-shore area is subject to snow overburden and subsequent meltwater flooding. Camping within the terrestrial part of the Area is not restricted to a particular location, but where possible camp sites should be located on snow covered ground.

7(vi) Restrictions on materials and organisms that may be brought into the Area

In addition to the requirements of the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, restrictions on materials and organisms that may be brought into the area are:

- deliberate introduction of animals, plant material, micro-organisms and non-sterile soil into the Area is prohibited. Precautions shall be taken to prevent the accidental introduction of animals, plant material, micro-organisms and non-sterile soil from other biologically distinct regions (within or beyond the Antarctic Treaty area).
- Visitors shall ensure that sampling equipment and markers brought into the Area are clean. To the maximum extent practicable, footwear and other equipment used or brought into the area (including backpacks, carry-bags and tents) shall be thoroughly cleaned before entering the Area. Visitors should also consult and follow as appropriate recommendations contained in the Committee for Environmental Protection *Non-native Species Manual* (CEP 2017), and in the *Environmental Code of Conduct for terrestrial scientific field research in Antarctica* (Resolution 5 (2018));
- All poultry brought into the Area shall be managed appropriately to minimize any risk of transmission of diseases and all poultry not consumed or used within the Area, including all parts, products and / or wastes of poultry, shall be removed from the Area or disposed of by incineration or equivalent means that eliminates risks to native flora and fauna;
- No herbicides or pesticides shall be brought into the Area;
- Fuel, food, chemicals, and other materials shall not be stored in the Area, unless specifically authorized by permit and shall be stored and handled in a way that minimises the risk of their accidental introduction into the environment;
- All materials introduced shall be for a stated period only and shall be removed by the end of that stated period; and
- If release occurs which is likely to compromise the values of the Area, removal is encouraged only where the impact of removal is not likely to be greater than that of leaving the material *in situ*.

7(vii) Taking of, or harmful interference with, native flora or fauna

Taking of, or harmful interference with, native flora and fauna is prohibited, except in accordance with a permit issued in accordance with Annex II of the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty.

Where animal taking or harmful interference is involved, this should, as a minimum standard, be in accordance with the SCAR Code of Conduct for the Use of Animals for Scientific Purposes in Antarctica.

7(viii) Collection or removal of anything not brought into the Area by the permit holder

- Material may be collected or removed from the Area only in accordance with a permit and should be limited to the minimum necessary to meet scientific or management needs.
- Material of human origin likely to compromise the values of the Area, and which was not brought into the Area by the permit holder or otherwise authorized, may be removed from the Area, unless the impact of removal is likely to be greater than leaving the material in situ: if this is the case the appropriate authority must be notified and approval obtained.

7(ix) Disposal of waste

All wastes, except human wastes, shall be removed from the Area. Small quantities of human wastes, such as arising from groups of no more than 10 people within a given season, may be disposed of onto annual sea ice or directly into the sea within the Area, or otherwise shall be removed from the Area.

7(x) Measures that may be necessary to continue to meet the aims of the Management Plan

Permits may be granted to enter the Area to:

- carry out monitoring and Area inspection activities, which may involve the collection of a small number of samples or data for analysis or review;
- install or maintain signposts, markers, structures or scientific equipment;
- carry out protective measures.

7(xi) Requirements for reports

- The principal permit holder for each visit to the Area shall submit a report to the appropriate national authority as soon as practicable after the visit has been completed in accordance with national procedures.
- Such reports should include, as appropriate, the information identified in the visit report form contained in the Guide to the Preparation of Management Plans for Antarctic Specially Protected Areas (Resolution 2 (2011)). If appropriate, the national authority should also forward a copy of the visit report to the Party that proposed the Management Plan, to assist in managing the Area and reviewing the Management Plan.
- Parties should, wherever possible, deposit originals or copies of such original visit reports in a publicly accessible archive to maintain a record of usage, for the purpose of any review of the Management Plan and in organising the scientific use of the Area.
- The appropriate authority should be notified of any activities / measures undertaken, and / or of any materials released and not removed, that were not included in the authorized permit.

8. Supporting documentation

Andrews R.D., Pitman R.L. & Balance L.T. 2008. Satellite tracking reveals distinct movement patterns for Type B and Type C killer whales in the southern Ross Sea, Antarctica. *Polar Biology* 31: 1461-68

Barber-Meyer, S.M., Kooyman, G.L. & Ponganis P.J. 2008. Trends in western Ross Sea emperor penguin chick abundances and their relationships to climate. *Antarctic Science* 20 (1): 3-11.

Bottaro, M., Oliveri, D., Ghigliotti, L., Pisano, E., Ferrando, S. & Vacchi, M. 2009. Born among the ice: first morphological observations on two developmental stages of the Antarctic silverfish *Pleuragramma antarcticum*, a key species of the Southern Ocean. *Reviews in Fish Biology & Fisheries* 19: 249-59.

Bromwich, D.H. & Kurtz, D.D. 1984. Katabatic wind forcing of the Terra Nova Bay polynya. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 89 (C3): 3561–72. DOI:10.1029/JC089iC03p03561.

Bromwich, D.H., Parish, T.R., Pellegrini, A., Stearns, C.R & Weidner, G.A. 1993. Spatial and temporal characteristics of the intense katabatic winds at Terra Nova Bay, Antarctica. In D.H. Bromwich & C.R. Stearns (eds) *Antarctic Meteorology and Climatology: Studies Based on Automatic Weather Stations. Antarctic Research Series* 61: 47-68. American Geophysical Union, Washington DC.

Budillon, G.& Spezie, G. 2000. Thermohaline structure and variability in Terra Nova Bay polynya, Ross Sea. *Antarctic Science* 12: 493-508.

Buffoni, G., Cappelletti, A. & Picco, P. 2002. An investigation of thermohaline circulation in Terra Nova Bay polynya. *Antarctic Science* 14 (1): 83-92.

Burns, J.M. & Kooyman, G.L. 2001. Habitat use by Weddell seals and emperor penguins foraging in the Ross Sea, Antarctica. *American Zoologist* 41: 90-98.

CAA (Chinese Arctic & Antarctic Administration 2018. Draft Comprehensive Environmental Evaluation for the proposed construction and operation of a new Chinese Research Station, Victoria Land, Antarctica. Prepared by the Polar Research Institute of China and TonJi University. CAA, Beijing: http://www.chinare.gov.cn/en/CEE2018.

CEP (Committee for Environmental Protection) 2017. Non-Native Species Manual: Revision 2017. Secretariat of the Antarctic Treaty, Buenos Aires.

COMNAP (Council of Managers of National Antarctic Programs) 2019. Antarctic Flight Information Manual (AFIM). https://www.comnap.aq/miscpages/SitePages/AFIM.aspx

Di Blasi D, Canese S, Carlig E, Ghigliotti L, Parker S, Vacchi M (2018) Baited Remote Underwater Video (BRUV) system to monitor Antarctic toothfish distribution and abundance: pilot study results and future design. WG-FSA-18/62, September 2018, 13 pp.

Ghigliotti L, Canese S, Carlig E, Di Blasi D, Parker S, O'Driscoll R, Vacchi M (2018) Non-invasive technology to support data collection on Antarctic toothfish under sea-ice. CCAMLR WS-DmPH-18/09, 19-21 February 2018, 8 pp.

Ghigliotti, L., Pisano, E., Carlig, E., Kim, J.H., Choi, T., Vacchi, M. 2015. Towards an all year round monitoring the Antarctic silverfish nursery area in the Ross sea. CCAMLR WG-FSA-15/58, 6 pp.

Giuliani, M.E., Benedetti, M., Nigro, M., Regoli, F. 2017. Nrf2 and regulation of the antioxidant system in the Antarctic silverfish, *Pleuragramma antarctica*: Adaptation to environmental changes of pro-oxidant pressure. *Marine Environmental Research* 129: 1-13.Greenfield, L.G. & Smellie, J.M. 1992. Known, new and probable Snow Petrel breeding locations in the Ross Dependency and Marie Byrd Land. *Notornis* 39: 119–24.

Guglielmo, L., Granata, A. & Greco, S. 1998. Distribution and abundance of postlarval and juvenile *Pleuragramma antarcticum* (Pisces, Nototheniidae) off Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antarctica). *Polar Biology* 19:37-51.

Guidetti, P., Ghigliotti, L., Vacchi, M. 2015. Insights on spatial distribution patterns of early stages of the Antarctic silverfish, *Pleuragramma antarctica*, in the platelet ice of Terra Nova Bay, Antarctica. *Polar Biology* 38 (3): 333-42. doi: 10.1007/s00300-014-1589-4Kooyman, G.L., Croll, D., Stone, S. & Smith S. 1990. Emperor penguin colony at Cape Washington, Antarctica. *Polar Record* 26 : 103-08.

Kurtz D.D. & Bromwich, D.H. 1983. Satellite observed behaviour of the Terra Nova Bay polynya. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 88: 9717-22.

Kurtz, D.D. & Bromwich, D.H. 1985. A recurring, atmospherically forced polynya in Terra Nova Bay. In: Jacobs, S.S. (ed) Oceanology of the Antarctic continental shelf. *Antarctic Research Series* 43: 177-201. American Geophysical Union, Washington DC.

La Mesa, M., Eastman, J.T., & Vacchi, M. 2004. The role of notothenioid fish in the food web of the Ross Sea shelf waters: a review. *Polar Biology* 27: 321-38.

La Mesa, M., Catalano, B., Russo, A., Greco, S., Vacchi, M. & Azzali M. 2010. Influence of environmental conditions on spatial distribution and abundance of early life stages of Antarctic silverfish, *Pleuragramma antarcticum* (Nototheniidae), in the Ross Sea. *Antarctic Science* 22: 243-54.

Lauriano G., Fortuna C.M. & Vacchi, M. 2007. Observation of killer whale (*Orcinus orca*) possibly eating penguins in Terra Nova Bay, Antarctica. Antarctic Science 19 (1) 95–96.

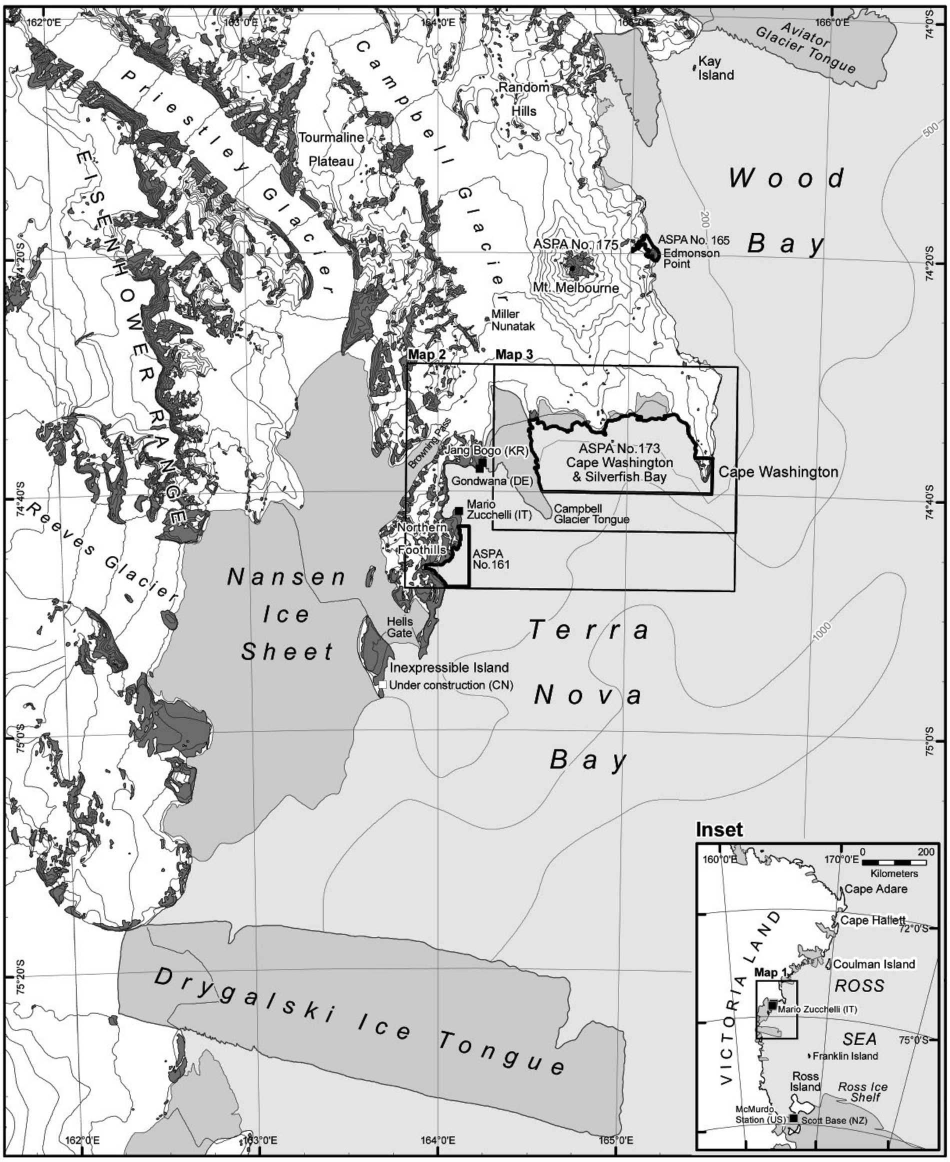
Lauriano, G., Fortuna, C.M. & Vacchi, M. 2010. Occurrence of killer whales (*Orcinus orca*) and other cetaceans in Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea, Antarctica. *Antarctic Science* 23: 139-43. DOI:10.1017/S0954102010000908

Lauriano, G. & Panigada, S. 2015a Ross Sea Killer whales activities from Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea, Antarctica) to New Zealand. *Journal of Cetacean Research & Management* SC/66a/SM/11 San Diego, Ca.

Lauriano, G. & Panigada, S. 2015b. Satellite telemetry on Ross Sea killer whales off northern Terra Nova Bay to describe habitat use and support conservation measures in ASPA 173. 21st *Biennial Conference on Marine Mammals.* San Francisco December 2015.

Lauriano, G., Pirotta, E., Joyce, T., Pitman, B., Borrell, A. & Panigada, S. (submitted). Movements, diving behaviour and diet of type-C killer whales

(*Orcinus orca*) in the Ross Sea, Antarctica. Aquatic Conservation: Marine and Freshwater Ecosystems.
O'Driscoll, R., Canese, S., Landroit, Y., Parker, S.J., Ghigliotti, L., Mormede, S., Vacchi, M. 2018. First in situ estimates of acoustic target strength of Antarctic toothfish (*Dissostichus mawsoni*). *Fisheries Research* 206: 79-84, DOI 10.1016/j.fishres.2018.05.008
Regoli, F., Nigro, M., Benedetti, M., Fattorini, D., Gorbi, S. 2005. Antioxidant efficiency in early life stages of the Antarctic silverfish, *Pleuragramma antarcticum*: Responsiveness to pro-oxidant conditions of platelet ice and chemical exposure. Aquatic Toxicology 75(1): 43-52.
Vacchi, M., La Mesa, M. & Greco, S. 1999. Summer distribution and abundance of larval and juvenile fishes in the western Ross Sea. *Antarctic Science* 11: 54-60.
Vacchi, M., La Mesa, M., Dalu, M. & MacDonald J. 2004. Early life stage in the life cycle of Antarctica silverfish, *Pleuragramma antarticum* in Terra Nova Bay, Ross Sea. *Antarctic Science* 16: 299-305.
Vacchi, M., Koubbi, P., Ghigliotti, L. & Pisano, E. 2012a. Sea-ice interactions with polar fish – focus on the Antarctic Silverfish life history. In: Verde, C. & di Prisco, G. (eds.) *Adaptation and Evolution in Marine Environments*, From Pole to Pole Series Volume 1. Springer-Verlag, Berlin. DOI: 10.1007/978-3.
Vacchi, M., DeVries, A.L., Evans, C.W., Bottaro, M., Ghigliotti, L., Cutroneo, L. & Pisano, E. 2012b. A nursery area for the Antarctic silverfish *Pleuragramma antarcticum* at Terra Nova Bay (Ross Sea): first estimate of distribution and abundance of eggs and larvae under the seasonal sea ice. *Polar Biology* 35 (10): 1573-85.
Van Woert, M.L. 1999. Wintertime dynamics of the Terra Nova Bay polynya. *Journal of Geophysical Research* 104: 1153-69.



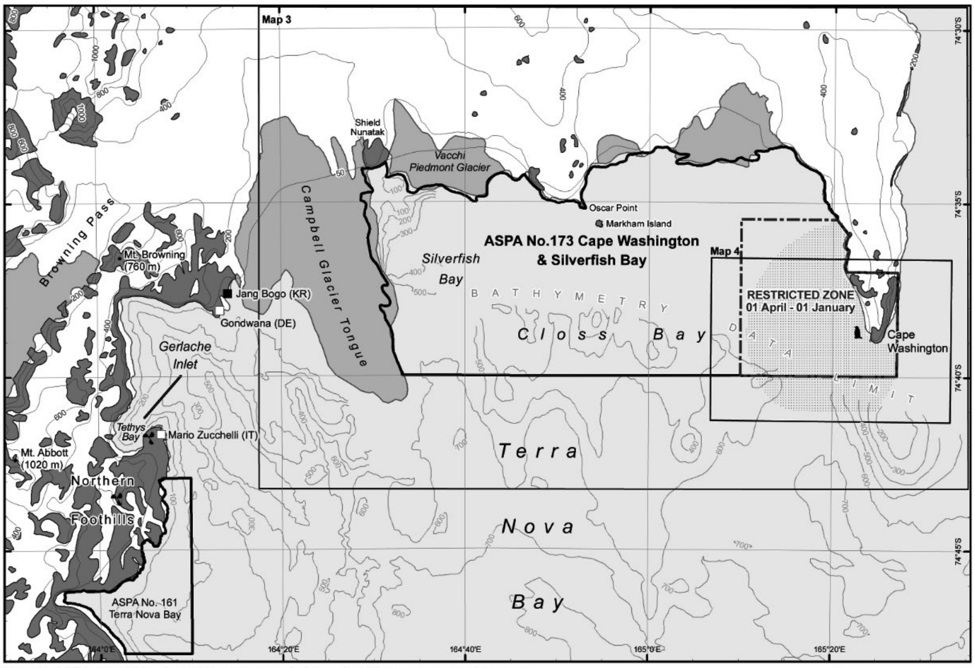
Map 1: ASPA No. 173 - Cape Washington & Silverfish Bay - Regional Map

05 Feb 2019
United States Antarctic Program
Environmental Research & Assessment

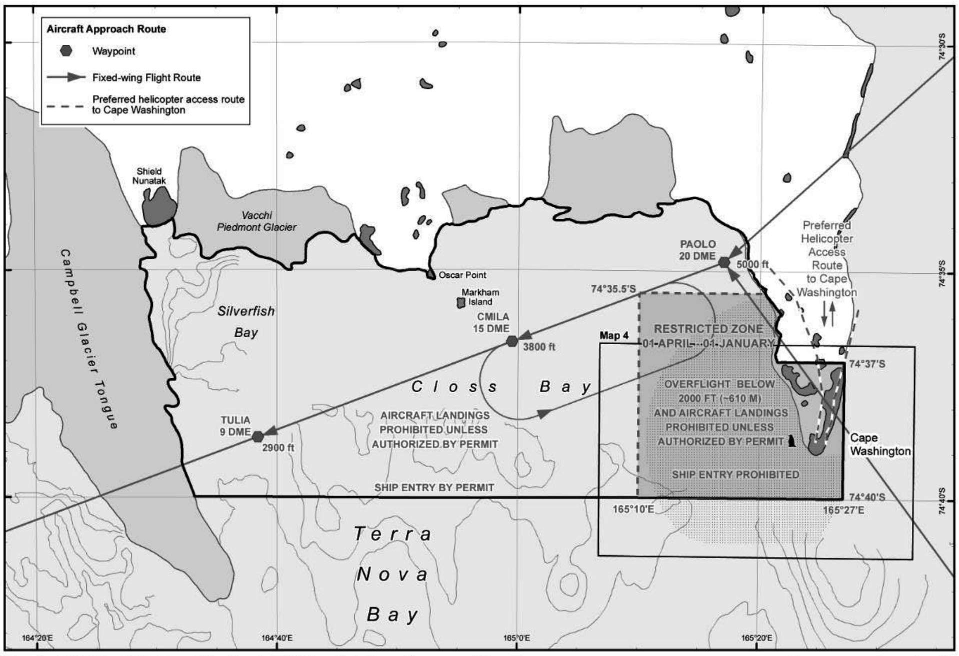
Contour (200 m) | Bathymetry | Ice free ground | Permanent ice | Ice shelf / Ice tongue | Antarctic Specially Protected Area (ASPA) boundary | Permanent station | Station under construction

0 10 20 Kilometers

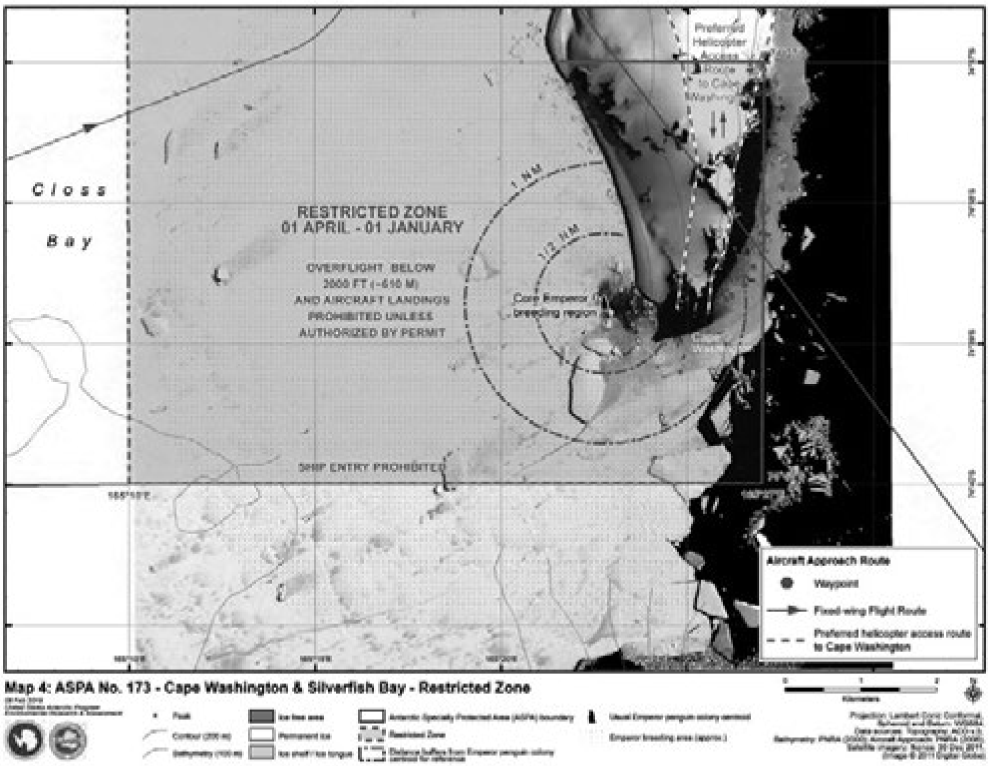
Projection: Lambert Conic Conformal,
Spheroid and Datum: WGS84.
Data sources:
Topography: ADD v.5; Bathymetry: GEBCO (1997);
Stations: COMNAP (2018) updated ERA (2019).



Map 2: ASPA No. 173 - Cape Washington & Silverfish Bay - topographic map



Map 3: ASPA No. 173 - Cape Washington & Silverfish Bay - Access guidance


Preferred Helicopter Access Route to Cape Washington
Closs Bay
RESTRICTED ZONE
01 APRIL - 01 JANUARY
OVERFLIGHT BELOW 2000 FT (~610 M) AND AIRCRAFT LANDINGS PROHIBITED UNLESS AUTHORIZED BY PERMIT
1 NM
1/2 NM
Core Emperor breeding region
SHIP ENTRY PROHIBITED
Aircraft Approach Route
Waypoint
Fixed-wing Flight Route
Preferred helicopter access route to Cape Washington
Map 4: ASPA No. 173 - Cape Washington & Silverfish Bay - Restricted Zone

Measure 10 (2019)

Antarctic Specially Managed Area No 4 (Deception Island): Revised Management Plan

The Representatives,

Recalling Articles 4, 5 and 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, providing for the designation of Antarctic Specially Managed Areas ("ASMA") and the approval of Management Plans for those Areas;

Recalling

- Measure 3 (2005), which designated Deception Island as ASMA 4 and adopted a Management Plan for the Area;
- Measure 10 (2012), which adopted a revised Management Plan for ASMA 4;

Noting that the Committee for Environmental Protection ("CEP") has endorsed a revised Management Plan for ASMA 4;

Desiring to replace the existing Management Plan for ASMA 4 with the revised Management Plan;

Recommend to their Governments the following Measure for approval in accordance with paragraph 1 of Article 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty:

That:

1. the revised Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Managed Area No 4 (Deception Island), which is annexed to this Measure, be approved; and
2. the Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Managed Area No 4 annexed to Measure 10 (2012) be revoked.

Deception Island Management Package

Introduction

Deception Island is a unique Antarctic island with important natural, scientific, historic, educational and aesthetic values.

Over the years, different parts of the island have been given legal protection under the Antarctic Treaty following piecemeal proposals, but no coherent strategy had been formulated for protecting the whole island. In 2000, an integrated strategy for the management of activities there was agreed by Argentina, Chile, Norway, Spain and the UK.

This strategy recommended an island-wide approach. Deception Island would be proposed as an Antarctic Specially Managed Area (ASMA) comprising a matrix of Antarctic Specially Protected Areas (ASPAs), Historic Sites and Monuments (HSMs), and further zones in which activities would be subject to a code of conduct.

In March 2001, the Instituto Antártico Chileno hosted a workshop in Santiago to progress the Management Plan for Deception Island. The Deception Island working group was widened to include the USA, as well as the Antarctic and Southern Ocean Coalition (ASOC) and the International Association of Antarctica Tour Operators (IAATO) as advisors to the group.

During February 2002, the Dirección Nacional del Antártico (Argentina) hosted an expedition to the island at Decepción Station. Representatives from the six National Antarctic Programmes, as well as ASOC and IAATO, participated. The overall goal of the expedition was to undertake baseline survey fieldwork to assist with the joint preparation by the six Antarctic Treaty Consultative Parties of a Management Package for Deception Island.

Following further extensive consultation, the first version of the Management Package for Deception Island was produced. Its aim was to conserve and protect the unique environment of Deception Island, whilst managing the variety of competing demands placed upon it, including science, tourism, and the conservation of its natural and historic values. It also aims to safeguard those working on, or visiting, the island. Information Papers submitted to the CEP (XII SATCM/IP8, XXIV ATCM/IP63, XXV ATCM/IP28 and XXVI ATCM/IP48) give further detail of the extensive consultation and site investigations, which have resulted in the production of the Management Package for Deception Island.

The Management Plan was updated in 2012 as a result of Measure 10 (2012). In accordance with Article 6 (3) of Annex V to the Environmental Protocol, a review process for the management plan was initiated in 2017, and on basis of discussions and new information a revised management plan was produced in 2019 and submitted to the CEP/ATCM for consideration and approval.

Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Managed Area No 4

DECEPTION ISLAND, SOUTH SHETLAND ISLANDS, ANTARCTICA

1. Values to be protected and activities to be managed

Deception Island (latitude 62°57’S, longitude 60°38’W), South Shetland Islands, is a unique Antarctic island with important natural, scientific, historic, educational and aesthetic values.

i. Natural value

- Deception Island is one of the most active volcanoes in Antarctica with eruptive activities in historical time. It was responsible for numerous ash layers dispersed across the South Shetland Islands, Bransfield Strait and the Scotia Sea. Ash from the island has even been identified in an ice core sample from the South Pole. The record of the eruptions form the 18th to the 20th centuries reveals periods of great activity with several temporally closely spaced eruptions, followed by decades of dormancy. The most recent eruptions (1967, 1969 and 1970) and episodes of unrest (1992, 1999 and 2014-2015) demonstrate that the volcanic system is still active. The occurrence of a future eruption in Deception Island is likely.
- The Area has an exceptionally important floral assemblage, including at least 18 species which have not been recorded elsewhere in the Antarctic. No other Antarctic area is comparable. Of particular importance are the very small, unique biological communities associated with the island’s geothermal areas, and the most extensive known community of the flowering plant Antarctic pearlwort (Colobanthus quitensis).
- Nine species of seabird breed on the island, including one of the world’s largest colonies of chinstrap penguins (Pygoscelis antarctica). The Antarctic Specially Managed Area (ASMA) contains Antarctic Important Bird Areas (IBA) Nos. 055 Baily Head and 056 Vapour Col, following the identification of IBAs across wider Antarctica (see Resolution 5 (2015)). Baily Head qualifies on the basis of the chinstrap penguin colony present, while Vapour Col qualifies on the basis of the concentration of seabirds present and in particular chinstrap penguin (see: http://www.era.gs/resources/iba/).
- The benthic habitat of Port Foster is of ecological interest due to the natural perturbations caused by volcanic activity. The warmer conditions of the seafloor, together with the sediment characteristics, make the benthic communities unique within the South Shetland Islands.

ii. Scientific value and activities

- The Area is of outstanding scientific interest, in particular for studies in geoscience and biological science. It offers the rare opportunity to study the effects of environmental change on an ecosystem, and the dynamics of the ecosystem as it recovers from natural disturbance.

- Long term, geothermal, geochemical, geophysical and geodetic data and biological data-sets are being collected at Decepción Station (Argentina) and Gabriel de Castilla Station (Spain)[1].

iii. Historic value

- The Area has had a long history of human activity since c.1820, including exploration, sealing, whaling, aviation, scientific research and tourism, and as such has played a significant role in Antarctic affairs.
- At Whalers Bay, the Norwegian Hektor whaling station, the cemetery and other artefacts, some of which pre-date the whaling station, are the most significant whaling remains in the Antarctic. The British 'Base B', which was established in the abandoned whaling station, was the first base of the secret World War II expedition 'Operation Tabarin', the forerunner to the British Antarctic Survey. As such, it was one of the earliest permanent research stations in Antarctica. The whalers' remains and 'Base B' are listed as Historic Site and Monument (HSM) No. 71. Appendix 3 contains the Conservation Strategy for HSM No. 71.
- The remains of the Chilean Presidente Pedro Aguirre Cerda Station at Pendulum Cove are listed as HSM No. 76. Meteorological and volcanological studies were undertaken at the base from 1955 until its destruction by volcanic eruptions in 1967 and 1969.

v. Aesthetic value

- Deception Island's flooded caldera, its 'horse-shoe' shape and linear glaciated eastern coastline, its barren volcanic slopes, steaming beaches and ash-layered glaciers provide a unique Antarctic landscape.

iv. Educational values

- Deception Island is one of the few places in the world where vessels can sail directly into the centre of a restless volcanic caldera, providing the opportunity for visitors to learn about volcanoes and other aspects of the natural world, as well as early Antarctic exploration, whaling and science. Deception Island is also one of the most visited touristic sites in Antarctica.

[1] Spain has been collecting seismological data since the opening of Gabriel de Castilla station in 1989; the data-sets are available in the National Polar Data Center (NPDC) of Spain. Biological data sets have been collected at irregular intervals from 2001 and are also available in the NPDC.

2. Aims and objectives

The main aim of this Management Package is to conserve and protect the unique and outstanding environment of Deception Island, whilst managing the variety of competing demands placed upon it, including science, tourism, and the conservation of its natural and historic values. It also aims to protect the safety of those working on, or visiting the island taking into account that it is an active volcano.

The objectives of management at Deception Island are to:

- assist in the planning and co-ordination of activities in the Area, encourage co-operation between Antarctic Treaty Parties and other stakeholders, and manage potential or actual conflicts of interest between different activities, including science, logistics and tourism;
- avoid unnecessary degradation, by human disturbance, to the unique natural values of the Area;
- safeguard in particular the scientific and wilderness values of those areas in the Area which thus far have not been significantly modified by human activity (especially the recently created volcanic surfaces);
- minimise the possibility of non-native species being introduced through human activities;
- prevent unnecessary disturbance, destruction or removal of historic buildings, structures and artefacts;
- safeguard and inform those working in or near to, or visiting, the Area from the significant volcanic risk;
- manage visitation to this unique Island, and promote an awareness, through education, of its significance and potential volcanic hazards.

3. Management activities

To achieve the aims and objectives of this Management Plan, the following management activities will be undertaken:

- There will be a Deception Island Management Group involving all interested Parties to:

  - oversee the co-ordination of activities in the Area;
  - facilitate communication between those working in, or visiting, the Area;
  - maintain a record of activities in the Area;
  - disseminate information and educational material on the significance of Deception Island to those visiting, or working there;
  - monitor the site to investigate cumulative impacts derived from science, permanent facilities, tourism/visitor and management activities;
  - oversee the implementation of this Management Plan, and revise it when necessary.

- a general island-wide Code of Conduct for activities in the Area is included in this ASMA Management Plan (see Section 9). Further site-specific Codes of Conduct are included in the Conservation Strategy for Whalers Bay HSM No.71 (Appendix 3), as well as the Code of Conduct for the Facilities Zone (Appendix 4), the Code of Conduct for Visitors (Appendix 5) and Site Visitor Guidelines for Telefon Bay, Whalers Bay, Pendulum Cove and Baily Head. These Codes of Conduct and Site Visitor Guidelines should be used to guide activities in the Area;
- National Antarctic Programmes operating within the Area should ensure that their personnel are briefed on, and are aware of, the requirements of this Management Plan and supporting documentation;
- tour operators visiting the Area should ensure that their staff, crew and passengers are briefed on, and are aware of, the requirements of this Management Plan and supporting documentation;
- signs and markers will be erected where necessary and appropriate to show the boundaries of ASPAs and other zones, such as the location of scientific activities. Signs and markers will be well designed to be informative and obvious, yet unobtrusive. They will also be secured and maintained in good condition, and removed when no longer necessary. Signs and marks will be analysed on a case-by-case basis and re-evaluated periodically;
- the volcanic alert scheme (as at Appendix 6) will be implemented. This alert scheme, together with the emergency evacuation plan, will be kept updated and under continuous review;
- Parties authorizing activities in the South Shetland Island area should ensure that those responsible for the activity are aware of the desirability of avoiding use of Deception Island as an emergency harbour in cases of maritime accidents/incidents due to both the ecological sensitivities and safety issues of the island. Parties should ensure that those responsible for the activity make themselves familiar with alternative emergency harbours in the area and encourage these to be used if the situation at hand deems this possible and appropriate.
- copies of this Management Plan and supporting documentation, in English and Spanish, will be made available at Decepción Station (Argentina), and Gabriel de Castilla Station (Spain). In addition, the Deception Island Management Group should encourage National Antarctic Operators, tour companies and, as far as practicable, private yacht operators visiting the Area, to have available copies of this Management Plan when they visit the Area; and
- visits should be made to the Area as necessary (no less than once every 5 years) by members of the Deception Island Management Group to ensure that the requirements of the Management Plan are being met.

4. Period of designation

Designated for an indefinite period of time.

5. Description of the Area

i. Geographical co-ordinates, boundary markers and natural features

- *General description*

Deception Island (latitude 62°57'S, longitude 60°38'W) is situated in the Bransfield Strait at the southern end of the South Shetland Islands, off the north-west coast of the Antarctic Peninsula (Figures 1 and 2). The boundary of the ASMA is defined as the outer coastline of the island above the low tide water level. It includes the waters and seabed of Port Foster to the north of a line drawn across Neptunes Bellows between Entrance Point and Cathedral Crags (Figure 3). No boundary markers are required for the ASMA, as the coast is clearly defined and visually obvious.

- *Geology, geomorphology and volcanic activity*

Deception Island is an active volcano with a submerged basal diameter of approximately 30 km, rising up to 1.5 km above the sea floor. The volcano has a large flooded caldera giving the island a distinctive horseshoe shape broken only on the south-eastern side by Neptunes Bellows, a narrow shallow passage about 500 m wide.

The caldera-forming eruption occurred possibly less than 10,000 years ago. It consisted of a large scale, violently explosive eruption that rapidly evacuated around 30-60 km^3 of magma, leading to the collapse of the volcano summit region and the formation of Port Foster caldera. Associated ashfalls and tsunamis affected the environment of the northern Antarctic Peninsula region.

Volcanic activity in Deception Island after the formation of Port Foster caldera mostly consists of several tens of scattered eruptive vents distributed inside the caldera structure. In general, recent eruptions have been small in volume (e.g. < 0.1 km^3 of erupted magma), mostly classified as VEI (Volcanic Explosivity Index) 2 or 3. In Deception Island, even small-volume eruptions can be highly explosive, in the case of shallow submarine vents or those located on waterlogged shorelines or beneath the ice caps.

The volcano was particularly active during the late 18th and 19th centuries, when numerous eruptions occurred. In contrast, 20th century eruptions were restricted to two short periods, around 1906–1910 and 1967–1970. Three processes of significant activity occurred in 1992, 2015 and especially 1999. Together with the record of historical eruptions and the presence of long-lived areas of geothermal activity, allow Deception Island to be classified as a restless caldera with a significant volcanic risk.

Approximately 57% of the island is covered by permanent glaciers, many of which are overlain with volcanic ash. Mounds and low ridges of glacially transported debris (moraines) are present around the margins of the glaciers.

An almost complete ring of hills, rising to 539 m at Mount Pond, encircles the sunken interior of Port Foster, and is the principal drainage divide on the island. Ephemeral springs flow toward the outer and inner coasts. Several lakes are located on the inner divide of the watershed.

- *Climate*

The climate of Deception Island is polar maritime. Mean annual air temperature at sea level is –2.9°C. Extreme temperatures range from 11°C at the warmest to – 28 °C at the coldest. Precipitation, which falls on more than 50% of summer days, is high for the region, with a mean annual equivalent of rainfall of approximately 500 mm. Prevailing winds are from the north-east and west.

- *Marine ecology*

The marine ecology of Port Foster has been significantly influenced by volcanic activity and sediment deposition. ASPA No. 145, comprising two sub-sites believed to be reservoirs for soft-bottom species, is located in the Area. The Management Plan for ASPA 145, contained in Appendix 2, gives further detail of the marine ecology of Port Foster.

- *Flora*

Deception Island is a unique and exceptionally important botanical site. The flora includes at least 18 species of moss, liverwort and lichen which have not been recorded elsewhere in the Antarctic. Small communities, which include rare species and unique associations of taxa, grow at a number of geothermal areas on the island, some of which have fumaroles. Furthermore, the most extensive known concentration of Antarctic pearlwort (*Colobanthus quitensis*) is located between Baily Head and South East Point.

In many areas, ground surfaces created by the 1967-70 eruptions are being colonized rapidly, probably enhanced by the increasing summer temperatures now occurring in the Antarctic Peninsula as a result of regional climate change.

ASPA No. 140, comprising 11 sub-sites, is located in the Area. The Management Plan for ASPA No. 140 is contained in Appendix 1. This gives further details of the flora of Deception Island.

- *Invertebrates*

Recorded terrestrial and freshwater invertebrates on Deception Island include at least 18 species of Acarina (mite) of which three are non-native, one species of Diptera (fly), three species of Tardigrada (tardigrade), 14 species of Collembola (springtail) of which six are non-native, three freshwater Crustacea (crustacean), 14 Nematoda (nematode), one Gastrotricha (gastrotrich) and five Rotifera (rotifer). Colonies of seabird ticks (*Ixodes uriae*) are frequently found beneath rocks adjacent to penguin rookeries (e.g. at the Vapour Col rookery).

In the heterogeneous intertidal zone of Port Foster, the mean and upper tidal levels of the sedimentary shores are depleted in biodiversity, harboring a low number of invertebrate species, and with only the group of Collembola linking terrestrial and marine habitats along the bay. Ice scouring during the winter period, warm soil temperatures along extensive stretches of shore line (e.g. up to 60 ºC at the surface) and CO_2 emissions associated with geothermal activity (up to 1000 ppm m^2 s^{-1}), prevent the settlement of groups that conspicuously occupy similar sedimentary shores that are free of ice along the South Shetland Islands and in the Antarctic Peninsula. Biodiversity increases in the low intertidal and saturated zones, where eight species of amphipods, three species of prosobranchs and a yet unidentified assemblage of Enchytraeidae Oligochaeta have been reported to date. The surf zone and shallow water along the beaches behave as an interface between the intertidal zone that has low levels of productivity and the more highly productive sea bed; here, large supplies or organic matter from detached macroalgae decompose, underpinning a diverse and abundant community of herbivore and scavenger Amphipods. Macroalgae are frequently observed in these zones and in the intertidal, either stranded or attached to stones, with more than 90% of the deposits belonging to the Florideophyceae, including *Palmaria decipiens* and *Phaeophyceae* and *Desmarestia* spp.

The infauna, macrofauna and megafauna at subtidal levels is very rich. The infauna has proven to be much higher than expected, both in species richness and in biomass, with a large contribution of annelid polychaetes. Macroalgae and fauna are quite diverse at the caldera, with highest abundances and levels of species richness associated with boulders and hard substrates. Important communities of suspension and filter-feeders are particularly rich in Whalers Bay and Fildes Point. The presence of vertical walls in these areas allow the growth of large invertebrates, which in turn provide a three-dimensional habitat for smaller invertebrates, generating high diversity and biomass values. These communities are composed of many different species of macroalgae, porifera, bryozoa, and soft corals, which are not found in other parts of the of the caldera further from Neptunes Bellows. As an example, more than 25 species of sponges (some of them still to be identified) have been found there. Some other new species in other phyla have been found and are currently being described.

- *Birds*

Nine species of bird breed within the Area. The most numerous is the chinstrap penguin (*Pygoscelis antarctica*), with an estimated total population of around 70,000 breeding pairs on the island. The largest rookery is at Baily Head, with the latest estimates indicating 50,000 breeding pairs[2]. In the last 20 years the chinstrap penguin

[2] Estimates are based on surveys conducted by US in the 20111/12 season.

population has declined in the Area, probably due to the effects of climate change on krill abundance, upon which the penguins feed. The most recent studies indicate a 50% decline in breeding pairs at Baily Head since the 1986/87 season census[3].

Although Macaroni penguins (*Eudyptes chrysolophus*) have been observed occasionally nesting in small numbers on the island, no breeding birds have been observed over the last two decades. Brown skuas (*Catharacta antarctica lonnbergi*), south polar skuas (*Catharacta maccormicki*), kelp gulls (*Larus dominicanus*), cape petrels (*Daption capensis*), Wilson's storm-petrels (*Oceanites oceanicus*), Antarctic terns (*Sterna vittata*), Antarctic cormorant (*Phalacrocorax bransfieldensis*) and snowy sheathbills (*Chionis alba*) also breed within the Area.

- *Mammals*

Deception Island has no breeding mammals. Antarctic fur seals (*Arctocephalus gazella*), Weddell seals (*Leptonychotes weddelli*), crabeater seals (*Lobodon carcinophagus*), southern elephant seals (*Mirounga leonina*) and leopard seals (*Hydrurga leptonyx*) haul out on the beaches of the inner and outer coast. At rare intervals whales – mostly humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) - can be observed in Port Foster. Humpback whales are also routinely seen feeding in the island's coastal waters from late December onwards. A high number of Antarctic fur seals (around 500) normally can be observed on the beach located between Entrance Point and Collins Point.

ii. Structures within the Area

Decepción Station (Argentina) (latitude 62°58'20" S; longitude 060°41'40" W) is situated on the southern shore of Fumarole Bay. Gabriel de Castilla Station (Spain) (latitude 62°58 ' 40"S, longitude 060°40 ' 30"W) is located approximately 1 km to the south-east. Further details on both stations are contained in the Facilities Zone Code of Conduct (Appendix 4).

The remains of Hektor Whaling Station (Norway) and other remains that pre-date the whaling station, the Whalers Cemetery and the former British 'Base B', which together form Historic Site and Monument (HSM) No. 71, are located at Whalers Bay (see Appendix 3). A number of steam boilers from the whaling station can be found washed up on the southwest coast of Port Foster. The remains of the Chilean Presidente Pedro Aguirre Cerda Station (HSM No. 76) is located at Pendulum Cove. A derelict wooden refuge hut is located approximately 1 km to the south-west of HSM No.76.

[3] Naveen, R., H. J. Lynch, S. Forrest, T. Mueller, and M. Polito. 2012. First direct, site-wide penguin survey at Deception Island, Antarctica suggests significant declines in breeding chinstrap penguins. In review at Polar Biology.
Barbosa, A., Benzal, J., De Leon, A., Moreno, J. (2012) Population decline of chinstrap penguins (*Pygoscelis antarctica*) on Deception Island, South Shetlands, Antarctica. Polar Biology 35; 1453-1457.

A light beacon, maintained by the Chilean Navy, is located on Collins Point. A collapsed light tower, dating from the whaling era, is below it. The remains of a further light tower dating from the whaling era is located at South East Point.

The stern of the *Southern Hunter*, a whale-catcher belonging to the Christian Salvesen Company, which foundered on Ravn Rock, Neptunes Bellow's in 1956, remains on the unnamed beach to the west of Entrance Point.

A number of beacons and cairns marking sites used for topographical survey are present within the Area.

A volcanic surveillance network (seismic, geodetic, geothermal and oceanographic equipment) is deployed along Deception Island every Austral summer to record the volcanic activity of the Island. The network has permanent and seasonal instruments which is updated every season (for more information, please contact Spain[4]).

6. Protected areas and managed zones within the Area

Figure 3 shows the location of the following ASPAs, HSMs, Facility Zone and other sites with special management provisions within the Area.

- ASPA No. 140, comprising 11 terrestrial sites, including a Prohibited Zone at Site J Perchuć Cone;
- ASPA No. 145, comprising two marine sites within Port Foster;
- HSM No. 71, the remains of Hektor Whaling Station and other remains which pre-date the whaling station, the Whalers Cemetery and 'Base B', Whalers Bay;
- HSM No. 76 , the remains of Pedro Aguirre Cerda Station, Pendulum Cove;
- A Facilities Zone, located on the west side of Port Foster, which includes Decepción Station and Gabriel de Castilla Station;
- Four sites for which Site Visitor Guidelines have been adopted: Pendulum Cove, Baily Head, Whalers Bay and Telefon Bay.

7. Maps

Map 1: The location of Deception Island ASMA No. 4 in relation to the Antarctic Peninsula.

Map 2: Deception Island - topography

Map 3: Deception Island Antarctic Specially Managed Area No 4

[4] Please e-mail cpe@ciencia.gob.es

8. Supporting Documents

This Management Plan includes the following supporting documents as appendices:

- Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No. 140 (Appendix 1)
- Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No. 145 (Appendix 2)
- Conservation Strategy for HSM No. 71, Whalers Bay (Appendix 3)
- Code of Conduct for Facilities Zone (Appendix 4)
- Code of Conduct for visitors at Deception Island (Appendix 5)
- Alert Scheme and Escape Strategy for volcanic eruptions on Deception Island (Appendix 6)
- Site Visitor Guidelines: Telefon Bay (Appendix 7)
- Site Visitor Guidelines: Whalers Bay (Appendix 8)
- Site Visitor Guidelines: Baily Head (Appendix 9)
- Site Visitor Guidelines: Pendulum Cove (Appendix 10)

Those appendices containing management plans for ASPAs or Site Visitor Guidelines will be maintained and updated with the latest versions of these documents as they have been adopted by the ATCM.

9. General Code of Conduct

i. Volcanic risk

All activities undertaken within the Area should be planned and conducted taking into account the significant risk to human life and infrastructures posed by the threat of potential volcanic eruption (see Appendix 6).

ii. Access to and movement within the Area

Access to the Area is generally by ship or yacht, with landings usually taking place by small boat, or less frequently by helicopter.

Vessels arriving in or departing from Port Foster must announce over VHF Marine Channel 16 the intended time and direction of passage through Neptunes Bellows.

Ships may transit ASPA 145, but anchoring within either of the two sub-sites should be avoided except in extreme emergencies.

There are no restrictions on landings on any beaches outside the protected areas covered in Section 6, although recommended landing sites (including for the landing of tourists) are shown in Figure 3. Boat landings should avoid disturbing birds and seals. Extreme caution should be exercised when attempting landings on the outer coast owing to the significant swell and submerged rocks.

Recommended landing sites for helicopters are shown in Figure 3. Helicopters should avoid overflying areas with high concentrations of birds (i.e. penguin rookeries or other seabird breeding colonies). Aircraft operations over the Area should be carried out, as a minimum requirement, in compliance with ATCM Resolution 4 (2004), "Guidelines for the Operation of Aircraft near Concentrations of birds in Antarctica".

Movement within the area should generally be on foot. All-Terrain Vehicles may also be used with care exclusively for scientific support or logistical purposes along the beaches outside of ASPA 140. All movement should be undertaken carefully to minimise disturbance to animals, soil and vegetated areas, and not damage or dislodge flora.

iii. Activities that are or may be conducted within the Area, including restrictions on time or place

- Scientific research, or the logistical support of scientific research, which will not jeopardise the values of the Area;
- Management activities, including the restoration of historic buildings, clean-up of abandoned work-sites, and monitoring the implementation of this Management Plan;
- Tourist or private expedition visits consistent with the Codes of Conduct for Visitors (Appendix 5) and the provisions of this Management Plan;

Due to the presence of the most extensive known concentration of Antarctic pearlwort *Colobanthus quitensis* the walk between Baily Head and Whalers Bay should not be undertaken, unless absolutely necessary for the conduct of scientific activity.

Overwintering at Deception Island (unless for scientific purposes) is discouraged due to the unique circumstances regarding safety (including during rescue operations) with respect to any potential volcanic activity on the island and lack of year-round volcanic surveillance.

Further restrictions apply to activities within ASPA 140 and ASPA 145 (see Appendices 1 and 2).

iv. Installation, modification or removal of structures

Site selection, installation, modification or removal of temporary refuges, hides, or tents should be undertaken in a manner that does not compromise the values of the Area and follows the general safety recommendations.

Scientific equipment installed in the Area should be clearly identified by country, name of principal investigator, contact details, and date of installation. All such items should be made of materials that pose minimal risk of contamination to the area. All equipment and associated materials should be removed when no longer in use.

v. Location of field camps for scientific activities

Field camps should be located on non-vegetated sites, such as on barren ash plains, slopes or beaches, or on thick snow or ice cover when practicable, and should also avoid concentrations of mammals or breeding birds. Field camps should also avoid areas of geothermally heated ground or fumaroles. Similarly, campsites should avoid dry lake or stream beds. Previously occupied campsites should be re-used where appropriate. Due to the biological diversity of the island camping for purposes other than for scientific activity is not permitted.

The SCAR's Environmental Code of Conduct for Terrestrial Scientific Field Research in Antarctica should be used as guidance when establishing field camps (see Resolution 5 (2018); available at: https://www.scar.org/policy/scar-codes-of-conduct/).

Figure 3 shows the recommended sites for field camps within the Area.

vi. Taking or harmful interference with native flora or fauna

Taking or harmful interference with native flora or fauna is prohibited, except by Permit issued in accordance with Annex II to the *Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty* (1998). Where taking or harmful interference with animals for scientific purposes is involved, the *SCAR Code of Conduct for the Use of Animals for Scientific Purposes in Antarctica* should be used as a minimum standard (available at: https://www.scar.org/policy/scar-codes-of-conduct/).

vii. Collection or removal of anything not brought into the Area

Material should only be removed from the area for scientific, management, conservation or archaeological purposes, and should be limited to the minimum necessary to fulfil those needs.

If objects likely to stem from one of the Historic Sites and Monuments in the Area are found in other areas of the island they should be secured by the best means possible. A report describing the nature of the material and the location within the Historic Site and Monument where it has been secured and stored, should be submitted to the Chair of the Deception Island Management Group, to establish the most appropriate way to deal with the debris (i.e. conservation to preserve any historic value or appropriate disposal).

viii. Restrictions on materials and organisms which may be brought into the Area

A combination of high visitation, relatively mild climatic conditions and the presence of geothermally heated soils makes Deception Island one of the most vulnerable locations within Antarctic to non-native species introductions and establishment. Monitoring studies suggest that the island is the most highly invaded location in Antarctica, with at least nine non-native terrestrial invertebrates present. The has been success in the eradication of non-native plants, but the large number and wide distribution of non-native invertebrates present a significant problem that has yet to be resolved. Port Foster has been subject to ship visits for almost two centuries; however, the number of marine non-native species present within Port Foster is not known.

The introduction of non-native species is prohibited, except by Permit issued in accordance with Annex II to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty. To minimise the risk of accidental or unintentional introduction of non-native species the revised CEP Non-native species manual attached to ATCM Resolution 4 (2016) should be consulted (also available at: https://www.ats.aq/documents/ATCM40/att/atcm40_att056_e.pdf).

For more information on the non-native species found within Deception Island please see Hughes et al, (2015).

viii. The disposal of waste

All wastes other than human wastes and domestic liquid waste shall be removed from the Area. Human and domestic liquid wastes from stations or field camps may be disposed of into Port Foster or other coastal sites below the low water mark, and not within the boundaries of ASPA No. 145. Freshwater streams or lakes, or vegetated areas, shall not be used to dispose of human wastes.

ix. Requirement for reports

Reports of activities within the Area, which are not already covered under existing reporting requirements, or activities clearly in breach of the requirements of this plan should be made available to the Chair of the Deception Island Management Group[5].

10. Advance exchange of information

All National Antarctic Programmes should, as far as practicable, notify the Chair of the Deception Island Management Group of the location, expected duration, and any special considerations related to the deployment of field parties, scientific instrumentation or botanical quadrats at the four sites commonly visited by tourists (Whalers Bay, Pendulum Cove, Baily Head or the eastern end of Telefon Bay). This

[5] Contact details for the Chair of the Deception Island Management Group can be found on the http://www.deceptionisland.aq/

information will be relayed to IAATO (and as far as practicable to non-IAATO members).

11. References

Angulo-Preckler C; Tuya F; Avila C., 2016. Abundance and size patterns of echinoderms in coastal soft-bottoms at Deception Island (South Shetland Islands, Antarctica). Continental Shelf Research 137 : 131-141

Angulo-Preckler C.; Leiva C.; Avila C.; Taboada S., 2017. Macroinvertebrate communities from the shallow soft-bottoms of Deception Island (Southern Ocean): a paradise for opportunists. Marine Environmental Research 127 :62- 74

Baker, P.E., 1969. Investigations of the 1967 and 1969 volcanic eruptions on Deception Island, South Shetland Islands. Polar Record 14: 823-827. doi:10.1017/S003224740006544X

Baker, P.E., Davies, T.G., Roobol, M.J., 1969. Volcanic activity at Deception Island in 1967 and 1969. Nature 224: 553-560.doi:10.1038/224553a0

Baker, P.E., McReath, I., Harvey, M.R., Roobol, M.J., Davies, T.G., 1975. The geology of the south Shetland islands: Volcanic evolution of Deception island. British Antarctic Survey Scientific Reports 78: 81 pp.

Bartolini, S., Geyer, A., Martí, J., Pedrazzi, D., Aguirre-Díaz, G., 2014. Volcanic hazard on Deception Island (South Shetland Islands, Antarctica). Journal of Volcanology and Geothermal Research 285: 150-168. doi: 10.1016/j.jvolgeores.2014.08.009.

Birkenmajer, K., 1992. Volcanic succession at Deception Island, West Antarctica: a revised lithostratigraphic standard. Studia Geologica Polonica 101: 27-82.

Figuerola, B.; Monleón-Getino, T.; Ballesteros, M.; Avila, C. 2012. Spatial patterns and diversity of bryozoan communities from the Southern Ocean: South Shetland Islands, Bouvet Island and Eastern Weddell Sea. Systematics and Biodiversity 10 (1): 109-123.

Glover, A.G.; Wiklund, H.; Taboada, S.; Avila, C.; Cristobo, J.; Smith, C.R.; Kemp, K.M.; Jamieson, A.; Dahlgren, T.G., 2013. Bone-eating worms from the Antarctic: the contrasting fate of whale and wood remains on the Southern Ocean seafloor. Proceedings of the Royal Society B: Biological Sciences 280 (1768): 1-10

Hawkes, D.D., 1961. The geology of the South Shetland Islands: II. The geology and petrology of Deception Island. Falkland Islands Dependencies Survey Scientific Reports 27: 43.

Hughes, K.A.; Pertierra, L.R.; Molina-Montenegro, M.; Convey, P., 2015. Biological invasions in Antarctica: what it the current status and can we respond? Biodiversity and Conservation 24: 1031-1055. Available at: https://link.springer.com/article/10.1007/s10531-015-0896-6

Ibáñez, J.M., Almendros, J., Carmona, E., Martı, amp, x, nez-Arévalo, C., Abril, M., 2003. The recent seismo-volcanic activity at Deception Island volcano. Deep Sea Research Part II: Topical Studies in Oceanography 50: 1611-1629. doi: 10.1016/S0967-0645(03)00082-1

Marti, J., Baraldo, A., 1990. Pre-caldera pyroclastic deposits of Deception Island

(South Shetland Islands). Antarctic Science 2: 345-352. doi: 10.1017/S0954102090000475
Martí, J., Vila, J., Rey, J., 1996. Deception island (Bransfield Strait, Antarctica): An example of a volcanic caldera developed by extensional tectonics. In: McGuire, W.J., Jones, A.P., Neuberg, J. (Eds.), Volcano instability on the Earth and other planets. The geological society, Oxford: pp. 253-266.
Martí, J., Geyer, A., Aguirre-Diaz, G., 2013. Origin and evolution of the Deception Island caldera (South Shetland Islands, Antarctica). Bulletin of Volcanology 75: 1-18. doi: 10.1007/s00445-013-0732-3
Moles, J.; Avila, C.; Kim, I.H., 2015. *Anthessius antarcticus* n. sp. (Copepoda: Poecilostomatoida: Anthessiidae) from Antarctic waters living in association with *Charcotia granulosa* (Mollusca: Nudibranchia: Charcotiidae). Journal of Crustacean Biology 35(1): 97 -104
Moles, J.; Figuerola, B.; Campanyà-Llovet, N.; Monleón-Getino, T.; Taboada, S.; Avila, C. 2015. Distribution patterns in Antarctic and Subantarctic echinoderms. Polar Biology 38(6): 799- 813.
Orheim, O., 1972. A 200-year record of glacier mass balance at Deception Island, southwest Atlantic Ocean, and its bearing on models of global climate change. Institute of Polar Studies, Ohio State University, p. 118.
Pedrazzi, D., Aguirre-Díaz, G., Bartolini, S., Martí, J., Geyer, A., 2014. The 1970 eruption on Deception Island (Antarctica): eruptive dynamics and implications for volcanic hazards. Journal of the Geological Society 171: 765-778. doi: 765-778. 10.1144/jgs2014-015.
Roobol, M.J., 1980. A model for the eruptive mechanism of Deception Island from 1820 to 1970. British Antarctic Survey Bulletin 49: 137-156.
Roobol, M.J., 1982. The volcanic hazard at Deception Island, South Shetland Islands. British Antarctic Survey Bulletin 51: 237-245.
Taboada, S.; Riesgo, A.; Bas, M.; Arnedo, M. A.; Cristobo, J.; Rouse, G. W.; Avila, C., 2015. Bone-eating worms spread: insights into shallow-water Osedax (Annelida, Siboglinidae) from Antarctic, Subantarctic, and Mediterranean waters. PLoS One 10(11): e0140341
Smellie, J.L., 1988. Recent observations on the volcanic history of Deception Island, South Shetland Islands. British Antarctic Survey Bulletin 81: 83-85.
Smellie, J.L., 1989. Deception Island. In: Dalziel I, W.D. (Ed.), Tectonics of the Scotia arc, Antarctica. 28th International Geological Congress, Field Trip Guidebook T180. American Geophysical Union, Washington DC: pp. 146-153.
Smellie, J.L., 2001. Lithostratigraphy and volcanic evolution of Deception Island, South Shetland Islands. Antarctic Science 13: 188-209. doi: 10.1017/S0954102001000281
Smellie, J.L., 2002. The 1969 subglacial eruption on Deception Island (Antarctica): events and processes during an eruption beneath a thin glacier and implications for volcanic hazards. In: Smellie, J.L., Chapman, M.G. (Eds.), Volcano-Ice Interactions on Earth and Mars. Geological Society of London, London: pp. 59-79.
Smellie, J.L.; López-Martínez, J.; Headland, R.K.; Hernández-Cifuentes, F.;

Maestro, A.;; Rey, J.; Serrano, E.; Somoza, L.; Thomson, J.W., 2002. Geology and geomorphology of Deception Island. Br. Antarct. Surv., Natural Environmental Research Council, Cambridge.

Taboada, S.; Doner, S.; Blake, J.A.; Avila, C., 2012. A new species of *Cirratulus* (Annelida: Polychaeta) described from a shallow-water whale bone in Antarctica. Zootaxa 3340: 59-68.

Taboada, S.; Junoy, J.; Andrade, S.; Giribet, G.; Cristobo, J.; Avila, C., 2013. On the identity of two Antarctic brooding nemerteans: redescription of *Antarctonemertes valida* (Bürger, 1893) and description of a new species in the genus *Antarctonemertes* Friedrich, 1955 (Nemertea, Hoplonemertea). Polar Biology 36: 1415-1430.

Taboada, S.; Wiklund, H.; Glover, A.G.; Dahlgren, T.G.; Cristobo, J.; Avila, C., 2013. Two new Antarctic *Ophryotrocha* (Annelida: Dorvilleidae) described from shallow-water whale bones. Polar Biology 36: 1031-1045

Taboada, S.; Bas, M.; Avila, C. 2014. A new *Parougia* (Annelida, Dorvilleidae) associated to eutrophic marine habitats in Antarctica. Polar Biology 38: 517-527

Vila, M.; Costa, G.; Angulo-Preckler, C.; Sarda, R.; Avila, C. 2016. Contrasting views on Antarctic tourism, 'last chance tourism' or 'ambassadorship' in the last of the wild. Journal of Cleaner Production 111 (B): 451-460.

Figure 1. The location of Deception Island in relation to the South Shetland Islands and the Antarctic Peninsula

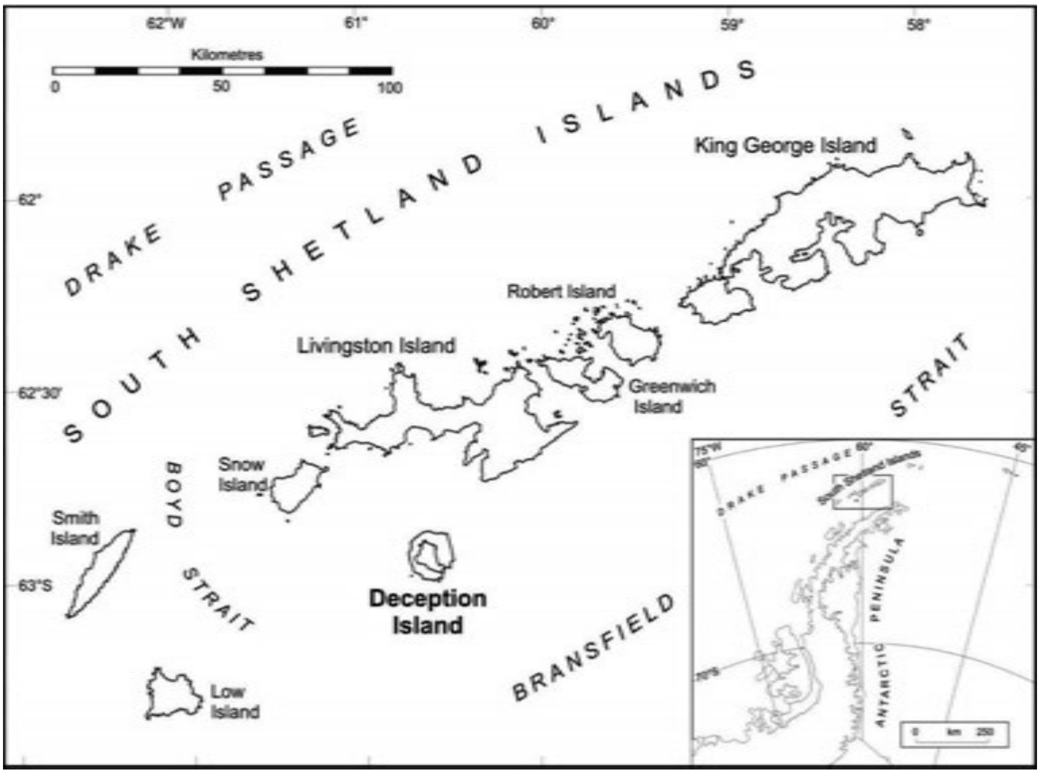


Figure 2. Deception Island – Topography

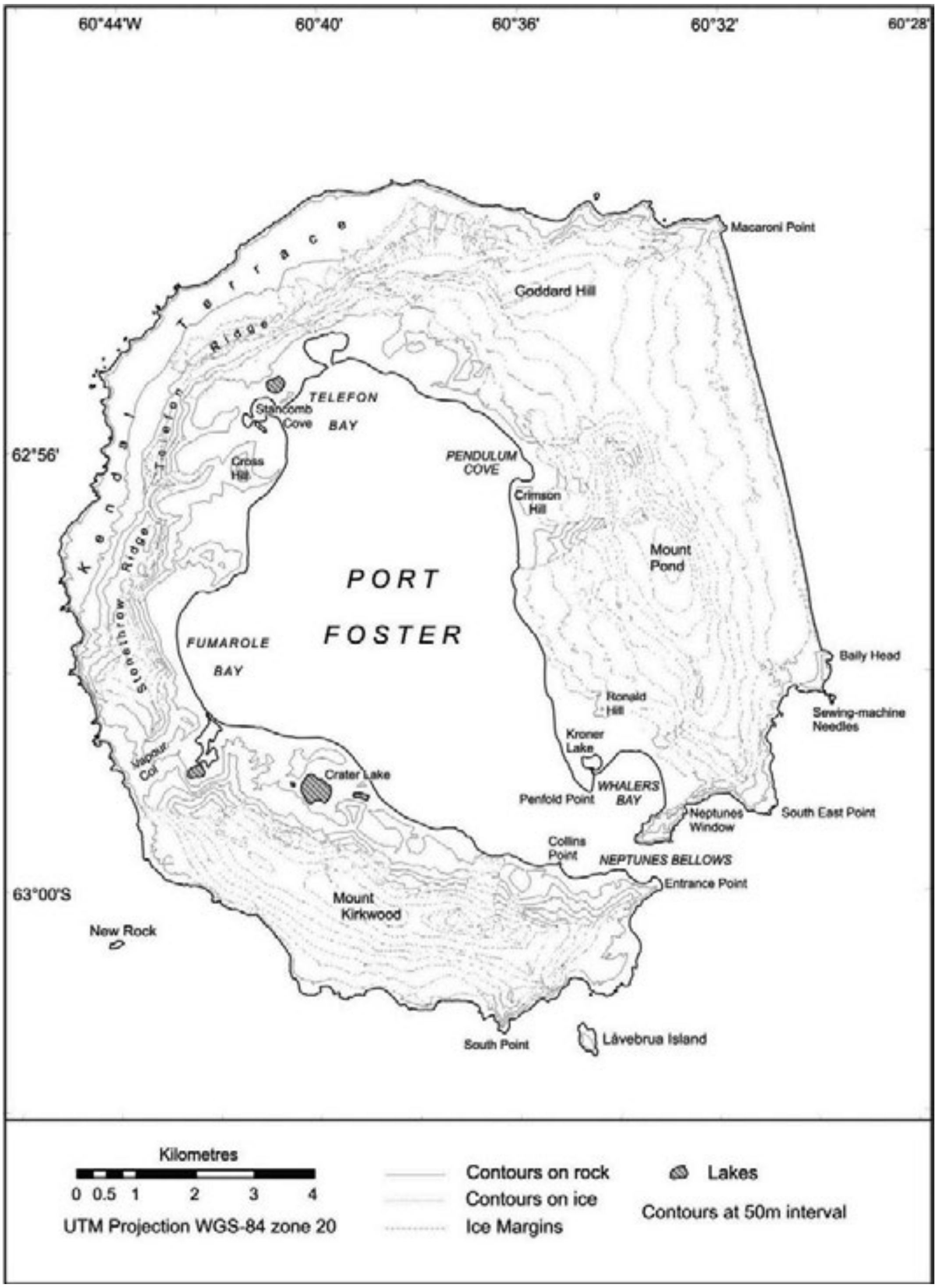
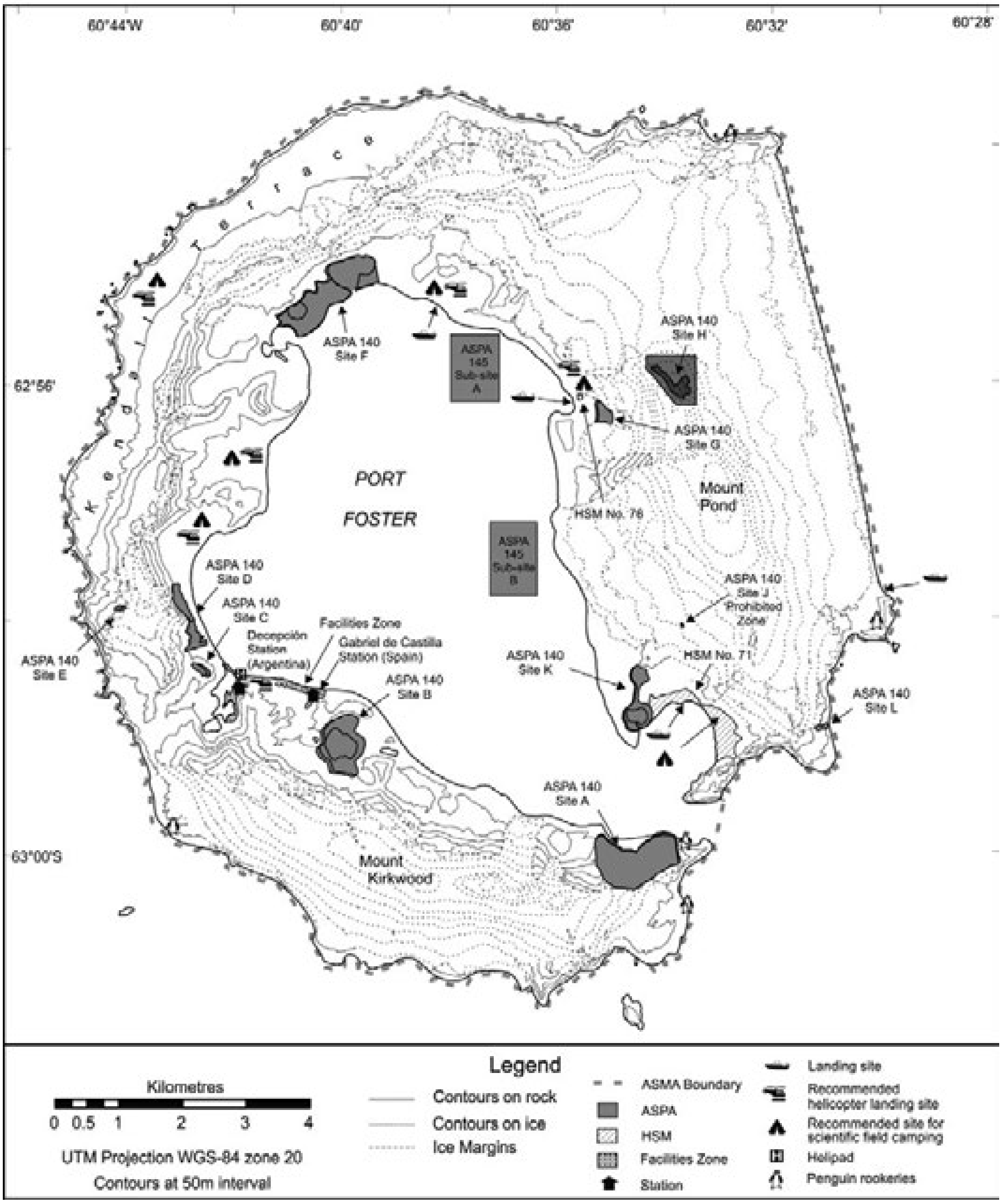


Figure 3. Deception Island Antarctic Specially Managed Area No. 4



Appendix 1: ASPA 140

Currently valid plan is available at https://documents.ats.aq/recatt/Att615_e.pdf.

Appendix 2: ASPA 145

Currently valid plan is available at
http://www.ats.aq/documents/recatt/Att284_e.pdf

Appendix 3: Whalers Bay Conservation Strategy

Conservation Strategy for Historic Site and Monument No. 71, Whalers Bay, Deception Island

1. Introduction

1.1 General background

Historic Site and Monument No 71, Whalers Bay (latitude 62° 59'S, longitude 60° 34'W), is located on Deception Island, South Shetland Islands, Antarctica.

The buildings, structures and other artefacts on the shore of Whalers Bay, which date from the period 1906-1931, represent the most significant whaling remains in the Antarctic. Other buildings, structures and artefacts of the British 'Base B' represent an important aspect of the scientific history of the area (1944-1969).

The remains of the Norwegian Hector whaling station at Whalers Bay were originally listed as Historic Site and Monument No. 71 in ATCM Measure 4 (1995) based on a proposal by Chile and Norway. The extent of the historic site was expanded in 2003 by means of ATCM Measure 3 (2003) (see Section 3).

1.2 Brief historical background (1906-1969)

During the 1906-07 austral summer, the Norwegian Captain Adolfus Andresen, founder of the *Sociedad Ballenera de Magallanes*, Chile, began whaling at Deception Island. Whalers Bay served as a sheltered anchorage for factory ships that processed whale blubber. In 1908 a cemetery was established here. The cemetery was partly buried and partly swept away during a volcanic eruption in 1969, at which time it comprised 35 graves and a memorial to ten men who were lost at sea (only one body was recovered). In 1912, a Norwegian company, *Aktieselskabet Hektor*, established the shore-based whaling station in Whalers Bay. Hektor whaling station operated until 1931.

During the 1943-44 austral summer, the UK established a permanent base (Base B) in part of the abandoned whaling station. Base B was operated as a British scientific station, latterly by the British Antarctic Survey, until 1969, when it was severely damaged by a mud and ash flow caused by a volcanic eruption, and was abandoned.

Attachment A contains further detail on the history of Whalers Bay, including a bibliography.

1.3 Aim and objectives of the conservation strategy

The overall aim of the conservation strategy is to protect the values of Whalers Bay Historic Site. The objectives are to:

- ***Maintain and preserve the cultural heritage and the historic values of the site within the constraints of natural processes.*** Minor restoration and conservation work will be considered, whilst it is recognised that natural processes will continue to cause the deterioration of buildings, structures and other artefacts over time.

- ***Prevent unnecessary human disturbance to the site, its features and artifacts***. Every effort shall be made to ensure that human activity at the site does not diminish its historic values. Any damage, removal or destruction of buildings or structures is prohibited in accordance with Article 8 (4) of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty.

- ***Permit ongoing clean up of debris*****.** Large quantities of waste are present in and around the buildings at Whalers Bay. Wind-scattered debris is present throughout the site. There is also hazardous waste present, including diesel fuel and asbestos. A major clean up of loose debris and waste, identified by conservation and environmental experts as not forming an important part of the historic remains, was undertaken in April 2004. Furthermore, a program of ongoing clean–up of debris resulting from the gradual deterioration of the structures, will be instigated. Any removal of debris must only be undertaken under the advice of a professional heritage expert, and proper documentation must be secured before such debris is removed.

- ***Educate visitors to understand, respect and care for the historic values of the site*****.** Whalers Bay Historic Site is one of the most visited sites in Antarctica. Information on the historic significance of the site, and the need to conserve its values, will be made available to visitors.

- ***Protect the natural and cultural environment of the site*****.** Whalers Bay is an integral part of the unique environment of Deception Island. Activities at the site should be undertaken in such a way that minimizes any impact on the natural and cultural environment.

2. Parties undertaking management

Chile, Norway and the UK shall consult within the wider Deception Island Management Group to ensure that the provisions of this conservation strategy are implemented and its aim is met.

3. Description of the site

The site comprises all pre-1970 remains on the shore of Whalers Bay, including those from the early whaling period (1906-12) initiated by Captain Adolfus Andresen of the *Sociedad Ballenera de Magallanes*, Chile; the remains of the Norwegian Hektor Whaling Station established in 1912 and all artefacts associated with its operation until 1931; the site of a cemetery with 35 burials and a memorial to ten men lost at sea; and the remains from the period of British scientific and mapping activity (1944-1969). The site also acknowledges and commemorates the historic value of other events that occurred there, from which nothing remains.

3.1 Site boundary

Figure 1 shows the boundary of the Whalers Bay Historic Site. It comprises most of the beach at Whalers Bay from Neptunes Window to the former BAS aircraft hangar. Boundary markers, which would detract from the aesthetic value of the site, have not been erected. Figure 1 also shows the major historic buildings and structures at the site.

3.2 Historic remains

Table 1 summarises the main buildings, facilities and other structures at the site. More detailed information about these historic structures is provided in Attachment B and their location is shown on Figure 1.

Table 1: Historic remains at the Whalers Bay Historic Site

#[6]	**Structure**	**Map 1**[7]
Whaling period		
WB1	Various remains from the whaling period at Deception Island (1906-1931), including: - Water boats and rowing boats - Wells and well head houses - Storage building - Wooden and metal barrels - Rampart dams	14

[6] Reference number is cross-referenced with the information in Attachment B.
[7] Reference to map location (Figure 1)

WB2	Cemetery (1 cross and 1 empty coffin currently visible). NB The pile of stones in front of the original cross does NOT indicate a grave, but is a new addition by visitors. One memorial cross has been moved to the site.	Cross
WB3	Magistrate's residence	3
WB4	Hospital/storage building	2
WB5	Boilers	7
WB6	Cookers and associated equipment, including: - cooking grills - driving wheel - steam winch	7
WB7	Foundation of kitchen/mess building (subsequently reused as the foundations for Priestley House) and piggery	4
WB8	Fuel storage tanks	10, 11
WB9	Half floating dock	12
WB10	Whalers Barracks (subsequently renamed Biscoe House)	5
Scientific period		
WB11	'Hunting Lodge' (UK company Hunting Aerosurveys)	9
WB12	Aircraft hangar [8]	1
WB13	Massey Ferguson tractor	6

3.3 *Natural environment*

The 1967 volcanic eruption on Deception Island resulted in the deposition of a 1-5 cm layer of ash over Whalers Bay, whilst the 1969 eruption caused a lahar (mud slide) which partly buried the site. Fragile fluvial terraces are located to the north of the whaling station which were of geological importance, although have now been naturally eroded by meltwater streams.

The immediate area to the west of the Historic Site, including Kroner Lake, the Ronald Hill crater plain and the valley connecting them, is designated as part of ASPA 140 due to its exceptional botanical and limnological importance.

Further areas of botanical importance are located within the Historic Site. These include a geothermally active scoria outcrop to the east of the whaling station, around the 'Hunting Lodge', inside the two accessible whale oil tanks, around the site of the cemetery, and on the cliffs and massive boulders at Cathedral Crags and Neptunes Window. Elsewhere, timber and iron structures, bricks and mortar, are colonised by various crustose lichens, all of which are common on natural substrata on the island.

[8] A de Havilland DHC-3 Single Otter was removed from the site in April 2004 by BAS for restoration.

Kelp gulls (*Larus dominicanus*), Wilson's storm-petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus*) and Antarctic Terns (*Sterna vittata*) breed at Whalers Bay, and Cape petrels (*Daption capensis*) nest in Cathedral Crags, overlooking the site.

4. Management of the site

4.1 Access to, and movement within, the site

All visits at the site should adhere to the adopted visitor site guidelines for Whalers Bay[9]. In addition the following should be used as guidance with respect to access to, and movement within the site:

- Motorized vehicles are only to be used within the HSM for scientific, conservation or clean-up activities (e.g. removal of waste).

- Helicopter landings, where necessary for conservation or management purposes, should only take place in the designated landing site (shown in Figure 1) to avoid dangers associated with loose debris and to prevent damaging structures or causing disturbance to wildlife.

- Field camps for scientific or management purposes should be established in the area to the east of the half floating dock as indicated in the map provided in Attachment B. The use of buildings for camping purposes is prohibited except in an emergency.

4.2 Installation, modification and removal of structures

- In accordance with Article 8 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty (1998), the historic structures, facilities and artefacts at the site are not to be damaged, removed or destroyed. Graffiti considered to be of historic importance should not be removed. New graffiti should not be added.

- Conservation and/or restoration work agreed by the Parties undertaking management may be carried out. Work on the buildings and structures may be necessary to render them safe or to prevent damage to the environment.

- No new buildings or other structures (apart from interpretative material agreed by Chile, Norway and the UK, in consultation with the

[9] The site guidelines are available at the ATS website at: https://guidelines.ats.aq/GuideLinePDF/30c44ada-60be-404c-9665-331b79c81ecf/17_Whalers_2018_e.pdf

wider Deception Island Management Group) are to be erected at the site.

- Historic remains and artefacts found at other locations on Deception Island, or elsewhere, which originate from Whalers Bay may be returned to the site after due consideration by those Parties undertaking management.

4.3 Visitor guidelines

The Visitor Site Guidelines for Whalers Bay (adopted by ATCM) applies to all visitors, including visits by commercial tour operators (IAATO and non-IAATO affiliated), private expeditions and National Antarctic Programme staff when undertaking recreational visits[10].

4.4 Information

- Information should be provided to visitors prior to landing at the site. A heritage video is available.

- Signs around the site will be assessed for removal.

- Memorial plaques (e.g. listing the names of those buried in the cemetery, or commemorating Captain Adolfus Andresen) may also be located within the site.

- Boundary markers are not considered necessary, as they would detract from the aesthetic value of the site. The boundary generally follows clearly visible natural features.

- The Parties undertaking management will disseminate further information about the significance of the historic site and the need to conserve its values.

4.5 Reporting and Recording

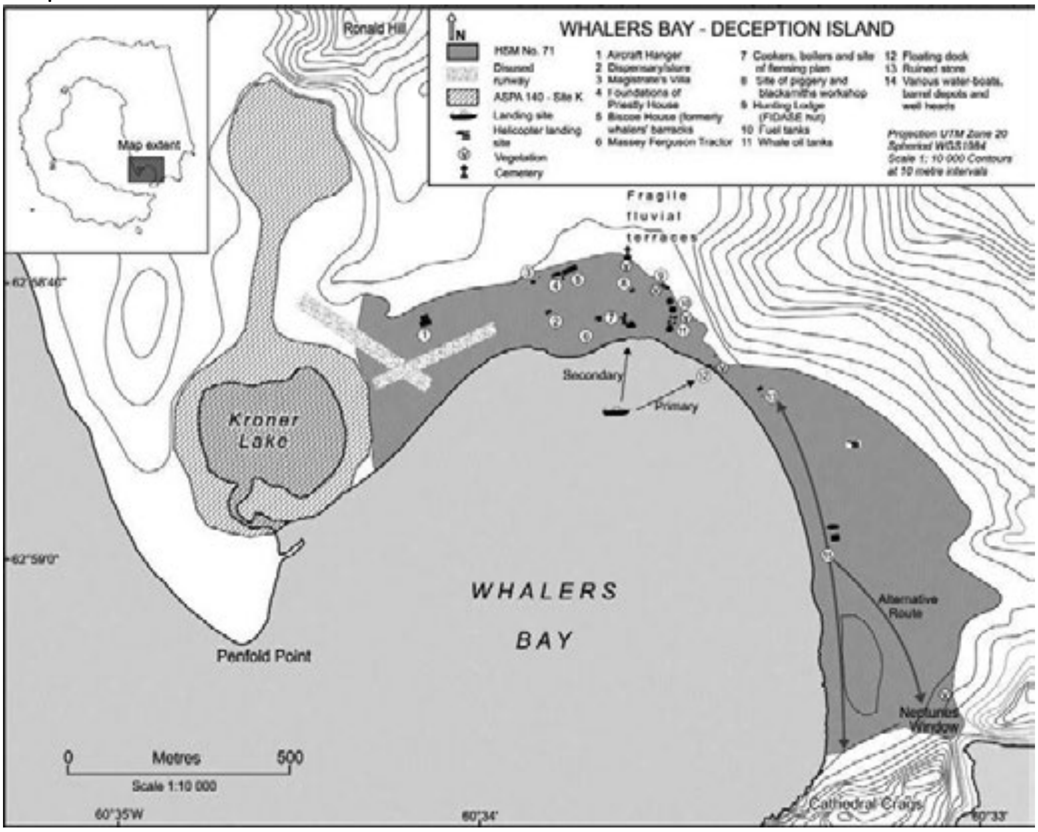
The following records are to be maintained by the Parties undertaking management:

- number of tourists landing at the site;

[10] The guidelines are available at the ATS website at https://guidelines.ats.aq/GuideLinePDF/30c44ada-60be-404c-9665-331b79c81ecf/17_Whalers_2018_e.pdf

- number of scientists and associated logistics personnel visiting the site for scientific and non-scientific purposes;
- conservation and clean-up work carried out; and
- site inspection reports, including reports and photographs on the condition of the historic remains.

Map 1



Appendix 4: Facilities Zone Code of Conduct

Code of Conduct for the Deception Island ASMA 4 Facilities Zone, including Decepción Station (Argentina) and Gabriel de Castilla Station (Spain)

1. Introduction

The Deception Island ASMA includes a Facilities Zone (Figure 1) within which is located "Decepción" Station (Argentina, Figure 2) and "Gabriel de Castilla" Station (Spain, Figure 3). Figure 1 shows the extent of the Facilities Zone, which includes the two stations, the surrounding beach area, and a small unnamed lake, to the west of Crater Lake from which freshwater is extracted. Activities within this zone are to be undertaken in line with this Code of Conduct, the aims of which are to:

- encourage the pursuit of scientific investigation on Deception Island, including the establishment and maintenance of appropriate supporting infrastructure;
- preserve the natural, scientific and cultural values of the Facilities Zone;
- safeguard the health and safety of station personnel.
- Develop all activities following the Madrid Protocol

This Code of Conduct summarises existing station procedures, a copy of which is available at Decepción and Gabriel de Castilla stations.

Staff and visitors will be made aware of the contents of this Code of Conduct during pre-deployment training programmes and briefing sessions on board ship prior to arrival at the station.

A copy of the complete Deception Island ASMA Management Package will be kept at Decepción Station and Gabriel de Castilla Station, where relevant maps and information posters about the ASMA will also be displayed.

2. Buildings and services

2.1 Buildings

- In addition to the general EIA requirements, in relation to the facilities, an EIA must be undertaken for the quarrying of rock to maintain existing buildings, in line with Annex I to the Environmental Protocol, as well as with the prior approval of the national authorities of Argentina (Decepción Station) or Spain (Gabriel de Castilla Station).

- Consideration will be given to reusing existing sites when practicable, in order to minimise disturbance.
- Buildings are to be maintained in good condition. Buildings not currently in use are to be routinely checked, and assessed for likely removal.
- Work-sites are to be kept as neat as possible.

2.2 Power Generation

- Maintain generators in good condition, and undertake routine inspections, so as to minimise emissions and possible fuel leaks.
- Ensure economy in power consumption and hence fuel usage and emissions.
- The use of renewable energy sources will be encouraged, where appropriate.

2.3 Water Supply

- Handling or disposing of wastes, fuel or other chemicals within the stations' water catchment area is prohibited.
- Use of vehicles within the water catchment area will only be for essential purposes.
- Ensure that regular tests of water quality, as well as routine cleaning of water holding tanks, are conducted.
- Regulate water consumption, so as to avoid unnecessary extraction.

3. Fuel handling

- The integrity of bulk fuel storage facilities, supply lines, pumps, reels and other fuel handling equipment will be regularly inspected.
- At both stations, fuel storage includes secondary containment. Drummed fuel should be stored inside. Storage areas should, as far as practicable, be properly ventilated, and sited away from electrical services. Storage facilities should also be sited away from accommodation facilities for safety reasons.
- All practicable measures will be undertaken to avoid fuel spills, in particular during fuel transfer (e.g. ship to shore transfer by pipeline or zodiac, refuelling day tanks).
- Any fuel, oil or lubricant spills will be reported immediately to the Station Leader, and subsequently to the National Authority.
- Ensure that adequate and sufficient spill response equipment (e.g. absorbents) is kept in a known location and available to deal with any spills.

- Station personnel will be trained in how to use spill response equipment. Training exercises will be undertaken at the beginning of each season.
- In case of fuel spills, response actions will be undertaken in line with the Oil Spill Contingency Plan held at each station.
- Oily wastes will be packaged in appropriate containers and disposed of according to station procedures.

4. Fire prevention and fire-fighting

- Signs indicating no-smoking areas, and flammable substances, will be displayed as appropriate.
- Firefighting equipment will be available at fuel storage sites and elsewhere. Such equipment will be clearly marked.

5. Waste Management

- Waste management, including waste reduction and the provision of equipment and appropriate packaging material, will be considered in the planning and conducting of all activities at Decepción and Gabriel de Castilla stations.
- All station personnel will be instructed on the provisions of Annex III to the Environmental Protocol.
- A waste management co-ordinator will be appointed at each station.
- Wastes will be segregated at source and stored safely on site prior to removal. After each summer season, wastes generated at Decepción and Gabriel de Castilla stations will be removed from the Antarctic Treaty Area.
- Rests of uncooked poultry products should be incinerated as soon as possible or stored in tight recipients in a closed room until safe evacuation to avoid their dispersion
- Regular tests of water effluents discharged into Port Foster will be undertaken.
- Any substances that may adversely affect the working of effluent treatment plants will not be disposed of through the drainage system (including toilets and wash basins).
- Cleaning up past waste disposal sites on land and abandoned work sites will be considered a priority, except where removal would result in more adverse environmental impacts than leaving the structure or waste material *in situ*.
- Personnel from both stations should periodically participate in clean-up activities within the facilities area, so as to minimise any scattered wastes around the stations.
- At the end of each summer season, activities connected to clean-up and removal of wastes will be reported to the appropriate national authority.

6. Other Operational Issues

6.1 Communications

- The installation of permanent or temporary aerials is to be carefully considered through the environmental evaluation procedures in place.
- VHF Marine Channel 16 will be monitored.
- All station personnel leaving the Facilities Zone must be equipped with a VHF radio.

6.2 Use of vehicles and small boats

- Vehicles should only be used around and between the stations when necessary.
- Keep to established tracks within the station area where practicable.
- Refuelling and servicing of vehicles will be carried out at the facilities provided for these purposes. Every effort should be made to avoid spills during refuelling and servicing.
- Do not use vehicles close to sensitive scientific equipment, across flora or near concentrations of fauna, or unnecessarily within the water-catchment area.
- Small boats operating out of Decepción or Gabriel de Castilla Station are only to be used within Port Foster, when weather conditions allow, and principally for scientific and logistic reasons. No small boats will be used outside Port Foster. Avoid the use of small boats close to cliffs and/or glaciers, to avoid rock or ice falls.
- When operating one boat, a second boat will be on stand-by, at the Station, for immediate support in an emergency.
- Small boats will be operated by at least two people. Essential equipment will include boating immersion suits, life jackets and appropriate radio links (for example, VHF radios).

6.3 Aircraft Operations

- Helicopters will generally take off from and land at the helipad at Decepción Station. Occasionally, operational reasons may require them to take off from, or land at, other appropriate locations within the Facilities Zone.
- Helicopters should avoid overflying areas with high concentrations of birds (i.e. penguin rookeries or other seabird breeding colonies) or seals.
- Aircraft operations over the area should be carried out, as a minimum requirement, in compliance with the “Guidelines for the Operation of

Aircraft near Concentrations of birds in Antarctica" contained in Resolution 2 (2004).

- The use of UAV (Unmanned Aerial Vehicles) and RPAS (Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems) around the stations should follow Resolution 4 (2018) "Environmental Guidelines for operation of Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS)1 in Antarctica", the COMNAP "*Antarctic Unmanned Aerial Systems (UAS) Operator's Handbook"*and the existing domestic legislation ,

6.4 Field travel

- All wastes from field camps, that depend on the stations Decepción and Gabriel de Castilla including human wastes (faeces, urine and grey water) will be returned to the stations or ships for safe disposal. The human and domestic liquid wastes are to be disposed in Port Foster o<u>r other coastal areas</u> below the low water mark.
- The Station Leader and/or the Station Environment Officer will brief field parties on environmental management in the field, the location of protected areas, and the provisions of the ASMA Management Plan.
- No uncooked poultry products will be used by field parties.
- All field parties will be equipped with VHF radios.
- All movements into the area shall consider, when appropriate and taking into account the particularities and level of impact already existing on Deception Island, the *SCAR Code of Conduct for Activity within Terrestrial Geothermal Environments in Antarctica*.

7. Protected Areas

- Three terrestrial sub-sites of ASPA No. 140 (Site B - Crater Lake, Site C - Caliente Hill, southern end of Fumarole Bay, and Site D - Fumarole Bay), are located close to the Facilities Zone. Station personnel will be made aware of the location of, and restrictions on access to, all protected areas on Deception Island. Information about these protected areas, including a map showing their location, will be prominently displayed at both stations.

8. Flora and fauna

- Any activity involving the taking of, or harmful interference with, native flora or fauna (as defined in Annex II to the Protocol) is prohibited unless authorised by a permit issued by the appropriate authority.
- To minimise the risk of accidental or unintentional introduction of non-native species, the 'Non-native species manual' attached to Resolution 4 (2016) should be consulted.
- An appropriate precautionary approach distance, no closer than 10 meters, is to be maintained from birds or seals present in the Facility Zone.

- Staff and visitors are to walk slowly and carefully when near wildlife, in particular avoiding birds which are nesting, moulting, crèching or returning from foraging trips. Give 'right of way' to wildlife at all times.
- Birds are not to be fed on waste food scraps from the stations. Food wastes will be secured to prevent scavenging by birds. Special attention should be paid to uncooked remains of poultry products which could transmit disease to native birds.
- The introduction of herbicides, pesticides or other harmful substances is prohibited.
- At the end of each summer season, a report on activities involving the taking of, or harmful interference with, native flora and fauna will be forwarded to the appropriate national authorities.

9. Tourist visits to the Facilities Zone

- Any visits to Decepción Station (Argentina) or Gabriel de Castilla Station (Spain) may only be undertaken at the discretion of the respective Station Leader and according to the policy of reception of visitors in stations, of each of these two countries. Contact can be made via VHF Marine Channel 16. Visits will only be allowed if they do not interfere with scientific or logistical work.
- Visits are to be undertaken in line with Recommendation XVIII-1 "Guidelines for tourism", Resolution 3 (2004) "Tourism and Non-Governmental activities", Resolution 4 (2007) "Ship-based Tourism, Resolution 7 (2009) "General Principles of Antarctic Tourism", Resolution 3 (2011) "General Guidelines for Visitors to Antarctica" and Measure 15 (2009) "Landing of Persons from Passenger vessels".[11]
- Station Leaders will co-ordinate visits to stations with Expedition Leaders.
- Visitors will be informed about the principles of this Code of Conduct, as well as the ASMA Management Plan.
- The station leader will appoint a guide (English speaking, when appropriate and possible), to escort visitors around the station, in order to ensure compliance with the measures included in this Code of Conduct.
- The national authorities operating Decepción or Gabriel de Castilla Stations will inform Antarctic Treaty Secretariat, COMNAP and IAATO in case of a significant change in the volcanic situation . The stations shall notify any ships in the area of any immediate danger. See appendix 6.

10. Co-operation and sharing of resources

- Both stations will co-ordinate and periodically conduct joint emergency evacuation, oil spill response and fire-fighting exercises.

[11] Measure 15 (2009) is not in force (as of July 2019).

Figure 1. Facilities Zone

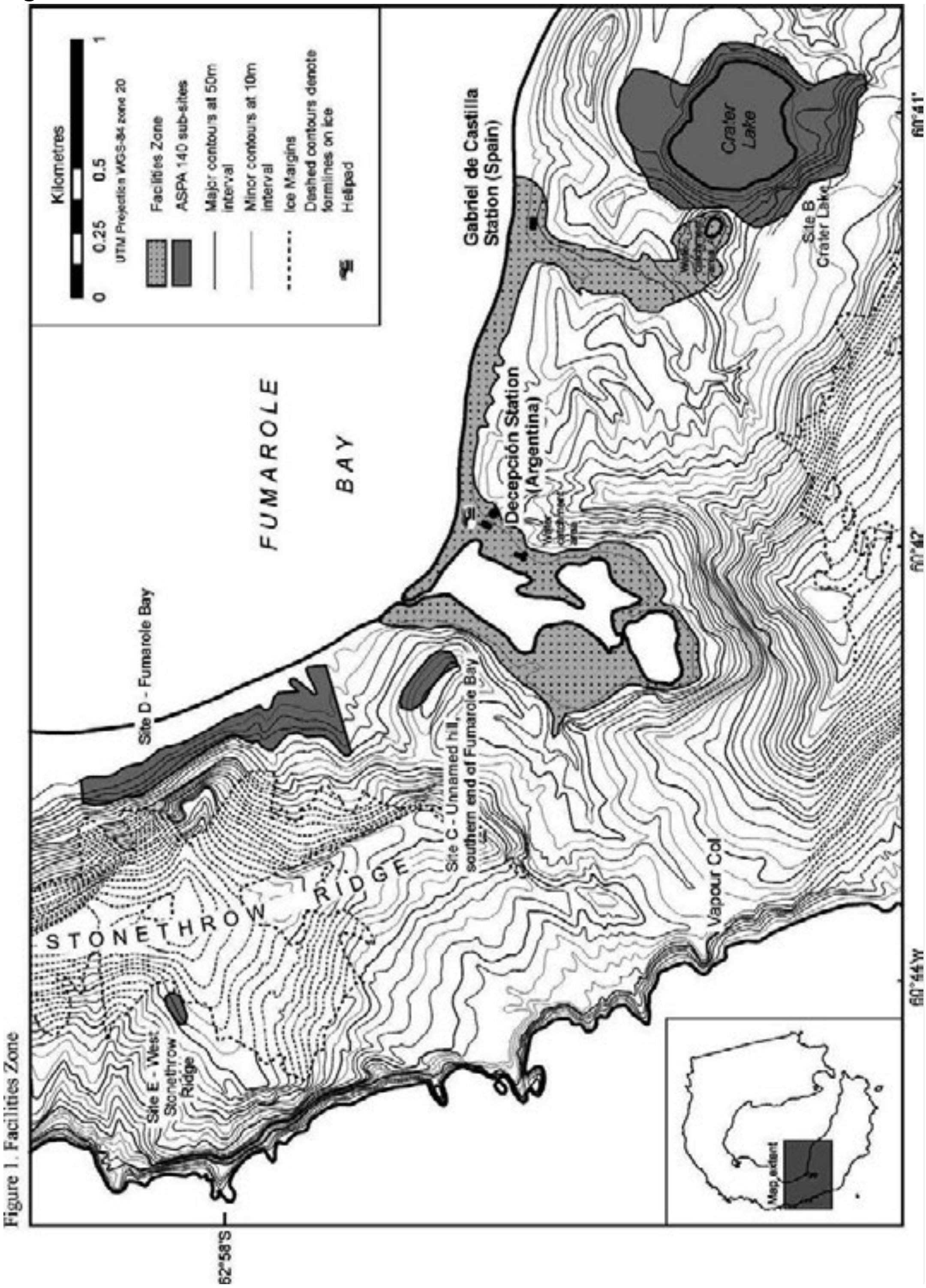


Figure 2. Argentinian Antarctic Station Decepción

Figure 3. Spanish Antarctic Base Gabriel de Castilla

Appendix 5: Visitor Sites Code of Conduct

Code of Conduct for Visitors to Deception Island

1. Introduction

This code of conduct has been produced for commercial tour operators (IAATO and non-IAATO affiliated), private expeditions and National Antarctic Programme staff when undertaking recreational visits to Deception Island.

There are four sites on Deception Island which may generally be visited: Whalers Bay, Baily Head, Pendulum Cove, and Telefon Bay (east). Stancomb Cove, in Telefon Bay, is also used as an anchorage for yachts. Visits to Decepción Station (Argentina) and Gabriel de Castilla Station (Spain) are only permitted by prior agreement with the respective Station Leaders. Tourist or recreational visits to other sites on the island are discouraged.

2. General Guidelines

The following general guidelines apply to all the above sites visited on Deception Island:

- Visits are to be undertaken in line with the Management Plan for Deception Island ASMA 4, the general guidelines for visitors to the Antarctic Resolution 3 (2011) and with Recommendation XVIII-1 "Guidelines for tourism."
- All visits must be planned and conducted taking into account the significant risk to human life and infrastructures posed by the threat of volcanic potential volcanic eruptions.
- Expedition Leaders of cruise ships and Masters of national programme support vessels are encouraged to exchange itineraries in order to avoid two ships unintentionally converging on a site simultaneously.
- Vessels and yachts approaching or departing from Port Foster must necessarily announce over VHF Marine Channel 16 the intended time and direction of passage through Neptune's Bellows.
- For commercial cruise operators, no more than 100 passengers may be ashore at a site at any time, accompanied by a minimum of one member of the expedition staff for every 20 passengers except for Baily Head where additional restrictions apply. See Appendix 9
- Clearly marked walking paths should be used instead of free walking (i.e. walking path to Vapour Col Do not walk on vegetation such as moss or lichen that sometimes can be unnoticed. The flora of Deception Island is of exceptional scientific importance. Walking on the alga *Prasiola crispa* (associated with penguin colonies) is permissible as it will not cause it any adverse disturbance.

- Maintain an appropriate distance from birds or seals which is safe and does not cause them disturbance. As a general rule, maintain a distance of 10 metres. Where practicable, keep at least 15 metres away from fur seals.
- Avoid walking along the path used by penguins between colonies and sea even when no penguins are present.
- In order to prevent biological introductions, carefully wash boots and clean clothes, bags, tripods and walking sticks before landing.
- Do not leave any litter.
- Do not take biological or geological souvenirs or disturb artefacts.
- It is strictly prohibited to write or draw graffiti on any man-made structure or natural surface or any interference on the natural landscape
- Scientific equipment is routinely deployed during the austral summer by National Antarctic Programmes at a number of locations on Deception Island. The Spanish Antarctic Programme deploys equipment for important and necessary volcanic monitoring. Such, equipment, as well as other, is highly sensitive to disturbance. At least 20 metres must be maintained from the equipment, which will be marked with a red flag. .
- Do not touch or disturb other types of scientific instruments or markers (e.g. wooden stakes marking botanical plots).
- Do not touch or disturb field depots or other equipment stored by National Antarctic Programmes.
- It is recommended not to enter in Port Foster if the state of the alert system is orange

3. Site Specific Guidelines

3.1 Whalers Bay (latitude 62°59'S, longitude 60°34'W)

Whalers Bay is the most visited site on Deception Island, and one of the most visited sites in the Antarctic. It is a small bay immediately to the east after passing into Port Foster through Neptune's Bellows. It was named by the French explorer Jean-Baptiste Charcot because of the whaling activity that took place there. The site includes the remains of the Norwegian Hektor Whaling Station, the site of the cemetery and the abandoned British 'Base B', as well as the whaling remains along the length of the beach, some of which pre-date the whaling station. Appendix 3, Conservation Strategy for Whalers Bay Historic Site and Monument No. 71, contains further information about Whalers Bay.

Visits to Whalers Bay must be undertaken in line with Visitor Site Guide for Whalers Bay (Appendix 8).

3.2 Pendulum Cove (latitude 62º56'S, longitude 60º36'W)

Pendulum Cove (see figure 1) is a small cove on the north east side of Port Foster. It was named by Henry Foster of the British Royal Naval vessel HMS *Chanticleer* who, in 1828, undertook magnetic observations there using pendulums. The gently sloping ash and cinder beach leads to the remains of the abandoned Presidente Pedro Aguirre Cerda Station (Chile), Historic Site and Monument No. 76, which was destroyed by a volcanic eruption in 1967.

Visits to Pendulum Cove must be undertaken in line with Visitor Site Guide for Pendulum Cove (Appendix 10).

3.3 Baily Head (latitude 62º58'S, longitude 60º30'W)

Baily Head (see figure 2) is a rocky headland exposed to the Bransfield Strait on the southeast coast of Deception Island. It was named after Francis Baily, the English astronomer who reported on Foster's magnetic observations at Pendulum Cove. The site comprises the southern end of a long linear beach which runs along most of the eastern side of Deception Island, and a narrow valley that rises steeply inland to a semi-circular ridgeline, giving the impression of a natural 'amphitheatre'. It is bounded to the north by a large glacier and to the south by the cliffs of Baily Head. A substantial melt-stream runs through the centre of the valley during the austral summer.

Within this unnamed valley, and to the south of it, is one of the largest colonies of chinstrap penguins (*Pygoscelis antarctica*) in Antarctica - although recent studies indicate a significant reduction of around a 50% in the population here. Brown skuas (*Catharacta antarctica lonnbergi*), cape petrels (*Daption capensis*) and snowy sheathbills (*Chionis alba*) also nest at Baily Head. Antarctic fur seals (*Arctocephalus gazella*) haul out along the beach in large numbers during the austral summer.

Visits to Baily Head must be undertaken in line with Visitor Site Guide for Baily Head (Appendix 9).

3.4 Telefon Bay (east) (latitude 62º56'S, longitude 60º40'W)

Telefon Bay (see figure 3) was named after the whaling vessel *Telefon* which was moored in the bay for repairs in 1909 by Adolfus Amandus Andresen, founder of the company Sociedad Ballenera de Magallanes. At the easternmost end of Telefon Bay a gently sloping beach leads to a shallow valley which rises sharply to the rim of an unnamed volcanic crater.

Visits to Telefon Bay must be undertaken in line with Visitor Site Guide for Telefon Bay (Appendix 7).

3.5 **Decepción Station (Argentina) and Gabriel de Castilla Station (Spain)**

Visits to Decepción Station (Argentina) and Gabriel de Castilla Station (Spain) may only be undertaken with the prior agreement of the appropriate Station Leader. Visits to the stations must be undertaken in line with the Code of Conduct for the Deception Island Facilities Zone (Appendix 4).

Appendix 6: Volcanic Alert and Escape

Alert Scheme and Escape Strategy for volcanic eruptions on Deception Island

Historical Context and Volcanic Activity

Volcanic activity in Deception Island after the formation of Port Foster caldera mostly consists of several tens of scattered eruptive vents distributed inside the caldera structure. The composition of the extruded magma mainly ranges from basaltic andesite to andesite, with some post-caldera eruptions involving also more evolved dacitic-rhyolitic magmas. Historical eruptions have been small in volume (e.g. < 0.1 km^3 of erupted magma) but the presence of Deception Island tephras in marine sediments and ice cores in the Scotia Sea and the South Pole, suggests that some recent eruptions may have been much more violent. Indeed, Deception Island's eruptions can show important degree of explosivity due to the interaction of the rising or erupting magma with water of diverse provenance (i.e., from Port Foster Bay; from the underground aquifer; melt water from the glaciers). The record of the eruptions from the 18th to the 20th centuries reveals periods of great activity with several temporally closely spaced eruptions, followed by decades of dormancy. The most recent eruptions (1967, 1969 and 1970) and unrest episodes (1992, 1999 and 2014-2015) demonstrate that the volcanic system is still active and the occurrence of a future eruption in Deception Island should be taken into account.

Between 1967 and 1970, the intense volcanic activity in Deception Island caused the destruction of the scientific stations of Chile, in Pendulum Cove, and the United Kingdom, in Whalers Bay. The intense volcanic activity changed the island's morphology; a small island was created in Port Foster which, with time, was joined to the rest of Deception Island in the Telefon Bay area. The great amount of ejected volcanic ash, rock and debris covered some of the surroundings islands, which can still be observed at Johnson Glacier on Livingston Island. An immediate consequence of the volcanic activity in 1967-1970, was the temporary end of scientific activity on the island, with only a limited number of studies looking at the post eruptive period taking place.

At present, evidences of volcanic activity on Deception Island include deformation of the volcanic edifice, thermal anomalies, and the presence of significant local seismic activity.

Deception Island has horizontal NE geodynamic deformation measured in 2 cm per year and 6 mm/year of subsidence. The deformation due to the volcanic activity has alternative expansion-elevation and compression-subsidence phases. The periods of higher volcanic activity match with expansion-elevation phases. The geothermal station at Caliente Hill shows temperatures up to 80-100º Celsius during the austral summer at 10-40 cm in depth.

Shallow seismicity at Deception Island can be related to the tectonic expansion of the Bransfield rift as well as to the local volcano dynamics. Background seismicity averages several hundred low-energy volcanic earthquakes per month. However, higher magnitude volcano-tectonic earthquakes were recorded during three particularly active surveys: 1991-1992; 1998-1999 and 2014-2015. During these periods, some earthquakes were felt by the personnel working on Gabriel de Castilla Station.

Between 31 December 1991 and 25 January 1992, the island experienced an important increase in seismic activity with up to 900 earthquakes recorded, four of which were directly felt by personnel on the island. These activities were interpreted as a reactivation process, probably due to a small intrusion located in Fumarole Bay. These periods match with expansive and subsidence periods recorded during 1991-1992 and 1995-1996 austral summer.

On 3 January 1999, a further important period of seismic-volcanic activity commenced with two earthquakes of magnitude 2.9 (January 11) and 3.4 (January 20). These seismic-volcanic activities were located between Fumarole Bay and Whalers Bay. They included volcano-tectonics quakes that liberated a significant amount of energy, the like of which had never been recorded previously. Between the austral summers of 1995-1996 and 1999-2000 the major expansion-elevation process never registered was measured from Port Foster.

Following this period of more intense seismic activity, the multi-disciplinary geophysical and geodetic studies were increased within the island. Activities included: resurveying of the geodetic net, establishing a new seismometer display, sampling of gases in the fumaroles and maintaining geomagnetic, gravimetric and bathymetric data records. An important geophysical study was performed that produced a tomography model of speed and attenuation in wave propagation, including a model to explain the relationship between the seismic activity recorded and the dynamics of the volcano. In 2012, by means of submarine and terrestrial thermometric, a new process of high volcanic activity was recorded that lasted till 2014-2015 austral summer. Between 2012 and 2015 an expansion-elevation process occurred.

During the 2014-2015 austral summer, there was an increase in the number of earthquakes recorded at Deception Island volcano. This activity followed an intense seismic swarm that occurred at SE of Livingston Island, comprising ~10,000 earthquakes with estimated magnitudes up to 4.6 between September 2014 and April 2015. The local seismic activity at Deception Island was initially located SW of the island, but during February 2015 epicentres migrated towards the caldera, increasing both in number and magnitude. This observation led to a temporal change in the volcanic alert level that was set to yellow (i.e., enhanced monitoring to corroborate the observed anomalies) on February 17th. After February 20th, the seismicity rate temporarily decreased and the alert level was set back to green. The Gabriel de Castilla Base was closed on February 24th. However, permanent seismic stations operating in the area indicate that the seismic activity continued at Deception Island at least until May 2015, with intense swarms in March and April 2015.

Alert System

Every year, for approximately four months in the austral summer, Spanish and Argentinian scientists record continuously the volcanic activity on the island (typically between the end of November and the beginning of March). These periods are also coincident with the maximum human presence on the island.

The instruments deployed on Deception Island include a local network of seismometers and seismic array, telemetric seismographs, thermometric stations, geodetic network, geothermal station at Caliente Hill and a tide station at Colatinas, maintained and recorded at Gabriel de Castilla Station. Since 2008, a permanent broadband seismic station is also operating at Deception Island.

Captains of ships entering Port Foster, and pilots of aircraft or helicopters, overflying the island, must request information about the volcanic activity recorded in the island from Gabriel de Castilla (Spain) and Decepción (Argentina) Stations on VHF Channel 16 Marine.

To communicate this information, it is considered useful to use a traffic light system that describes in a simple and accessible way, the present volcanic risk of the Deception Island volcano (Table 1).

Table 1
Alert system for volcanic eruptions in Deception Island as recommended by IAVCEI (International Association of Volcanology and Chemistry of the Earth's Interior)

Colour Code	Alert State	Description	Operative Actions
GREEN	No eruption expected	Normal volcanic parameters recorded. This is the normal island status	Control
YELLOW	Some anomalies in the volcanic system. A volcanic crisis could arise at some point in the future	There are small but significant anomalies in the volcanic parameters recorded	Control. Increase volcanic parameters recordings. Verify the parameters
ORANGE	Increased probability of a volcanic eruption in the near future	Significant increase in volcanic parameters anomalies recorded. New changes in volcanic parameters appears	Increase readiness to respond. Start preparing the evacuation plan. Recommend restricting access to the island. Recommend

			temporary evacuation of the island including ships and helicopters
RED	High probability of an imminent volcanic eruption or ongoing volcanic event	High probability of volcanic eruption confirmed with a significant change in the number of volcanic parameters anomalies	Personnel on the island to move to emergency camps or evacuate the island entirely depending on the location of the eruption. Prohibit ships and helicopters from entering the island, unless for rescue purposes.

Note: The recording and evaluation of the volcanic risk should be on-going, at least during the time the bases are operating. Volcanologists must update the state of the traffic lights system, according to the variability of the recorded volcanic parameters.

Escape strategy in case of a volcanic eruption on Deception Island

The present evacuation strategy is based in the assumption that future eruptions will be similar to those in 1967-1970 and that the volcanic activity will have a geographically limited impact in the island.

A sudden slump of the whole caldera could result in a most serious event with lethal effects for all personnel on the island. An effective evacuation under this scenario is unlikely. However, the likelihood of such event is probably low and would likely be preceded by many warning events such as an increase of ground deformation, temperature and increase in earthquake frequency and intensity for several days or weeks before the event. Nevertheless, an event could arise suddenly, without any warning signs.

If an orange state of alert is declared:

- Ships should be advised not to access Port Foster in order to reduce future evacuation problems. These measures would be temporary meanwhile orange state
- All ships should leave Port Foster immediately after taking on board all crew and passengers that are ashore
- It is recommended to take some other precautionary actions by every ship (i.e. breathing masks, abandon the main deck).

Captains and Masters of ships must take extreme caution when crossing Neptune Bellows taking into account the possibility of strong currents, Ravn rock in the middle of the narrow strait and any material that may have fallen from the steep cliffs on either side of the channel.

Although the island is small, it may be large enough to have areas where small groups may be relatively safe during a volcanic event. When considering recent eruptions on Deception Island, locations at distances from 7 to 10 kilometres from the centre of volcanic activity could be relatively safe. However, some ash fall out may be experienced over the whole island depending on the wind's direction and intensity.

It should be noted that evacuating all personnel from existing research stations could be more problematic, and have more serious consequences, than moving personnel to selected emergency camps during a volcanic event. Timely use of previously assessed emergency camp locations could reduce the risk associated with a fast and full evacuation of personnel from the island during a volcanic event.

Consequently, it is important to have selected locations *a priori* for emergency camps, taking into consideration the different possible locations of volcanic eruptions and other processes. As a general rule, different options should therefore be considered before initiating an evacuation.

General volcanic emergency kit
It is highly recommended to have in both stations volcanic emergency kits (including glasses, protective masks, helmet, and torch, etc.) for the personnel at the station and the personnel working on the island.

Evacuation routes

During a volcanic event, all interior coastal areas may be considered dangerous, because of the fall of pyroclasts, rocks and other materials and the possibility of high, fast and irregular waves produced by seiches in Port Foster,that could put in danger ships sailing or anchoring in the island's lagoon.

Before evacuation it should be understood, that evacuation routes may be over difficult terrain and that the descent to the beaches on the outer coastline of the island may be steep and difficult to follow.

In addition, because of the substantial difficulties associated with crossing glaciers (broken and slippery surfaces, sudden lahars possible), it is advisable to avoid these areas, unless the support of specialists guides and adequate equipment is provided. However, it is recognised that such support may not always be available under emergency conditions.

Although the evacuation in helicopters might be possible before the onset eruption, it should be taken into account that external beaches are steep and narrow, with large boulders and are adjacent to deep waters with large waves that are often present even under good weather conditions. Some beaches (for example near Punta de la Descubierta) have submerged rocks which may be dangerous for small boats.

If the eruption has not started and the weather is good, it could be possible to try helicopter evacuation from some locations around Port Foster, although helicopters working in any evacuation must avoid flying through volcanic clouds, because the fall of pyroclasts and ash could damage their engines. These factors increase the danger of evacuation from Port Foster beaches, and it should be considered likely that evacuations may only be possible from external beaches or from some specific areas that could allow safe helicopters operation

To estimate the likely difficulties that could be encountered by evacuating personnel, the recommended evacuation routes should be regularly checked by station personnel to assess their availability. Previous inspections indicate that only three of the island's external beaches are available during bad weather: north side of Kendall Terrace, Macaroni Point and Baily Head, depending on the location and type of the eruption. All of the other beaches identified were rocky and with access available only with helicopters. The route toward Punta de la Descubierta could be used, but only when the tide is very low.

As a result of these studies the main available evacuation routes are:

- From the facilities zone (Gabriel de Castilla, Decepcion Stations) toward De la Descubierta Point (1)
- From the facilities zone towards Entrance Point (the proposed route would entail evacuation from the beach) (2)
- From the facilities zone towards Entrance Point (helicopter extraction) (2)
- From Whalers Bay towards Baily Head (3)
- From the facilities zone towards Kendall Terrace (through the Pass at 168 m altitude above Telefon Bay) (4)
- From the facilities zone towards Kendall Terrace (through the Pass at 158 m altitude near Obsidians) (5)
- From the facilities zone towards Extremadura Cove beach to Kendall Terrace (6)

Table 2 includes details of the evacuation routes, including distance, height gain and estimated journey time.

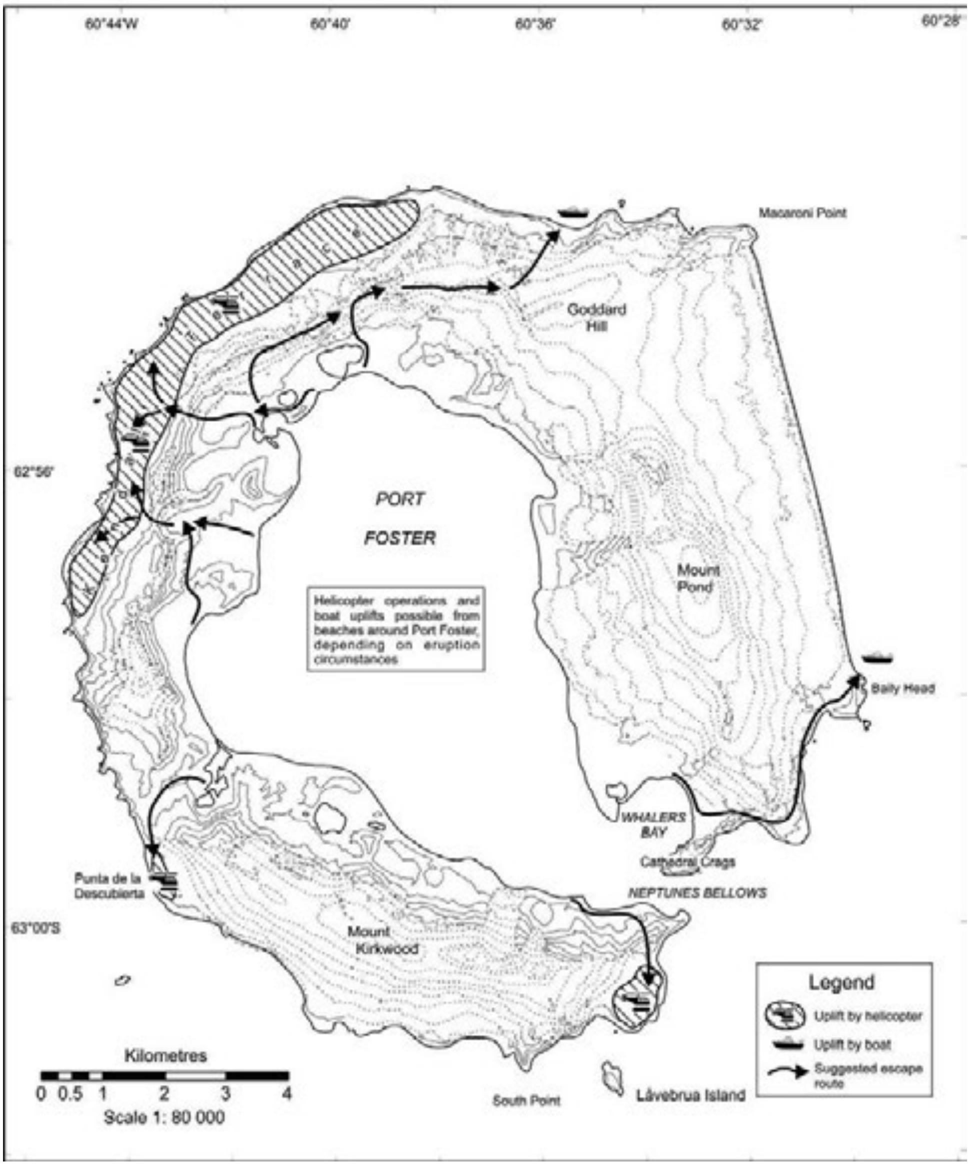
Table 2. Evacuation routes

Evacuation route	Total distances	Maximum altitude[12]	Estimated time
Facilities zone to Punta de la Descubierta (Figure 2)	**3920 m**	**130 m in Espolon**	**1 hours 11 minutes**
Facilities zone to Entrance Point (beach extraction area);	**6800m**	**180 in Espolon**	**2 hours 9 minutes**
Facilities zone to Entrance Point (helicopter extraction area)	**7237 m**	**172 m**	**2 hours**

[12] The given altitudes refer to the highest point of the route.

Whalers Bay to Baily Head	**3954 m**	**295 m in Collado crossing**	**1 hour 37 minutes**
Facilities zone to Kendall Terrace (by Collado crossing 168 of Telefon Bay)	**9400 m**	**168 m in Collado**	**2 hours 31 minutes**
Facilities zone to Kendall Terrace (by Collado crossing 158 in Obsidianas)	**6400 m**	**169 m in Collado**	**1 hour 46 minutes**
Extremadura Cove to Kendall Terrace	**5980 m**	**180 m Vaguada crossing**	**1 hour 30 minutes**

Figure 1. Suggested escape routes on Deception Island during a volcanic crisis corresponding to no more than a code orange alert state.



Appendix 7: Visitor Site Guide: Telefon Bay

Current guidelines at https://guidelines.ats.aq/GuideLinePDF/37dd76bd-0441-4276-aed0-39223d6caf87/20_Telefon_2019_e.pdf

Appendix 8: Visitor Site Guide: Whalers Bay

Current guidelines at https://guidelines.ats.aq/GuideLinePDF/30c44ada-60be-404c-9665-331b79c81ecf/17_Whalers_2018_e.pdf

Appendix 9: Visitor Site Guide: Baily Head

Current guidelines at https://guidelines.ats.aq/GuideLinePDF/b509e543-a156-4ac7-a824-c2503b2a3d85/19_Baily_2018_e.pdf

Appendix 10: Visitor Site Guide: Pendulum Cove

Current guidelines at https://guidelines.ats.aq/GuideLinePDF/1f36044a-88e6-4ac3-a10b-c764d1981949/35_Pendulum_2018_e.pdf

Measure 11 (2019)

Antarctic Specially Managed Area No 7 (Southwest Anvers Island and Palmer Basin): Revised Management Plan

The Representatives,

Recalling Articles 4, 5 and 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty, providing for the designation of Antarctic Specially Managed Areas ("ASMA") and the approval of Management Plans for those Areas;

Recalling

- Measure 1 (2008), which designated Southwest Anvers Island and Palmer Basin as Antarctic Specially Managed Area No 7 and annexed a Management Plan for the Area;
- Measures 2 (2009) and 14 (2010), which adopted revised Management Plans for ASMA 7;

Noting that the Committee for Environmental Protection ("CEP") has endorsed a revised Management Plan for ASMA 7;

Noting Measure 6 (2014) concerning Antarctic Specially Protected Area ("ASPA") No 139 (Biscoe Point, Anvers Island), which is located within ASMA 7;

Desiring to replace the existing Management Plan for ASMA 7 with the revised Management Plan;

Recommend the following Measure for approval in accordance with paragraph 1 of Article 6 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty:

That:

1. the revised Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Managed Area No 7 (Southwest Anvers Island and Palmer Basin), which is annexed to this Measure, be approved; and
2. the Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Managed Area No 7 annexed to Measure 14 (2010) be revoked.

Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Managed Area No. 7

SOUTHWEST ANVERS ISLAND AND PALMER BASIN

Introduction

The region that includes southwest Anvers Island, the Palmer Basin and its fringing island groups has a wide range of important natural, scientific and educational values and is an area of considerable and increasing scientific, tourist and logistic activities. The importance of these values and the need to provide an effective means to manage the range of activities was recognised with adoption of the area as a Multiple-Use Planning Area for voluntary observance at the XVIth Antarctic Treaty Consultative Meeting (1991). With the acquisition of new data and information and changes to logistics and the pressures arising from human activities in the region, the original plan was comprehensively revised and updated to meet current needs as an Antarctic Specially Managed Area (ASMA) in 2008. The present plan remains consistent with that adopted in 2008, although has been brought up to date and restructured for consistency with other ASMA plans more recently adopted by the Antarctic Treaty Parties. Minor adjustments have been made to simplify the boundary near the Rosenthal Islands and to reflect changes in the ice coastline, such that the Area now encompasses 3238 km^2.

In particular, scientific research being undertaken within the Area is important for considering ecosystem interactions and long-term environmental changes in the region, and how these relate to Antarctica and the global environment more generally. This research is important to the work of the Committee for Environmental Protection, the Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources (CCAMLR) and the Antarctic Treaty System as a whole. There is a risk that these globally important research programs and long-term datasets could be compromised if activities were to occur in the marine area that were not appropriately managed to avoid potential conflicts and possible interference. While marine harvesting activities are not currently being conducted within the Area, and the marine component of the Area represents only 0.5% of CCAMLR Subarea 48.1, it is important that should harvesting be undertaken within the Area then it should be carried out in such a way that it would not impact on the important scientific and other values present within the Area.

Antarctic Specially Protected Area (ASPA) No. 113 Litchfield Island and ASPA No. 139 Biscoe Point lie within the Area. Antarctic Important Bird Areas (IBAs) Nos. 085 Cormorant Island, 086 Litchfield Island, 087 Joubin Islands and 088 Rosenthal Islands have been identified within the Area. The Area is situated within Environment B – Antarctic Peninsula mid-northern latitudes geologic and Environment E – Antarctic Peninsula, Alexander and other islands, based on the Environmental Domains Analysis for Antarctica (Resolution 3 (2008)). Areas of ice-free ground classified as Region 3 – Northwest Antarctic Peninsula under the Antarctic Conservation Biogeographic Regions classification (Resolution 3 (2017)) lie within the Area.

1. Values to be protected and activities to be managed

- *Scientific values*

The diverse and easily accessible assemblages of marine and terrestrial flora and fauna in the southwest Anvers Island and Palmer Basin area are particularly valuable for science, with some datasets spanning more than 100 years and intensive scientific interest beginning in the 1950s. Studies have been carried out on a wide variety of topics, including long-term monitoring of seal and bird populations, surveys of plants and animals in both the terrestrial and sub-tidal environments, investigations of the physiology and biochemistry of birds, seals, terrestrial invertebrates and zooplankton, the behavior and ecology of planktonic marine species, physical oceanography, and marine sedimentology and geomorphology. While the United States maintains the only permanent research station within the Area, research in these fields has been undertaken by scientists from a broad range of Antarctic Treaty Parties, often as collaborative projects with scientists from the United States. Some important examples from the Palmer Long Term Ecological Research (PAL-LTER) program (https://pal.lternet.edu) are described below.

The southwest Anvers Island and Palmer Basin area has exceptional importance for long-term studies of the natural variability in Antarctic ecosystems, the impact of world-wide human activities on Antarctica and on the physiology, populations and behaviour of its plants and animals. Research in this region is essential for understanding the linkages among avifauna, krill dynamics and the changing marine habitat.

In particular, the United States Antarctic Program has a major and ongoing commitment to ecosystem research in the Antarctic Peninsula region, which was formalized through the designation in 1990 of the area around Palmer Station (United States) as a Long Term Ecological Research (LTER) site. The PAL-LTER site is part of a wider network of LTER sites, and one of only two in the Antarctic, designed specifically to address important research questions related to environmental change over a sustained period spanning more than several decades. Since 1991, the PAL-LTER program has included spatial sampling during annual and seasonal cruises within a large-scale (200,000 km^2) regional grid west of the Antarctic Peninsula, as well as temporal sampling from October to April in the local area adjacent to Palmer Station. The PAL-LTER and the British Antarctic Survey (BAS) are collaborating on research comparing the marine ecosystem in the Palmer Basin region with that in Marguerite Bay approximately 400 km further to the south. In the Palmer region, the ecosystem is changing in response to the rapid regional warming first documented by BAS scientists. In addition, collaboration has been established as part of the International Polar Year with scientists from France and Australia using metagenomic tools to understand microbial community adaptations to the polar winter.

A major theme in the PAL-LTER is the study of sea-ice dynamics and related impacts on all aspects of the ecosystem (Smith *et al*. 1995). The annual advance and retreat of sea-ice is a major physical determinant of spatial and temporal changes in the structure and function of the Antarctic marine ecosystem, from total and annual primary production to breeding success in seabirds. The Western Antarctic Peninsula is a premier example of a region experiencing major changes in species abundance, range and distribution, in response to regional climate change. This change is manifested primarily as a southern migration of regional climate characteristics (Smith *et al*. 1999, 2001). Paleoecological records on sea-ice, diatom stratigraphy and penguin colonization have also placed the current LTER data into a longer-term context (Smith *et al*. 1999, 2001). In particular, the Palmer Basin has been the site of extensive paleoecological and climate change studies. The Palmer Basin also exhibits a variety of geomorphological features of value.

Extensive seabird research has focused on the ecology of Adélie penguins and their avian predators and scavengers within the inshore 50 km^2 PAL-LTER grid close to Palmer Station. Colonies on 18 islands in this area are visited every 2-7 days in the summer season, and three more distant control sites within the ASMA are also visited infrequently to assess the extent of possible disturbance from activities around Palmer Station. Sea ice forms a critical winter habitat for Adélie penguins, and interdisciplinary research has focused on the impacts of changes in the frequency, timing and duration of sea-ice on the life histories of this and other bird species, as well as on prey populations.

Torgersen Island has been the subject of study on the impacts of tourism, and has been divided into two areas, one open to visitors and the other closed as a site for scientific reference. This site together with other nearby islands not visited by tourists provide a unique experimental setting to examine the relative effects of natural versus human-induced variability on Adélie penguin populations. The long-term data sets obtained from this site are of particular value in understanding the impacts of tourism on birds.

The southwest Anvers Island and Palmer Basin region also hold particular scientific interest in terms of newly-exposed terrestrial areas that have been subject to vegetation colonization after glacial retreat. With continuing trends of glacial retreat, these areas are likely to be of increasing scientific value.

Seismic monitoring at Palmer Station contributes to a global network, and the remote location of the station also makes it a valuable site for long-term monitoring of global levels of radionuclides.

It is important that the region is carefully managed so that these scientific values can be maintained, and the results of the long-term research programs are not compromised.

- *Flora and fauna values*

The southwest Anvers Island and Palmer Basin region is one of the most biologically diverse in Antarctica, with numerous species of bryophytes, lichens, birds, marine mammals and invertebrates (Appendix F). These organisms are dependent on both the marine and terrestrial ecosystems for food and habitat requirements, with the Palmer Basin exerting a substantial influence on regional ecological processes.

Breeding colonies of birds and seals are present on ice-free areas along the coast of Anvers Island, as well as on many of the offshore islands within the region. Eleven species of birds breed in the Area, with Adélie penguins (*Pygoscelis adeliae*) the most abundant, and several other species are frequent non-breeding visitors. Five species of seals are commonly found in the Area, but are not known to breed there. Palmer Basin is an important foraging area for birds, seals and cetaceans.

The two native Antarctic vascular plants, *Deschampsia antarctica* and *Colobanthus quitensis*, are commonly found on surfaces with fine soil in the area around Arthur Harbor, although they are relatively rare along the Antarctic Peninsula (Komárková *et al.* 1985). The vascular plant communities found at Biscoe Point (ASPA No. 139) are some of the largest and most extensive in the Anvers Island region, and are particularly abundant for such a southerly location. Dense communities of mosses and lichens are also found on Litchfield Island (ASPA No. 113) – a site specially protected for exceptional vegetation values – and at several other locations around Arthur Harbor such as Norsel Point and Cormorant, Hermit and Limitrophe islands. Some of these sites have been heavily damaged by Antarctic fur seal (*Arctocephalus gazella*) and Elephant seal (*Mirounga leonina*) activity, which has increased over the past 20 years.

The soils and plant communities provide an important habitat for invertebrates, and the ice-free islands and promontories close to Palmer Station are particularly valuable for their abundant populations of the endemic wingless midge *Belgica antarctica*, the southernmost, free-living true insect. This is also of significant value for scientific studies, since this species has not been found to the same extent close to other research stations on the Antarctic Peninsula.

- *Educational and visitor values*

The southwest Anvers Island area holds a special attraction to tourists because of its biological diversity, accessibility and the presence of Palmer Station. These features offer tourists the opportunity to observe wildlife, and gain an appreciation of Antarctic environments and scientific operations. Outreach to tourists via local tours and shipboard lectures is a valuable educational tool, and information is also made available to school students in the United States by initiatives through the Palmer science community.

2. Aims and objectives

The aim of this Management Plan is to conserve and protect the unique and outstanding environment of the southwest Anvers Island and Palmer Basin region by managing the variety of activities and interests in the Area. The Area requires special management to ensure that these important values are protected and sustained in the long-term, especially the extensive scientific data sets collected. Increasing human activity and potentially conflicting interests have made it necessary to manage and coordinate activities more effectively within the Area.

The specific objectives of management in the Palmer Basin region are to:

- Facilitate scientific research while maintaining stewardship of the environment;
- Assist with the planning and coordination of human activities in the region to manage actual or potential conflicts among different values (including those of different scientific disciplines), activities and operators;
- Ensure that any marine harvesting activities are coordinated with scientific research and other activities taking place within the Area. This coordination could include the development of a plan for harvesting within the Area in advance of any such activities taking place.
- Ensure the long-term protection of scientific, ecological, and other values of the Area by minimizing disturbance to or degradation of these values, including disturbance to natural features and fauna and flora, and by minimizing the cumulative environmental impacts of human activities;
- Prevent the unintended introduction of species not native to the Area, and minimize as far as practicable the unintended transfer of native species within the Area;
- Minimize the footprint of all facilities and scientific experiments established in the Area, including the proliferation of field camps and boat landing sites;
- Minimize any physical disturbance, contamination and wastes produced within the Area, and take all practical steps to contain, treat, remove or remediate these whether produced in the course of normal activities or by accident;
- Promote use of energy systems and modes of transport within the Area that have the least environmental impact, and minimize as far as practicable the use of fossil fuels for the conduct of activities within the Area;
- Improve the understanding of natural processes and human impacts in the Area, including through the conduct of monitoring programs; and
- Encourage communication and co-operation between users of the Area, in particular through dissemination of information on the Area and the provisions that apply.

3. Management activities

To achieve the aims and objectives of this Management Plan, the following management activities are to be undertaken:

- National Programs operating within the Area should establish a Southwest Anvers Island and Palmer Basin Management Group to oversee coordination of activities in the ASMA. The Management Group is established to:
  - facilitate and ensure effective communication among those working in or visiting the Area;
  - provide a forum to resolve any actual or potential conflicts in use;
  - help minimize the duplication of activities;
  - maintain a record of activities and, where practical, impacts in the Area;
  - develop strategies to detect and address cumulative impacts;
  - disseminate information on the Area, in particular on the activities occurring and the management measures that apply within the Area; including through maintaining this information electronically;
  - review past, existing, and future activities and evaluate the effectiveness of management activities; and
  - make recommendations on the implementation of this Management Plan.
- National Programs operating within the Area shall maintain copies of the current version of the management plan and supporting documentation in appropriate stations and research hut facilities and make these available to all persons in the Area, as well as electronically;
- National Programs operating within the Area and tour operators visiting should ensure that their personnel (including staff, crew, passengers, scientists and any other visitors) are briefed on, and are aware of, the requirements of this Management Plan, and in particular the Environmental (Appendix A), Scientific (Appendix B), and Non-Governmental Visitor (Appendix C) Guidelines, and guidelines for specific zones (Appendices D and E) that apply within the Area;
- Tour operators and any other group or person responsible for planning and / or conducting non-governmental activities within the Area should coordinate their activities with National Programs operating in the Area in advance to ensure they do not pose risks to the values of the Area and that they comply with the requirements of the Management Plan;
- The United States Antarctic Program determines annually the number of tourist vessel visits to Palmer Station (approximately 12 per season) through a pre-season scheduling and approval process;
- National Programs operating within the Area should seek to develop best practices with a view to achieving the objectives of the Management Plan, and to exchange freely such knowledge and information;
- Signs and / or markers should be installed where necessary and appropriate to show the location or boundaries of ASPAs, zones, research sites, landing sites and / or campsites within the Area. Signs and markers should be

installed on a case-by-case basis and re-evaluated periodically. They should be informative and obvious, yet unobtrusive. Signs and markers shall be secured and maintained in good condition, and removed when no longer necessary;

- Visits shall be made as necessary (no less than once every five years) to evaluate whether the Management Plan is effective and to ensure management measures are adequate. The Management Plan, Code of Conduct and Guidelines shall be revised and updated as necessary; and
- National Programs operating within the Area shall take such steps as are necessary and practical to ensure the requirements of the Management Plan are observed.

4. Period of Designation

Designated for an indefinite period.

5. Maps and photographs

Table 1: List of Management Plan maps.

Map	Title	Source Scale	Estimated Error (+/- m)
Overviews			
Map 1	Regional map and ASMA boundary	1:400,000	100
Map 2	Rosenthal, Joubin and Dream Islands Restricted Zones	1:130,000	100
Map 3	Arthur Harbor & Palmer Station access	1:45,000	2
Operations Zone			
Map 4	Palmer Station Operations Zone	1:4000	1
Restricted Zones			
Map 5	Norsel Point	1:5000	1
Map 6	Humble Island	1:2500	1
Map 7	Elephant Rocks	1:2500	1
Map 8	Torgersen Island (Restricted Zone & Visitor Zone)	1:2500	1
Map 9	Bonaparte Point / Kristie Cove	1:2500	1
Map 10	Shortcut Island / Shortcut Point	1:5000	1
Map 11	Christine Island	1:5000	1
Map 12	Hermit Island	1:7000	1
Map 13	Laggard Island	1:5000	1
Map 14	Limitrophe Island	1:5000	1

Map	Title	Source Scale	Estimated Error (+/- m)
Map 15	Stepping Stones	1:2500	1
Map 16	Cormorant Island	1:5000	1
Map 17	Dream Island	1:5000	2
Map 18	Joubin Islands	1:50,000	10
Map 19	Rosenthal Islands	1:50,000	10
Visitor Zone			
Map 8	Torgersen Island (Visitor Zone & Restricted Zone)	1:2500	1

6. Description of the Area

6 (i) Geographical coordinates, boundary markers, and natural features

- *General description*

Anvers Island is the largest and most southerly island in the Palmer Archipelago, located approximately 25 km west of the Antarctic Peninsula. It is bounded by Neumayer Channel and Gerlache Strait in the southeast and Bismarck Strait to the south (Map 1). Anvers Island is heavily glaciated, the southwestern half being dominated by the Marr Ice Piedmont, a broad expanse of permanent ice rising gently from the coast to around 1000 m elevation. The southern and western coastlines of Anvers Island within the Area comprise mainly ice cliffs on the edge of the Marr Ice Piedmont, punctuated by small rocky outcrops, ice-free promontories and numerous small near-shore islands. Other prominent land features within the Area include ice-free Cape Monaco at the southwestern extremity of Anvers Island, and Cape Lancaster in the southeast. These ice-free areas form important sites for animal and plant colonisation.

Six main island groups exist within the Area: in the north are the Rosenthal Islands (~22 km NW of Palmer Station). Fringing the Palmer Basin are the Joubin Islands, the Arthur Harbor island group (location of Palmer Station), the Wauwermans Islands, the Dannebrog Islands and the Vedel Islands. These island groups are of low relief, generally of less than 100 m in elevation, although local topography can be rocky and rugged together with small relict ice-caps.

Palmer Station (United States) (64°03.25'W, 64°46.45'S) is located within Arthur Harbor on Gamage Point, an ice-free promontory on the southwestern coast of Anvers Island at the edge of the Marr Ice Piedmont (Maps 3 & 4).

There are three dominant marine features in the Palmer Basin region:

1. Shallow shelves: extend from Anvers Island and the adjacent island groups to depths of 90-140 m.
2. Bismarck Strait: located south of Palmer Station and north of the Wauwermans Islands on an east–west axis, with depths generally between 360 to 600 m, connecting the southern entrances to Gerlache Strait and Neumayer Channel to Palmer Basin.
3. Palmer Basin: the only deep basin in the area, located 22 km southwest of Palmer Station and with a maximum depth of ~1400 m. It is bordered by the Joubin Islands to the north, the Wauwermans Islands to the east, and the Dannebrog and Vedel island groups in the southeast, and is surrounded by shelves shallower than 165 m. A channel of ~460 m depth connects Palmer Basin to the continental shelf edge west of the Area.

- *Boundaries of the Area*

The Southwest Anvers Island and Palmer Basin ASMA encompasses an area of approximately 3238 km^2, including both terrestrial and marine components. For ease of navigation, the boundaries of the Area follow geographic features where practical and latitude/longitude lines in open ocean areas remote from prominent land features. The northeastern boundary of the Area is defined as a line extending parallel to and approximately one kilometer inland from the southwest Anvers Island coastline. This terrestrial boundary extends from a northerly location at 64° 06'W, 64° 33'S, ~3.1 km north of Gerlache Island, to 63° 42.2'W, 64° 51.35'S at Cape Lancaster in the south. From Cape Lancaster, the eastern boundary is defined as the 63° 42.2'W line of longitude extending 7.9 km across Bismarck Strait to 64° 55.6'S on Wednesday Island, the most easterly of the Wauwermans Islands. The boundary then follows a general southwesterly direction to 64° 14.37'W, 65° 08.55'S, at the southern extremity of the Vedel Islands, following the eastern coastlines of the Wauwermans, Dannebrog and Vedel island groups. The southern boundary of the area is defined as the 65° 08.55'S line of latitude extending due west from 64° 14.37'W in the Vedel Islands to 65° 00'W.

The northern boundary is defined as the line of latitude extending from 64° 06'W, 64° 33'S to the coast (~3.1 km north of Gerlache Island) and thence due west to the 65° 00'W line of longitude. The western boundary of the Area is defined as the 65° 00'W line of longitude, extending between 64° 33'S in the north and 65° 08.55'S in the south.

The boundaries of the Area have been designed to include areas of high ecological value while also maintaining a practical configuration for ease of use and navigation. The original Multiple-use Planning Area boundary has been extended northwards to include the Rosenthal Islands, which contain several large colonies of chinstrap and gentoo penguins that may function as source populations for other colonies in the southwest Anvers Island region (W. Fraser *pers. comm.* 2006). The original boundary has also been extended westwards and southwards to include the full extent of the

Palmer Basin, because of the biological, paleoecological and oceanographic importance of this feature.

The extensive ice fields on the Marr Ice Piedmont are excluded because they do not possess values related to the core objectives of the management plan. The boundary encompasses all ice-free coastal areas, the Palmer Basin which plays a key role in regional ecosystem processes, and the nearby associated island groups, which are biologically important and also the focus of most human activity in the region.

- *Climate*

The western Antarctic Peninsula is experiencing the most rapid warming of any marine ecosystem on the planet (Ducklow *et al.* 2007). Between 1974-96 the mean annual temperature at Palmer Station was –2.29° C, with an average monthly air temperature in August of –7.76° C and in January 2.51° C (Baker 1996). Between 2010-17 the mean annual temperature at Palmer Station was –1.8° C, with an average monthly air temperature in August of –5.94° C, and in January 1.72° C. The maximum temperature recorded April 1989 through October 2018 was +11.6° C on 08 March 2010, while the minimum was -26.0° C on 24 August 1995. Data from Faraday / Vernadsky Station 53 km to the south demonstrate a statistically significant trend of annual average temperature rise, from –5.4º in 1951 to –2.5º in 2001, an average rate of 0.058º C per annum (Smith *et al.* 2003). Storms and precipitation are frequent, with an annual average of approximately 636 mm water equivalent of precipitation received in the form of snow and rain, with an average annual snowfall depth of 344 cm. Winds are persistent but generally light to moderate in strength (~10-11 knots on average), prevailing from the northeast.

- *Glaciology, geology and geomorphology*

The dominant glacial feature within the Area is the Marr Ice Piedmont. Smaller glaciers and ice-caps are found on many of the islands and promontories, the largest of which is located on Gerlache Island in the Rosenthal Islands (Map 2). Recent observations show the local glaciers to be retreating by approximately 10 m annually, with a number of ice-bridges between the Marr Ice Piedmont and offshore islands having collapsed.

Anvers Island and the numerous small islands and rocky peninsulas along its southwestern coast are composed of late-Cretaceous to early-Tertiary age granitic and volcanic rocks belonging to the Andean Intrusive Suite. These rocks dominate the Anvers Island area (Hooper 1962) and similar rock types extend into the island groups further south.

The main marine geomorphological feature within the Area is Palmer Basin, an erosional, inner-shelf trough located at the convergence of former ice-flows that once drained across the continental shelf from three distinct accumulation centers on the Antarctic Peninsula and Anvers Island (Domack *et al.* 2006). Seafloor features include relict terraces, sub-glacial lake deltas, channels, debris slopes and morainal banks. These remain as evidence of the development of a sub-glacial lake within the Palmer Basin during, or prior, to the last glacial maximum, its subsequent drainage, and the recession of the Palmer Basin ice stream system (Domack *et al*. 2006).

- *Freshwater habitat*

Throughout the Area there are no significant lakes or streams, although there are numerous small ponds and temporary summer melt streams (Lewis Smith 1996). These are mainly on Norsel Point and some of the offshore islands in Arthur Harbor: notably on Humble Island, and also found on Breaker, Shortcut, Laggard, Litchfield and Hermit islands, and at Biscoe Point (W. Fraser, *pers. comm.* 2006), although many are heavily contaminated by neighboring penguin colonies and groups of non-breeding skuas. The streams possess few biota other than marginal mosses (e.g. *Brachythecium austrosalebrosum*, *Sanionia uncinata*), which are a favored habitat for the larvae of the Antarctic wingless midge, *Belgica antarctica*. However, the ponds support a diverse micro-algal and cyanobacterial flora, with over 100 taxa being recorded, although numbers vary considerably between ponds (Parker & Samsel 1972). Of the freshwater fauna there are numerous species of protozoans, tardigrades, rotifers, and nematodes, and a few free-swimming crustaceans of which the anostracan *Branchinecta gaini* (Antarctic fairy shrimp) and copepods *Parabroteus sarsi* and *Pseudoboeckella poppii* are the largest and most conspicuous (Heywood 1984).

- *Flora*

The Area lies within the cold maritime Antarctic environment of the western Antarctic Peninsula, where conditions of temperature and moisture availability are suitable to support a high diversity of plant species, including the two native flowering plants Antarctic hairgrass (*Deschampsia antarctica*) and Antarctic pearlwort (*Colobanthus quitensis*) (Lewis Smith 1996, 2003). In Antarctica these flowering plants occur only in the western Peninsula region, South Shetland and South Orkney Islands, occurring most frequently on sheltered, north-facing slopes, especially in gullies and on ledges near sea level. In a few favourable sites the grass has developed locally extensive closed swards (Lewis Smith 1996), notably at Biscoe Point (ASPA No. 139), where closed swards cover up to 6500 m^2. Throughout the maritime Antarctic, and especially in the Arthur Harbor area, the warming trend since the early 1980s has resulted in populations of both species rapidly increasing in number and extent, and numerous new colonies becoming established (Fowbert & Lewis Smith 1994; Day *et al*. 1999).

Vegetation within the Area is otherwise almost entirely cryptogamic, with bryophytes dominating moist to wet habitats and lichens and some cushion-forming mosses occupying the drier soils, gravels and rock surfaces (Komárková *et al.* 1985). Dense communities of mosses and lichens are found at several locations around Arthur Harbor, including Norsel Point, Bonaparte Point and Litchfield Island, as well as some of the outer islands and Cape Monaco. In particular, sheltered north-facing slopes support locally extensive communities of the moss turf sub-formations up to

30 cm in depth, with stands of the *Polytrichum strictum–Chorisodontium aciphyllum* association predominating (Lewis Smith 1982). In Arthur Harbor large banks of these mosses can be found overlying an accumulation of peat exceeding a meter in depth and radio-carbon dated at almost 1000 years old. These are particularly apparent on Litchfield Island (ASPA No. 113), which is protected principally because of its outstanding vegetation values. Smaller examples are found on Laggard Island, Hermit Island and on Norsel Point, with small banks occurring on coastal promontories and islands throughout the Area. The largest of the Joubin Islands has a peat bank composed solely of *Chorisodontium* (Fenton & Lewis Smith 1982). From the late 1970s relictual patches of centuries-old peat formed by these mosses became exposed below the receding ice cliffs of Marr Ice Piedmont, notably on Bonaparte Point (Lewis Smith 1982). Wet level areas and seepage slopes usually support communities of the moss carpet and mat sub-formation in which *Sanionia uncinata, Brachythecium austrosalebrosum* and *Warnstorfia* spp. are usually dominant. One exceptionally extensive stand on Litchfield Island was destroyed by the increasing summer influx of Antarctic fur seals during the 1980s.

Lichen-dominated (e.g. species of *Usnea*, *Pseudephebe*, *Umbilicaria* and many crustose forms) communities of the fruticose and foliose lichen sub-formation (often referred to as fellfield) are widespread on most stable, dry stony ground and exposed rock surfaces, often with associated cushion-forming mosses (e.g. species of *Andreaea*, *Hymenoloma*, *Orthogrimmia* and *Schistidium*) (Lewis Smith & Corner 1973). Rocks and boulders close to the shore, especially where influenced by nutrient (nitrogen) input from nearby penguin and petrel colonies, usually support various communities of the crustose and foliose lichen sub-formation. Many of the species (e.g. *Acarospora*, *Amandinea*, *Buellia*, *Caloplaca*, *Haematomma*, *Lecanora*, *Lecidea*, *Xanthoria*) are brightly coloured (orange, yellow, gray-green, brown, white).

The green foliose alga *Prasiola crispa* develops a conspicuous zone on the highly nutrient enriched soil and gravel around penguin colonies. In late summer melting ice fields and permanent snow patches develop a reddish hue as huge aggregations of unicellular snow algae accumulate in the melting firn. Elsewhere, green snow algae give the surface a distinctive coloration.

A checklist of flora observed in the Area is included in Appendix F.

- *Invertebrates*

The vegetation communities found within the Area serve as important habitat for invertebrate fauna. As is common elsewhere on the Antarctic Peninsula, springtails and mites are especially prominent. Colonies of the mite *Alaskozetes antarcticus* are frequently observed on the sides of dry rocks, while other species are associated with mosses, fruticose lichens and Antarctic hairgrass. The most common springtail, *Cryptopygus antarcticus*, is found in moss beds and under rocks. Springtails and mites are also found in other habitats, including bird nests and limpet accumulations (Lewis Smith 1966).

The islands near Palmer Station are notable for their abundant populations of the wingless midge *Belgica antarctica*, a feature not found to the same extent close to other research stations on the Antarctic Peninsula. This endemic species is significant because it is the southernmost, free-living true insect. It inhabits a wide range of habitats including moss, the terrestrial alga *Prasiola crispa* and nutrient-enriched microhabitats adjacent to elephant seal wallows and penguin colonies. Larvae are exceptionally tolerant of freezing, anoxia, osmotic stress and desiccation.

Colonies of the seabird tick *Ixodes uriae* are frequently found beneath well-drained rocks adjacent to seabird nests and especially Adélie penguin colonies. This tick has a circumpolar distribution in both hemispheres and exhibits the greatest range of thermal tolerance (-30 to 40°C) of any Antarctic terrestrial arthropod. The abundance of this tick has decreased during the past three decades concomitantly with observed decreases in Adélie penguin populations (R. Lee *pers. comm.* 2007).

- *Birds*

Three species of penguin, Adélie (*Pygoscelis adeliae*), Chinstrap (*P. antarctica*) and Gentoo (*P. papua*), breed in the southwest Anvers Island area (Parmelee & Parmelee 1987, Poncet & Poncet 1987). In the past the most abundant species was the Adélie penguin, which breeds on Biscoe Point, Christine, Cormorant, Dream, Humble, and Torgersen islands, as well as the Joubin and Rosenthal islands (Maps 2-19). Numbers of Adélie penguins have declined significantly over the last 30 years, thought to be linked to the effects of the changing climate on sea-ice conditions, snow accumulation and prey availability (Fraser & Trivelpiece 1996, Fraser & Hofmann 2003, Fraser & Patterson 1997, Trivelpiece & Fraser 1996). Numbers of Adélie penguins breeding on Litchfield Island declined from 884 pairs to 143 pairs between 1974/75 and 2002/03, with no pairs breeding in 2017/18 (W. Fraser pers. comm. 2018). Today, the Gentoo penguin is locally the most abundant penguin species (Fraser pers. comm. 2019). Chinstrap penguins are present on Dream Island, on small islands near Gerlache Island, and on the Joubin Islands. The Rosenthal Islands contain source populations of Chinstrap and Gentoo penguins that are likely to be closely linked to other colonies in the southwest Anvers Island region. In the last decade there has been an expansion of ice-intolerant Gentoo penguins and a coincident decrease in ice-obligate Adélie penguins near Palmer Station (Fraser *et al*. 2013; Ducklow *et al*. 2013). Gentoo penguins are thought to be increasing in the region in response to the regional warming, and are colonising new sites in recently deglaciated areas or sites vacated by Adélie penguins. In particular, small glaciers on the Wauwermans Islands are retreating and may provide important habitat for new Gentoo colonies and a new colony was discovered near Dream Island in 2019 (W. Fraser pers. comm. 2019).

Southern Giant petrels (*Macronectes giganteus*) breed at numerous locations within the Area. Imperial shags (*Leucocarbo atriceps bransfieldensis*) breed on Cormorant Island and in the Joubin and Rosenthal islands. Imperial shags continue to roost on Elephant Rocks, although no longer breed there (Patterson-Fraser pers. comm.

2019). Other breeding bird species occurring in the Area include Kelp gulls (*Larus dominicanus*), Wilson's Storm petrels (*Oceanites oceanicus*), Snowy sheathbills (*Chionis alba*), South Polar skuas (*Stercorarius maccormicki*), Brown skuas (*S. loennbergi*) and Antarctic terns (*Sterna vittata*). Common non-breeding visitors include Southern fulmars (*Fulmarus glacialoides*), Antarctic petrels (*Thalassoica antarctica*), Cape petrels (*Daption capense*) and Snow petrels (*Pagadroma nivea*). A full list of breeding, frequent and less common or transient visitors recorded in the Area is provided in Appendix F.

Antarctic Important Bird Area (IBA) No. 085 Cormorant Island (Map 16) qualified for the large number of Imperial shags (729 pairs) present on the island based on data recorded in 1985 (Harris *et al.* 2015). The breeding colony has declined substantially in recent years ~30 breeding pairs have been present (Fraser pers. comm. 2019). IBA No. 086 Litchfield Island (Map 3), qualified on the basis of the South Polar skua colony, with up to 50 breeding pairs present on the island. IBA No. 087 Joubin Islands (Map 18), qualified for the large number of Imperial shags (>250 pairs) present in the northern part of the island group, also based on data collected by S. and J. Poncet in 1985 (Harris 2015), although a census undertaken in 2019 indicated only ~50 pairs present (Fraser pers. comm. 2019). IBA No. 088 Islet South of Gerlache Island, Rosenthal Islands (Map 19), qualified on the grounds of the large Gentoo penguin colony present. Improved mapping data show this site was incorrectly located in the IBA assessment (Harris *et al*. 2015), and this colony lies not on Island 303 but on Peninsula 306. More recent data show that 2442 pairs were present in February 2016 (Fraser pers. comm. 2018), which is less than the threshold for IBA qualification. Nevertheless, for penguins in aggregate and taking other species into consideration, the number of breeding individuals present within the boundary of the Restricted Zone is more than sufficient to qualify as an IBA (IBA Criteria A4iii – at least 10,000 seabirds present).

- *Marine mammals*

There are few published data on the marine mammals within the area. Cruises conducted in Gerlache Strait have observed Fin (*Balaenoptera physalus*), Humpback (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) and Southern Bottlenose (*Hyperoodon planifrons*) whales (Thiele 2004). Recent data indicates a rapidly growing Humpback whale population in the region (Pallin *et al*. 2018). Anecdotal observations by Palmer Station personnel and visitors have noted Fin, Humpback, Sei (*Balaenoptera borealis*), Southern Right (*Eubalaena australis*), Minke (*Balaenoptera bonaerensis*) and Killer (*Orcinus orca*) whales within the Area, as well as Hourglass dolphins (*Lagenorhynchus cruciger*) (W. Fraser *pers. comm.* 2007). Weddell (*Leptonychotes weddellii*) and Southern Elephant (*Mirounga leonina*) seals breed within the Area and haul out on accessible beaches, and Crabeater (*Lobodon carcinophagus*) and Leopard (*Leptonyx hydrurga*) seals are also commonly seen at sea and on ice floes within the Area. Numbers of non-breeding Antarctic fur seals (*Arctocephalus gazella*), mainly juvenile males, have increased in recent years, and depending on the time of year hundreds to thousands of individuals may be found on local beaches throughout the Area. Their increasing abundance is damaging vegetation at lower elevations (Lewis Smith 1996, Harris 2001). Despite the lack of published data concerning marine mammals within the Area, their presence is likely to be related to foraging for Antarctic krill, which forms an important component in their diets (Ducklow *et al.* 2007). A list of marine mammals observed within the Area is provided in Appendix F.

- *Oceanography*

The Western Antarctic Peninsula is unique as the only region where the Antarctic Circumpolar Current (ACC) is adjacent to the continental shelf. The ACC flows in a northeasterly direction off the shelf, and there is also some southward flow on the inner part of the shelf (Smith *et al*. 1995). Circumpolar Deep Water (CDW) transports macronutrients and warmer, more saline water onto the shelf, which has significant implications for heat and salt budgets in the southwest Anvers Island and Palmer Basin region. Circulation patterns and the presence of the CDW water mass may also affect the timing and extent of sea ice (Smith *et al*. 1995). The extent of sea ice cover and the timing of the appearance of the marginal ice zone (MIZ) in relation to specific geographic areas have high interannual variability (Smith *et al*. 1995; Stammerjohn & Smith 1996), although Smith and Stammerjohn (2001) have shown a statistically significant reduction in overall sea-ice extent in the Western Antarctic Peninsula region over the period for which satellite observations are available. The ice edge and the MIZ form major ecological boundaries, and are of particular interest in the region because of their interaction with many aspects of the marine ecosystem, including phytoplankton blooms and seabird habitat. Within the Area, the Palmer Basin is a focal point of biological and biogeochemical activity and an important area of upwelling.

- *Marine ecology*

The marine ecosystem west of the Antarctic Peninsula is highly productive, with dynamics that are strongly coupled to the seasonal and interannual variations in sea ice. The rapid climate changes occurring on the western Antarctic Peninsula, with resultant changes in sea ice, is affecting all levels of the food web (Ducklow *et al.* 2007). Marine flora and fauna within the Area are strongly influenced by factors including low temperatures, a short growing season, high winds influencing the depth of the mixed layer, proximity to land with the potential for input of micronutrients, and the varying sea-ice coverage. It is a high-nutrient, low-biomass environment.

High levels of primary production are observed within the region, maintained by topography-induced upwellings and stratification by fresh water input from glaciers (Prézelin *et al.* 2000, 2004; Dierssen *et al.* 2002). In terms of biomass, the phytoplankton communities are dominated by diatoms and cryptomonads (Moline & Prézelin 1996). Species distribution and composition varies with water masses, fronts and the changing position of the ice edge.

Salps and Antarctic krill (*Euphausia* sp.) often dominate the total zooplankton biomass (Moline & Prézelin 1996). Dominant organisms in the neritic province on the shelf southwest of Anvers Island are *E. superba, E. crystallorophias,* and fish larvae (Ross *et al.* 1996). The distribution and abundance of zooplankton is variable over time, and Spiridonov (1995) found krill in the Palmer Archipelago to exhibit a highly variable life cycle as compared with other areas of the western Antarctic Peninsula.

There is a high level of endemism among fish species sampled on the Antarctic continental shelf as compared with other isolated marine communities, with new species still being regularly discovered (Eastman 2005). Examples of fish collected within the Area are six species of Nototheniidae (*Notothenia coriiceps neglecta, N. gibberifrons, N. nudifrons, Trematomus bernachii, T. hansoni* and *T. newnesi*), one of Bathydraconidae (*Parachaenichthys charcoti*) and one of Channichthydae (*Chaenocephalus aceratus*) (De Witt & Hureau 1979, Detrich 1987, McDonald *et al.* 1992).

The soft-bottomed macrobenthic community of Arthur Harbor is characterised by high species diversity and abundance, being dominated by polychaetes, peracarid crustaceans and molluscs (Lowry 1975, Richardson & Hedgpeth 1977, Hyland *et al.* 1994). Samples collected during a study of UV effects on marine organisms carried out close to Palmer Station during the austral spring (Karentz *et al.* 1991) yielded 57 species (1 fish, 48 invertebrates, and 8 algae). Sampling was from a combination of rocky intertidal areas (yielding 72% of organisms), subtidal and planktonic habitats. Of the marine invertebrates collected, the greatest number of species was found in the phylum Arthropoda (12 species). The Antarctic limpet (*Nacella concinna*) is common in Arthur Harbor (Kennicutt *et al*. 1992b).

- *Human activities and impact*

'Base N' (UK) was built on Norsel Point (Map 3) in 1955 and operated continuously until 1958. The United States established 'Old Palmer' Station nearby on Norsel Point in 1965, although in 1968 transferred the main operations to the present site of Palmer Station on Gamage Point. 'Base N' was used as a biological laboratory by United States scientists from 1965-71, although this burnt to the ground in 1971. 'Old Palmer' station was removed by the United States in 1991, and all that remains of both 'Old Palmer' and 'Base N' are the original concrete footings and some metal objects such as stakes, nails and wire, as well as pieces of wood.

On 28 January 1989, the Argentine vessel *Bahia Paraiso* ran aground 750 m south of Litchfield Island, releasing more than 600,000 liters (150,000 gallons) of petroleum into the surrounding environment (Penhale *et al.* 1997). Contamination was lethal to some of the local biota including krill, intertidal invertebrates and seabirds, particularly Adélie penguins and Imperial shags (Hyland *et al.* 1994, Kennicutt *et al.* 1992a&b, Kennicutt & Sweet 1992). A summary of the spill, research on the environmental impact, and the joint 1992/1993 clean-up by Argentina and The Netherlands can be found in Penhale *et al.* (1997).

All fin-fishing is currently prohibited in the western Antarctic Peninsula region (CCAMLR Statistical Subarea 48.1) under CCAMLR Conservation Measure 32-02 (2017) (CCAMLR 2018). Krill fishing occurs in the offshore region to the northwest of the Palmer Archipelago, and is currently concentrated mainly around the South Shetland Islands further to the north. The total krill catch for Subarea 48.1 was reported at 154,442 tonnes in the 2015/16 season (CCAMLR 2017). Small-scale management units (SSMU) have been established for Subarea 48.1, with ASMA No. 7 being situated in SSMU Antarctic Peninsula West. The total krill catch for the SSMU was reported at 37,832 tonnes in the 2015/16 season (CCAMLR 2017). CCAMLR-related activities are therefore occurring within or close to the Area.

The krill fishery in SSMU Antarctic Peninsula West is not known to have operated within the Area in recent years. Current human activities in the Area are mainly related to science and associated logistic activities, and tourism. Palmer Station serves as the base for scientific research and associated logistic operations conducted in the western Antarctic Peninsula and Palmer Archipelago by the United States Antarctic Program and collaborators from a number of other Antarctic Treaty Parties. Scientific and logistic support is received from ships operated or chartered by the United States Antarctic Program, which visit the station approximately 15 times per year. Aircraft are not operated routinely from Palmer Station, although helicopters may visit occasionally in summer.

Local scientific transport and support is provided using small open inflatable boats, which are operated throughout the ~5 km (~3 miles) Standard Boating Area during the summer season (Map 3), with more limited trips (weather/season dependent) into the Extended Boating Area (Map 1). Frequent visits are made to islands within the Standard Boating Area for scientific research, and also for recreation by station personnel. The more capable Rigid-Hulled-Inflatable-Bottom (RHIB) boats operate from Palmer Station within the Extended Boating Area (Maps 1 & 2), which includes nearby island groups such as the Wauwermans and Joubins (weather/season dependent), enabling research activities regularly to encompass distances of up to ~30 km (~20 miles) from the station (Maps 1 & 2).

Published information on the impacts of science (for example from sampling, disturbance or installations) within the Area is limited. However, numerous welding rods inserted into soil to mark vegetation study sites (Komárková 1983) were abandoned at Biscoe Point (ASPA No. 139) and Litchfield Island (ASPA No. 113) in 1982. Where these remained, surrounding vegetation had been killed as an apparent result of highly localised contamination by chemicals from the rods (Harris 2001). Most of these, and other old markers such as bamboo poles, have now been removed by scientists and Palmer Station personnel.

Between 1984-91, the number of tour ship visits each season at Palmer Station increased from 4 (340 visitors) to 12 (1300 visitors), and has remained around this level since. However, the number of visitors has increased substantially, with an average of ~6500 visiting annually between 2003-16, of which an average of ~2000 tourists per year landed. Ship visits are arranged prior to the start of the season. Tourists typically visit Palmer Station, make short small-boat cruises around nearshore islands, and an annual average of ~500 tourists landed at the Visitor Zone on Torgersen Island between 2003-16 (Map 5). Since the mid-2000s kayaking has become popular in Arthur Harbor, with an average of ~50 visitors per season undertaking this activity. Yachts also visit Palmer Station and the surrounding area, with 17 vessels visiting during the 2007/08 season.

Torgersen Island was divided into a Restricted Zone (researchers only) and Visitor Zone (tourist and station personnel visitors plus researchers) to enable comparisons of Adélie penguin population trends between the two sides of the island (Map 8). Studies suggested that the impacts of visits by tourists, station personnel, and scientists on breeding performance have been small compared to longer-term climate-related forcing factors (Fraser & Patterson 1997, Emslie *et al.* 1998, Patterson 2001). However, in recent years the number of breeding Adélie penguins within the Visitor Zone has decreased more rapidly than within the Restricted Zone. While the causes and mechanisms of this trend are complex and cannot necessarily be attributed to visitor impacts, the breeding groups are now so small that it was decided to close the Visitor Zone during the main breeding period of early-October to mid-January as a precautionary measure (Fraser pers. comm. 2019).

6 (ii) Restricted and managed zones within the Area

This Management Plan establishes three types of zones within the Area: Operations, Restricted and Visitor. The management objectives of the different types of zones are set out in Table 2. The location of all zones is shown on Maps 2 and 3. Map 4 shows the Operations Zone, and Maps 05-19 show the Restricted Zones and Visitor Zone in the context of surrounding geography with the detailed features and infrastructure present.

A new zone or zone type may be considered by the Management Group as the need arises, and those no longer needed may be delisted. Zoning updates should be given particular consideration at the time of Management Plan reviews.

Table 2: Management Zones designated within the Area and their specific objectives.

Management Zones	**Specific Zone Objectives**	**Plan Appendix**
Operations Zone	To ensure that science support facilities and related human activities within the Area are contained and managed within designated areas.	-
Restricted Zone	To restrict access into a particular part of the Area and/or activities within it for a range of reasons, e.g. owing to special scientific or ecological values, because of sensitivity, presence of hazards, or to restrict emissions or constructions at a particular site. Access into Restricted	D

Management Zones	Specific Zone Objectives	Plan Appendix
	Zones should normally be for compelling reasons that cannot be served elsewhere within the Area.	
Visitor Zone	To provide a means of managing the activities of visitors, including program personnel and/or tourists, so their impacts may be contained and, as appropriate, monitored and managed.	E

The overall policies applying within the zones are outlined in the sections below, while site-specific guidelines and maps for the conduct of activities at each zone are found in Appendices D and E.

- *Operations Zone*

Palmer Station facilities are largely concentrated within a small area on Gamage Point. The Operations Zone is designated as the area of Gamage Point encompassing the station buildings, together with adjacent masts, aerials, fuel storage facilities and other structures and extending to the permanent ice edge of the Marr Ice Piedmont (Map 4).

- *Restricted Zones*

Fifteen sites of special ecological and scientific value are designated as Restricted Zones (Appendix D). These sites are particularly sensitive to disturbance during the summer months.

The Restricted Zones usually include a buffer extending 50 m from the shore into any adjacent marine area (Map 3 and Maps 5 – 17). A 50 m Restricted Zone buffer also extends around ASPA No. 113 Litchfield Island.

Research in Restricted Zones should be carried out with particular care to avoid or minimize trampling of vegetation and disturbance of wildlife. In order to protect sensitive bird colonies throughout the breeding season to the maximum extent possible, and also plant communities, access to Restricted Zones between 01 October to 15 April inclusive is restricted to those conducting essential scientific research, monitoring or maintenance. All non-essential small boat traffic should avoid transit of or cruising within the 50 m marine buffers of Restricted Zones with the exception of the narrow channel between Shortcut Point and Shortcut Island which may be used by small boats for transit when necessary. All visits to, and activities within, Restricted Zones should be recorded, in particular records should be kept of the type and quantity of all sampling.

Site-specific Guidelines for Restricted Zones are included in Appendix D.

- *Visitor Zone*

The northeastern half of Torgersen Island is designated as a Visitor Zone (Map 8). Owing to recent declines in the local breeding population of Adélie penguins, the Visitor Zone is closed to all visits except for scientific or management purposes during the main breeding period of 01 October to 15 January inclusive. The Visitor Zone is open 16 January to 30 September inclusive. Access to the Torgersen Island Restricted Zone in the southwestern part of the island is restricted year-round to those conducting essential scientific research, monitoring or maintenance. A summary of specific guidelines for activities within the Visitor Zone are included in Appendix E (see also Antarctic Treaty Visitor Site Guide: Torgersen Island, available from the Antarctic Treaty Secretariat at https://www.ats.aq).

6 (iii) Structures within and near the Area

Modern Palmer Station (Map 4) consists of two main buildings, a laboratory facility and several ancillary structures including an aquarium, small boathouse, workshops, storage and communications facilities. The station is powered by two diesel-electric generators, the fuel for which is stored in two double-walled tanks. A pier has been constructed adjacent to the station at the entrance to Hero Inlet, which may accommodate medium-sized scientific and logistic support ships. The station is operated year-round and can accommodate approximately 44 people, with a summer occupancy of at least 40, and a winter complement of around 18-32.

6 (iv) Location of other protected areas within the Area

Entry to an Antarctic Specially Protected Area (ASPA) is prohibited unless a permit for entry has been issued by a national authority. Two ASPAs are designated within the Area (Maps 1 and 3):

- ASPA No. 113 Litchfield Island (Map 3);
- ASPA No. 139 Biscoe Point (Map 1).

The only other protected area within close proximity is ASPA No. 146, South Bay, Doumer Island, 25 km southeast of Palmer Station (Map 1). There are no Historic Sites and Monuments (HSM) within the Area, with the nearest being HSM No. 61, Base A, Port Lockroy, Goudier Island, 30 km east of Palmer Station (Map 1).

7. Code of Conduct

The Code of Conduct in this section is the main instrument for the management of activities in the Area. It outlines the overall management and operational principles for the Area. More specific environmental, scientific and visitor guidelines are provided in the appendices.

7(i) Access to and movement within the Area

Access to the Area is generally by ship (Map 1), with occasional access by helicopter. There are no special restrictions on the transit of vessels through the Area, with the exception of seasonal buffer zones extending 50 m from the shore at a small number of islands designated as Restricted Zones (see Section 6(ii)). Prior to visiting Palmer Station, radio contact should always be made to obtain guidance on local activities being conducted in the region (Map 3).

Tour ships, yachts and National Program vessels may stand offshore and access Palmer Station and the surrounding coast and islands by small boat, taking into account the access restrictions applying within designated zones and ASPAs.

Small open inflatable boat operations from Palmer Station are normally undertaken during the summer within the Standard Boating Area, which extends up to ~5 km (~3 miles) from the station (Map 3), with more limited trips (weather/season dependent) into the Extended Boating Area (Map 1). Rigid-Hulled-Inflatable-Bottom (RHIB) boats may operate from Palmer Station within the Extended Boating Area, which extends up ~30 km from the station (Maps 1 & 2). Small boats should operate no closer than 300 m from the glacier front along the Anvers Island coastline as a safety precaution against glacier calving. See also Appendix A.

Access to Restricted Zones from 01 October to 15 April inclusive is restricted to those conducting essential scientific research, monitoring or maintenance, including the nearshore marine area within 50 m of the coast of these zones (see Section 6(ii) for details). Access to ASPAs is prohibited except in accordance with a Permit issued by an appropriate national authority.

Overflight of wildlife colonies below 2000 ft (~610 m) should be avoided throughout the Area, and specific overflight restrictions apply at ASPA No.113 Litchfield Island and ASPA No.139 Biscoe Point (Maps 1 & 2) as detailed in the respective management plans. Pilots operating aircraft within the Area should follow the 'Guidelines for the Operation of Aircraft Near Concentrations of Birds in Antarctica' (Resolution 2 (2004)) and the 'Environmental Guidelines for Operation of Remotely Piloted Aircraft Systems (RPAS) in Antarctica (Resolution 4 (2018)).

The designated Helicopter Landing Site (HLS) at Palmer Station on Gamage Point lies ~400 m (~1/4 nm) east of Palmer Station at 64°02.7417'W, 64°46.475'S (Map 4). It is located on flat, well-drained, rocky ground in a depression ~100 x 200 m across at an elevation of 13 m (~45 ft) Above Mean Sea Level (AMSL). Approach to the HLS should be high over the peninsula east of Palmer Station or up the channel from the south, avoiding breeding bird colonies occupying nearby islands to the maximum extent practicable (in particular Shortcut, Christine, Hermit, Laggard, Limitrophe and Cormorant islands, and the Stepping Stones to the east, and all islands to the west of Palmer Station (Map 3)). Communications aerials and wires strung between masts are installed in the proximity of Palmer Station, which are a particular hazard for aircraft.

If aircraft access, overflight or landing is anticipated at Gamage Point or within Arthur Harbor more generally, it is essential that communications are established with Palmer Station prior to such access to get information on the latest site-specific conditions and constraints.

Movement on land within the Area is generally on foot, although vehicles are used in the Operations Zone. A route leading from Palmer Station up onto the Marr Ice Piedmont is marked by flags to avoid crevassed areas. The precise route varies according to conditions and visitors should obtain the latest information on the route from Palmer Station. In the winter, snowmobiles are sometimes used on this route. All movement should be undertaken carefully to minimise disturbance to animals, soil and vegetated areas.

7 (ii) Activities that may be conducted in the Area

Activities that may be conducted in the area include scientific research; operations in support of science; media, arts, education or other official national program visitors; management activities including maintenance or removal of facilities; and tourism visits within the Visitor Zone, where these activities do not jeopardize the values of the Area.

Harvesting of marine living resources, should be conducted in accordance with the provisions of this Management Plan and with due recognition of the important scientific and environmental values of the Area. Any such activities should be conducted in coordination with research and other activities taking place, and could include development of a plan and guidelines that would help to ensure that harvesting activities did not pose a significant risk to the other important values of the Area.

All activities in the Area should be conducted in such a manner as to minimize impacts on the environment. Alternative energy sources (e.g. solar, wind, fuel cells) should be used wherever practicable in order to minimize fossil fuel usage. Specific guidelines for the conduct of activities in the Area are provided in Appendices A-E. Tourism and non-governmental expeditions should additionally ensure their activities have minimal impact on the scientific activities being conducted within the Area, and on Torgersen Island are carried out in accordance with Appendix E (see also the <u>Antarctic Treaty Visitor Site Guide: Torgersen Island</u> available from the Antarctic Treaty Secretariat at <u>https://www.ats.aq</u>).

7 (iii) Installation, modification, or removal of structures

Site selection, installation, modification or removal of temporary refuges or tents should be undertaken in a manner that does not compromise the values of the Area. Installation sites should be re-used to the greatest extent possible and the location recorded. The footprint of installations should be kept to the minimum practical.

Scientific equipment installed in the Area should be clearly identified by country, name of principal investigator, contact details, and date of installation. All such items should be made of materials that pose minimal risk of contamination to the area. All equipment and associated materials should be removed when no longer in use.

7 (iv) Field camps

Temporary field camps may be established where required for research, and in accordance with the Restricted Zone and ASPA provisions. Field camps should be located on non-vegetated sites, or on thick snow or ice cover when practical, and should avoid concentrations of mammals or breeding birds. The location of field camps should be recorded, and previously occupied campsites should be re-used where practicable. The footprint of campsites should be kept to the minimum practical.

Emergency caches are located on several islands within the Area for safety purposes, and are identified on Map 3. Please respect the caches and only use them in a genuine emergency, reporting any such use to Palmer Station so the cache can be restocked.

7 (v) Taking or harmful interference with native flora or fauna

Taking or harmful interference with native flora or fauna is prohibited, except in accordance with a permit issued under Article 3 of Annex II to the Protocol by the appropriate national authority specifically for that purpose. Where animal taking or harmful interference is involved, this should, as a minimum standard, be in accordance with the Scientific Committee on Antarctic Research (SCAR) Code of Conduct for the Use of Animals for Scientific Purposes in Antarctica.

7 (vi) Restrictions on materials and organisms which can be brought into the Area

To help maintain the ecological and scientific values of the Area visitors should take special precautions against the introduction of non-native species. Of particular concern are introductions from other Antarctic sites, including stations, or from regions outside Antarctica. Visitors should ensure that sampling equipment and markers brought into the Area are clean. Visitors should thoroughly clean all equipment (including backpacks, carry-bags and tents), clothing and footwear before entering the Area.

7 (vii) Collection or removal of material found in the Area

Material not covered by 7(v) above should only be collected or removed from the Area for scientific and associated educational purposes or essential management or conservation purposes and should be limited to the minimum necessary for those needs. Material of human origin likely to compromise the values of the Area should be removed unless the impact of removal is likely to be greater than leaving the material in place. If this is the case the appropriate authority should be notified. Do not disturb experimental sites or scientific equipment.

7 (viii) Waste management

All wastes other than human wastes and domestic liquid waste shall be removed from the Area. Human and domestic liquid wastes from stations or field camps may be disposed of into the sea below the high water mark.

In accordance with Article 4 of Annex III to the Protocol, wastes shall not be disposed of onto ice-free areas, into freshwater systems or onto snow or in deep ice pits in ice which terminates in ice free areas or in areas of high ablation.

7 (ix) Requirements for reports

Reports of activities in the Area should be maintained by the Management Group to the maximum extent practicable, and made available to all Parties.

In accordance with Article 10 of Annex V to the Protocol, arrangements shall be made for collection and exchange of reports of inspection visits and on any significant changes or damage within the Area.

Tour operators should record their visits to the Area, including the number of visitors, dates, and any incidents in the Area, and submit these data in accordance with the procedures for reporting on expeditions adopted by the Antarctic Treaty Parties and the International Association of Antarctica Tour Operators (IAATO).

8. Provisions for the exchange of information in advance of proposed activities

In addition to the normal exchange of information by means of the annual national reports to the Parties of the Antarctic Treaty, and to SCAR and the Council of Managers of National Antarctic Programs (COMNAP), Parties operating in the Area should exchange information through the Management Group. All National Antarctic Programs planning to conduct scientific activities within the Area should, as far as practical, notify the Management Group in advance of their nature, location and expected duration, and any special considerations related to the deployment of field parties or scientific instrumentation within the Area.

All tour ships and yachts should, as far as practical, provide the Management Group with details of scheduled visits in advance.

All those planning to conduct marine harvesting activities within the Area should, as far as practical, notify the Management Group in advance of their nature, location and expected duration, and of any special considerations related to how these activities could impact on scientific investigations being carried out within the Area. Information on the location of scientific activities within the Area should be disseminated as far as practical.

9. Supporting documentation

Electronic information

Management plans for ASMA No.7 and for ASPAs and sites with Visitor Site Guidelines within the Area are available from the Antarctic Treaty Secretariat website at https://www.ats.aq.

Management Plans

Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No. 113 Litchfield Island, Arthur Harbor, Anvers Island, Palmer Archipelago

Management Plan for Antarctic Specially Protected Area No. 139 Biscoe Point, Anvers Island, Palmer Archipelago

References

Baker, K.S. 1996. Palmer LTER: Palmer Station air temperature 1974 to 1996. *Antarctic Journal of the United States* 31(2): 162-64.

CCAMLR 2017. Statistical Bulletin, Vol. 29. CCAMLR, Hobart, Australia.

CCAMLR 2018. Schedule of Conservation Measures in Force 2017/18. https://www.ccamlr.org/en/document/publications/schedule-conservation-measures-force-2017/18

Day, T.A., C.T. Ruhland, C.W. Grobe & F. Xiong 1999. Growth and reproduction of Antarctic vascular plants in response to warming and UV radiation reductions in the field. *Oecologia* 119: 24-35.

Detrich III, H.W. 1987. Formation of cold-stable microtubules by tubulins and microtubule associated proteins from Antarctic fishes. *Antarctic Journal of the United States* 22(5): 217-19.

Domack E., D. Amblàs, R. Gilbert, S. Brachfeld, A. Camerlenghi, M. Rebesco, M. Canals & R. Urgeles 2006. Subglacial morphology and glacial evolution of the Palmer deep outlet system, Antarctic Peninsula. *Geomorphology* 75(1-2): 125-42.

Ducklow, H.W., K.S. Baker, D.G. Martinson, L.B. Quetin, R.M. Ross, R.C. Smith, S.E. Stammerjohn, M. Vernet & W. Fraser 2007. Marine pelagic ecosystems: The West Antarctic Peninsula. Special Theme Issue, Antarctic Ecology: From Genes to Ecosystems. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Society of London* 362: 67-94.

Ducklow, H.W., Fraser, W.R., Meredith, M.P., Stammerjohn, S.E., Doney, S.C., Martinson, D.G., Sailley, S.F., Schofield, O.M., Steinberg, D.K., Venables, H.J. & Amsler, C.D. 2013. West Antarctic Peninsula: An ice-dependent coastal marine ecosystem in transition. *Oceanography* 26(3):190–203.

Eastman, J.T. 2005. The nature and diversity of Antarctic fishes. *Polar Biology* 28(2): 93-107.

Emslie, S.D., W.R. Fraser, R.C. Smith & W. Walker 1998. Abandoned penguin

colonies and environmental change in the Palmer Station area, Anvers Island, Antarctic Peninsula. *Antarctic Science* 10(3): 257-68.
Fraser, W.R. & Trivelpiece, W.Z. 1996. Factors controlling the distribution of seabirds: winter-summer heterogeneity in the distribution of Adélie penguin populations. In: R. Ross, E. Hofmann, & L. Quetin (eds) *Foundations for ecological research west of the Antarctic Peninsula. Antarctic Research* Series 70. American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC: 257-52.
Fraser, W.R. & Hofmann, E.E. 2003. A predator's perspective on causal links between climate change, physical forcing and ecosystem response. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* 265: 1-15.
Fraser, W.R. & Patterson, D.L. 1997. Human disturbance and long-term changes in Adélie penguin populations: a natural experiment at Palmer Station, Antarctic Peninsula. In: B. Battaglia, J. Valencia & D. Walton (eds) *Antarctic communities: species, structure and survival.* Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 445-52.
Fraser, W.R., W.Z. Trivelpiece, D.G. Ainley & S.G. Trivelpiece 1992. Increases in Antarctic penguin populations: reduced competition with whales or a loss of sea ice due to global warming? *Polar Biology* 11: 525-31.
Fraser, W.R, Patterson-Fraser, D, Ribic, C.A, Schofield, O, & Ducklow, H. 2013. A non-marine source of variability in Adélie penguin demography. *Oceanography* 26(3):207–09.
Fenton, J.H.C. & Lewis Smith, R.I. 1982. Distribution, composition and general characteristics of the moss banks of the maritime Antarctic. *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* 51: 215-36.
Fowbert, J.A. & Lewis Smith, R.I. 1994. Rapid population increases in native vascular plants in the Argentine Islands, Antarctic Peninsula. *Arctic and Alpine Research* **26**: 290-96.
Harris, C.M. 2001. Revision of management plans for Antarctic Protected Areas originally proposed by the United Kingdom and the United States of America: 2001 field visit report. Unpublished report, Environmental Research & Assessment, Cambridge.
Harris, C.M. (ed) 2006. *Wildlife Awareness Manual: Antarctic Peninsula, South Shetland Islands, South Orkney Islands*. First Edition. Wildlife Information Publication No. 1. Prepared for the UK Foreign & Commonwealth Office and HMS *Endurance*. Environmental Research & Assessment, Cambridge.
Harris, C.M., Lorenz, K., Fishpool, L.D.C., Lascelles, B., Cooper, J., Coria, N.R., Croxall, J.P., Emmerson, L.M., Fijn, R.C., Fraser, W.L., Jouventin, P., LaRue, M.A., Le Maho, Y., Lynch, H.J., Naveen, R., Patterson-Fraser, D.L., Peter, H.-U., Poncet, S., Phillips, R.A., Southwell, C.J., van Franeker, J.A., Weimerskirch, H., Wienecke, B., & Woehler, E.J. 2015. *Important Bird Areas in Antarctica 2015*. BirdLife International and Environmental Research & Assessment Ltd., Cambridge.
Heywood, R.B. 1984. Antarctic inland waters. In: R. Laws (ed) *Antarctic ecology* (Volume 1). Academic Press, London: 279-344.
Hooper, P.R. 1962. The petrology of Anvers Island and adjacent islands. *FIDS Scientific Reports* **34**.
Huiskes, A.H.L., D. Lud, T.C.W. Moerdijk-Poortviet, & J. Rozema 1999. Impact of

UV-B radiation on Antarctic terrestrial vegetation. In: J. Rozema (ed) *Stratospheric ozone depletion; the effects of enhancing UV-B radiation on terrestrial ecosystems*. Blackhuys Publishers, Leiden: 313-37.

Kennicutt II, M.C., T.J. McDonald, G.J. Denoux & S.J. McDonald 1992a. Hydrocarbon contamination on the Antarctic Peninsula I. Arthur Harbor – subtidal sediments. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* **24**(10): 499-506.

Kennicutt II, M.C., T.J. McDonald, G.J. Denoux & S.J. McDonald 1992b. Hydrocarbon contamination on the Antarctic Peninsula I. Arthur Harbor – inter- and subtidal limpets (*Nacella concinna*). *Marine Pollution Bulletin* **24**(10): 506-11.

Kennicutt II, M.C & Sweet, S.T. 1992. Hydrocarbon contamination on the Antarctic Peninsula III. The *Bahia Paraiso* – two years after the spill. *Marine Pollution Bulletin* **24**(9-12): 303-06.

Komárková, V. 1983. Plant communities of the Antarctic Peninsula near Palmer Station. *Antarctic Journal of the United States* **18**: 216-18.

Komárková, V., S. Poncet & J. Poncet 1985. Two native Antarctic vascular plants, *Deschampsia antarctica* and *Colobanthus quitensis*: a new southernmost locality and other localities in the Antarctic Peninsula area. *Arctic and Alpine Research* **17**(4): 401-16.

Lascara, C.M., E.E. Hofmann, R.M. Ross & L.B. Quetin 1999. Seasonal variability in the distribution of Antarctic krill, *Euphausia superba*, west of the Antarctic Peninsula. *Deep Sea Research Part I: Oceanographic Research Papers* **46**(6): 951-84.

Lewis Smith, R.I. & Corner, R.W.M. 1973. Vegetation of the Arthur Harbour-Argentine Islands region of the Antarctic Peninsula. *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* **33-34**: 89-122.

Lewis Smith, R.I. 1982. Plant succession and re-exposed moss banks on a deglaciated headland in Arthur Harbour, Anvers Island. *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* **51**: 193-99.

Lewis Smith, R.I. 1996. Terrestrial and freshwater biotic components of the western Antarctic Peninsula. In: R. Ross, E. Hofmann, & L. Quetin (eds) *Foundations for ecological research west of the Antarctic Peninsula*. *Antarctic Research Series* **70**. American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC: 15-59.

Lewis Smith, R.I. 2003. The enigma of *Colobanthus quitensis* and *Deschampsia antarctica* in Antarctica. In A. Huiskes, W. Gieskes, J. Rozema, R. Schorno, S. van der Vies & W. Wolff (eds) *Antarctic biology in a global context*. Blackhuys Publishers, Leiden: 234-39.

McDonald, S., M. Kennicutt II, K. Foster-Springer & M. Krahn 1992. Polynuclear aromatic hydrocarbon exposure in Antarctic fish. *Antarctic Journal of the United States* **27**(5): 333-35.

Moline, M.A. & Prézelin, B.B. 1996. Palmer LTER 1991-1994: long term monitoring and analysis of physical factors regulating variability in coastal Antarctic phytoplankton biomass, in situ productivity and taxonomic composition over subseasonal, seasonal and interannual time scales phytoplankton dynamics. *Marine Ecology Progress Series* **145**: 143-60.

Pallin L.J., Baker C.S., Steel D., Kellar N.M., Robbins J., Johnston D.W., Nowacek

D.P., Read A.J. & Friedlaender A.S. 2018. High pregnancy rates in humpback whales (*Megaptera novaeangliae*) around the Western Antarctic Peninsula, evidence of a rapidly growing population. Royal Society Open Science **5**: 180017. http://dx.doi.org/10.1098/rsos.180017

Parker, B.C. & Samsel, G.L. 1972. Fresh-water algae of the Antarctic Peninsula. 1. Systematics and ecology in the U.S. Palmer Station area. In: G. Llano (ed) *Antarctic terrestrial biology*. *Antarctic Research Series* **20**. American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC: 69-81.

Parmelee, D.F., W.R. Fraser & D.R. Neilson 1977. Birds of the Palmer Station area. *Antarctic Journal of the United States* **12**(1-2): 15-21.

Parmelee, D.F. & Parmelee, J.M. 1987. Revised penguin numbers and distribution for Anvers Island, Antarctica. *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* **76**: 65-73.

Patterson, D.L. 2001. The effects of human activity and environmental variability on long-term changes in Adélie penguin populations at Palmer Station, Antarctica. Unpublished MSc thesis in Fish & Wildlife Management, Montana State University, Bozeman.

Patterson, D.L., E.H. Woehler, J.P. Croxall, J. Cooper, S. Poncet & W.R. Fraser (in press). Breeding distribution and population status of the northern giant petrel *Macronectes halli* and the southern giant petrel *M. giganteus*. *Marine Ornithology* (submitted).

Penhale, P.A., J. Coosen & E.R. Marshcoff 1997. The *Bahai Paraiso*: a case study in environmental impact, remediation and monitoring. In: B. Battaglia, J. Valencia & D. Walton (eds) *Antarctic Communities: species, structure and survival*. Cambridge University Press, Cambridge: 437-44.

Pickett, E.P, Fraser, W. R., Patterson-Fraser, D.L., Cimino, M.A. Torres, L.G. & Friedlaender, A.S. 2018. Spatial niche partitioning may promote coexistence of Pygoscelis penguins as climate-induced sympatry occurs. *Ecology & Evolution* 2018 : 1-15.

Poncet, S. & Poncet, J. 1987. Censuses of penguin populations of the Antarctic Peninsula 1983-87. *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* **77**: 109-29.

Smith, R.C. & Stammerjohn, S.E. 2001. Variations of surface air temperature and sea-ice extent in the western Antarctic Peninsula (WAP) region. *Annals of Glaciology* **33**(1): 493-500.

Smith, R.C., K.S. Baker, W.R. Fraser, E.E. Hofmann, D.M. Karl, J.M. Klinck, L.B. Quetin, B.B. Prézelin, R.M. Ross, W.Z. Trivelpiece & M. Vernet 1995. The Palmer LTER: A long-term ecological research program at Palmer Station, Antarctica. *Oceanography* **8**(3): 77-86.

Smith, R.C., S.E. Stammerjohn & K.S. Baker. 1996. Surface air temperature variations in the western Antarctic Peninsula region. In: R. Ross, E. Hofmann, & L. Quetin (eds) *Foundations for ecological research west of the Antarctic Peninsula*. *Antarctic Research Series* **70**. American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC: 105-12.

Smith, R.C., K.S. Baker & S.E. Stammerjohn. 1998. Exploring sea ice indexes for polar ecosystem studies. *BioScience* **48**: 83-93.

Smith, R.C., D. Ainley, K.S. Baker, E. Domack, S. Emslie, W.R. Fraser, J. Kennett,

A. Leventer, E. Mosley-Thompson, S.E. Stammerjohn & M. Vernet. 1999. Marine Ecosystem Sensitivity to Climate Change. *BioScience* **49**(5): 393-404.

Smith, R.C., K.S. Baker, H.M. Dierssen, S.E. Stammerjohn, & M. Vernet 2001. Variability of primary production in an Antarctic marine ecosystem as estimated using a multi-scale sampling strategy. *American Zoologist* **41**(1): 40-56.

Smith, R.C., W.R. Fraser, S.E. Stammerjohn & M. Vernet 2003. Palmer Long-Term Ecological Research on the Antarctic marine ecosystem. In: E. Domack, A. Leventer, A. Burnett, R. Bindschadler, P. Convey & M. Kirby (eds) *Antarctic Peninsula climate variability: historical and paleoenvironmental perspectives. Antarctic Research Series* **79**. American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC: 131-44.

Stammerjohn, S.E. & Smith, R.C. 1996. Spatial and temporal variability of western Antarctic Peninsula sea ice coverage. In: R. Ross, E. Hofmann, & L. Quetin (eds) *Foundations for ecological research west of the Antarctic Peninsula*. *Antarctic Research Series* **70**. American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC: 81-104.

Thiele D., K. Asmus, S. Dolman, C.D. Falkenberg, D. Glasgow, P. Hodda, M. McDonald, E. Oleson, A. Širovic, A. Souter, S. Moore & J. Hildebrand 2004. International Whaling Commission – Southern Ocean GLOBEC/CCAMLR collaboration: Cruise Report 2003-2004. *Journal of Cetacean Research & Management* SC/56/E24.

Trivelpiece W.Z. & Fraser, W.R. 1996. The breeding biology and distribution of Adélie penguins: adaptations to environmental variability. In: R. Ross, E. Hofmann, & L. Quetin (eds) *Foundations for ecological research west of the Antarctic Peninsula*. *Antarctic Research Series* **70**. American Geophysical Union, Washington, DC: 273-85.

Personal communications

Fraser, W. 2003-19;
Patterson-Fraser, D. 2006-19;
Lee, R. 2007;
Lewis Smith, R. 2007, 2018.

Appendices

Appendix A

General Environmental Guidelines

The coastal marine environmental of the West Antarctic Peninsula is an important site for scientific research, with a history of detailed study going back more than sixty years. These guidelines suggest how you can help to protect the values of the area for future generations and ensure that your presence in the region will have as little impact as possible.

Before you travel to the Area

- Ensure that your planned activities follow the requirements of the Code of Conduct in the Management Plan, the Environmental Guidelines in Appendices A and B, the guidelines for Non-Governmental Visitors in Appendix C, and the specific guidelines that apply within management zones (Appendices D and E).
- Plan all activities such as scientific experiments, installation of equipment, travel, camps, fuel handling, and waste management, with the aim of minimizing environmental impacts.
- Ensure that all equipment, supplies and packaging are planned so as to minimize the amount of waste generated.
- To help prevent the unintended introduction of non-native species, thoroughly clean all equipment (including backpacks, carry-bags and tents), clothing and footwear before travel to the Area.

Travel and activities within the Area

- To reduce the risk of transfer of species from one part of the region to another, clean equipment, clothing and footwear before travel to another site.
- Do not collect specimens or any natural material of any kind, including fossils, except for approved scientific and educational purposes.
- Be aware of the site-specific guidelines in Appendices D and E, and avoid Restricted Zones unless access is required for a compelling reason that cannot be served elsewhere within the Area.
- Visit only approved islands at approved times.
- Cairns should not be built in the Area unless authorized by a National Program.
- Do not leave any travel equipment behind (e.g. ice screws, pitons).

Pedestrian travel

- Avoid walking on vegetated areas or disturbing mammals or birds to the maximum extent practicable, and keep to designated or established tracks where practicable. Some of the biological communities have taken several thousand years to develop.

Small boat travel

- Small open inflatable boats may operate during the summer within the Standard Boating Area (Map 3), which extends ~5 km (3 miles) from Palmer Station, with more limited trips (weather/season dependent) into the Extended Boating Area (Map 1).

- Rigid-Hulled-Inflatable-Bottom (RHIB) boats may operate within the Extended Boating Area, which extends up ~30 km (~20 miles) from Palmer Station (Maps 1 & 2).
- Small boats should operate no closer than 300 m from the glacier front along the Anvers Island coastline (Map 3) as a safety precaution against glacier calving.
- More extended boating on suitable vessels should be in accordance with procedures established by national programs.

Vehicle use

- Vehicle use should be restricted to ice surfaces unless specifically authorized otherwise.
- Vehicles should keep to established routes wherever these are present.
- Vehicles should always be parked over a secondary containment unit or a drip tray.

Helicopter use

- Helicopter use in Arthur Harbor is discouraged unless for essential purposes. If helicopters are used, follow the guidelines set out in the Code of Conduct of this plan (Section 7(i)).
- Care should be taken to ensure that helicopter sling loads are properly secured. Trained personnel should supervise these operations.

Field camps

- Use designated, former, or existing campsites to the maximum extent practicable before considering the establishment of new campsites.
- Minimize the footprint of all campsites.
- Campsites should be located as far as practicable from bird breeding or seal haul-out sites.
- The location of field camps should be recorded and submitted to the supporting National Program.

Use of materials and energy

- Everything taken into the Area should generally be removed to the maximum extent practicable.
- Ensure that equipment and supplies are properly secured at all times to avoid dispersal by wind.
- Activities that could result in the dispersal of foreign materials should be avoided (e.g. use of flares, spray paint) or should be conducted inside a building or tent (e.g. when cutting, sawing or unpacking materials).
- Explosives should not be used within the Area, unless approved by a National Program for use in support of essential scientific or management purposes.
- Where possible, ensure that nothing is left frozen into snow or ice that may ablate out and cause later contamination.
- Use energy systems and modes of travel within the Area that have the least environmental impact as far as practicable, and minimize the use of fossil fuels.

Fuel and chemicals

- Steps should be taken to prevent the accidental release of fuel or chemicals. For example, regular checks should be made to ensure all fuel valve positions are correctly set, and fuel line couplings are sealed and secure.
- Ensure that spill kits and secondary containment units appropriate to the volume of the substance are available when using chemicals or fuels. Those working with chemicals and fuels should be familiar with their use and with appropriate spill response procedures.
- Chemical and fuel containers should be securely positioned and sealed, particularly when stored outside.
- All fuel drums should be stored with secondary containment.
- Fuel cans with spouts should be used when refuelling generators, boat engines or vehicles.
- Engine oil changes should be carried out with adequate provision for containment and preferably inside.
- Generators and vehicles should be refuelled over drip trays with absorbent spill pads when outside.

Waste and spills

- Clean up any spills and / or releases to the maximum extent possible and report the location(s) including coordinates, to the appropriate National Program.

Appendix B

Environmental Guidelines for Scientific Research

Fuel and chemicals

- Take steps to prevent the accidental release of chemicals such as laboratory reagents and isotopes (stable or radioactive). When permitted to use radioisotopes, precisely follow all instructions provided.
- Ensure you have spill kits appropriate to the volume of fuel or chemicals you have and are familiar with their use.

Sampling and experimental sites

- All sampling equipment should be clean before being brought into the field.
- Once you have drilled a sampling hole in sea ice or dug a soil pit, keep it clean and make sure all your sampling equipment is securely tethered.
- Avoid leaving markers (e.g. flags) and other equipment for more than one season without marking them clearly with your event number and duration of your project.

Glaciers

- Minimize the use of liquid water (e.g. with hot water drills) which could contaminate the isotopic and chemical record within the glacier ice.
- Avoid the use of chemical-based fluids on the ice.
- If stakes or other markers are placed on a glacier, use the minimum number of stakes required to meet the needs of the research; where possible, label these with event number and project duration.

Appendix C

General guidelines for Non-Governmental Visitors

Palmer Station (United States) and the surrounding area receives a number of visitors associated with Non-Governmental expeditions each austral summer, most of whom are supported by private companies that provide transportation by ship, guides and other logistics. In addition, private yachts commonly visit. Guidelines have been established to improve coordination between the National Program(s) operating in the Area and Non-Governmental Visitors (NGVs) to Palmer Station and Arthur Harbor in particular. The purpose of this Appendix is to inform NGVs about on-site resources and constraints, visit expectations, and potential hazards. The guidelines are also provided for members of other National Antarctic Programs when undertaking recreational activities within the Area.

For the purpose of this management plan, 'Non-Governmental Visitors' includes all individuals or organizations that are not supported by a National Antarctic Program. All visitors to the Palmer Station shall comply with the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty and with their respective national policies governing activities in Antarctica.

- Visitor activities should be undertaken in a manner so as to minimize adverse impacts on the southwest Anvers Island and Palmer Basin ecosystem and/or on the scientific activities in the Area;
- Tour operators should provide visit schedules to National Programs operating in the Area in advance of their visits, which should be circulated to the Management Group as soon as they become available;
- In addition to the above, tour vessels and yachts planning to visit Palmer Station should make contact with the station at least 24 hours before arrival to confirm details of the visit;
- At Palmer Station, no more than 40 passengers should be ashore at any time;
- Small boat cruising should avoid any disturbance of birds and seals, and take account of the 50 m operation limit around Restricted Zones;
- Visitors should maintain a distance of 5 meters from birds or seals, to avoid causing them disturbance. Where practical, keep at least 15 meters away from Antarctic Fur seals;
- Visitors should avoid walking on any vegetation, including grasses, mosses and lichens;
- Visitors should not touch or disturb scientific equipment, research areas, or any other facilities or equipment;
- Visitors should not take any biological, geological or other souvenirs, or leave behind any litter;
- Within the group of islands in Arthur Harbor, tourist landings should be confined to the designated Visitor Zone on Torgersen Island (Appendix E).

Appendix D

Guidelines for Restricted Zones

Fifteen sites within the Area are designated Restricted Zones (Table D1).

Table D1: Restricted Zones within ASMA No.7.

Norsel Point / Amsler Island	Hermit Island
Humble Island	Laggard Island
Elephant Rocks	Limitrophe Island
Torgersen Island (SW half of island)	Stepping Stones
Bonaparte Point / Kristie Cove	Cormorant Island
Shortcut Island / Shortcut Point	Dream Island
Christine Island	Joubin Islands
	Rosenthal Islands

Brief site descriptions, guidelines for activities within each Restricted Zone, and maps showing the zone boundaries (Maps 5 – 19) are attached.

The boundaries of all of the Restricted Zones within Arthur Harbor, except Bonaparte Point, are defined as a 50 m marine buffer surrounding the island(s) within each zone (see Map 3 and the maps for each Restricted Zone). The purpose of this buffer is to restrict small boats from approaching shorelines where wildlife is often present, unless access is necessary for scientific or management purposes. A marine buffer is not defined for Bonaparte Point Restricted Zone so practical access to Hero Inlet can be maintained. Marine buffers have not been defined at the Joubin or Rosenthal Islands Restricted Zones in view of their remoteness from Palmer Station and the consequent negligible amount of small boat traffic.

<table>
<tr><td>Restricted Zone</td><td colspan="3" rowspan="4"></td></tr>
<tr><td>Norsel Point / Amsler Island</td></tr>
<tr><td>Location
Situated on Amsler Island ~2 km west of Palmer Station: 64° 05'W, 64° 45.6'S</td></tr>
<tr><td>Purpose
Protect sensitive breeding birds and fragile flora. Birds in the zone are the subject of long-term scientific study.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Description</td><td>Zone area: 41.4 ha</td><td colspan="2">Three species of breeding birds and extensive moss / lichen vegetation is present on Norsel Point Environmental Research & Assessment 11 Dec 2016.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">The Restricted Zone lies 2 km west of Palmer Station and ~200 m SW of Anvers Island. The zone occupies the western half of Amsler Island to Norsel Point and is 1.4 km E-W and approximately 0.4 km N-S. The zone includes adjacent islets and rocks.

<u>Birds: Confirmed breeding</u>: Southern Giant petrel (Macronectes giganteus), occupying more elevates slopes in the western extremity and central northern parts of the island. Kelp gull (Larus dominicanus) breed on the northern coast. South Polar skua (Stercorarius maccormicki) and Wilson’s Storm petrel (Oceanites oceanicus) breed across the island.

<u>Seals:</u> Southern Elephant seals (Mirounga leonina) haul out in the central valley and on low slopes on the promontory.

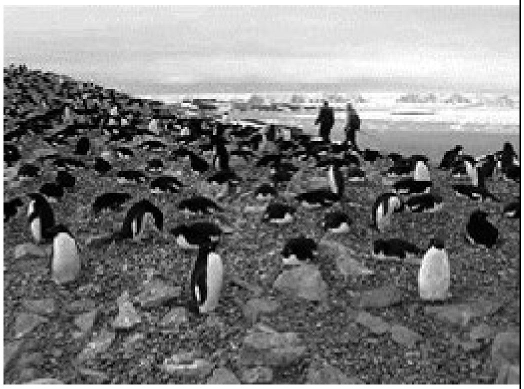
<u>Vegetation</u>: A variety of mosses, lichens, and Antarctic hair grass (Deschampsia antarctica) colonize the island, much of which has been subjected to damage by Antarctic Fur seals.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Boundaries</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">The boundary is a 50 m marine buffer around the western half of island and in the east the zone boundary extends N-S across Amsler Island near its highest point (52 m AMSL).</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Impacts</td></tr>
<tr><td>KNOWN IMPACTS</td><td colspan="3">None known.</td></tr>
<tr><td>POTENTIAL IMPACTS</td><td colspan="3">Disturbance to wildlife and trampling of vegetation. Disturbance to scientific research.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Access requirements</td></tr>
<tr><td>BOAT ACCESS</td><td colspan="3">Access the mooring on the southern coast, SW of the central valley.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SURFACE ACCESS</td><td colspan="3">Movement on land within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Special site guidance</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">• Extensive moss and lichen vegetation within the zone is easily damaged by trampling.
• Breeding Southern Giant petrels and Kelp gulls are particularly sensitive to human presence. Some nests are inconspicuous among rocks; observe carefully to avoid disturbance.
• Walk slowly and avoid sudden movements when carrying out research in this area.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Key references</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4"></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="4">Site Map – Map 5</td></tr>
</table>

Restricted Zone

Humble Island

Location
Situated ~1.6 km west of Palmer Station: 64° 05.2'W, 64° 45.9'S

Purpose
Protect sensitive breeding birds and fragile flora. Birds in the zone are the subject of long-term scientific study.



Scientists check Adélie penguins breeding on Humble Island. Environmental Research & Assessment 09 Dec 2016

Description | **Zone area:** 16.1 ha

The Restricted Zone lies 1.6 km west of Palmer Station and ~1 km SW of Anvers Island. The zone is 350 m by 650 m and includes adjacent islets and rocks.

Birds: Confirmed breeding: Adélie penguin (*Pygoscelis adeliae*) breed on the eastern part of the island, while Southern Giant petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*) breed on elevated slopes in the west. Kelp gulls (*Larus dominicanus*) breed along the NW coast. South Polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) breed across the island, while Brown skua (*Stercorarius loenbergi*) breed in the central part of the northern coast. The Adélie colony has suffered substantial decline over recent decades.

Seals: Southern Elephant seals (*Mirounga leonina*) haul out on low slopes in the central-eastern valley.

Vegetation: A variety of mosses and lichens are present, with localized well-developed moss banks.

Boundaries
The boundary is a 50 m marine buffer around the island and its adjacent islets and rocks.

Impacts

KNOWN IMPACTS	USGS survey mark (HUM1) embedded in rock at the eastern summit of the island.
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife and trampling of vegetation. Disturbance to scientific research.

Access requirements

BOAT ACCESS	Access the mooring on the eastern coast.
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement on land within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot.

Special site guidance

- Localized moss vegetation within the zone is easily damaged by trampling.
- Southern Giant petrels breeding on the higher slopes in the west and Kelp gulls are particularly sensitive to human presence. Some nests are inconspicuous among rocks; observe carefully to avoid disturbance.
- Walk slowly and avoid sudden movements when carrying out research in this area.

Key references

Site Map – Map 6

Restricted Zone	
Elephant Rocks	
Location Situated ~1 km west of Palmer Station: 64° 04.4'W, 64° 46.1'S	
Purpose Protect sensitive breeding birds and Southern Elephant seals haul out. Birds in the zone are the subject of long-term scientific study.	

Description	**Zone area:** 6.9 ha	*Elephant Rocks in middle distance, from Torgersen Island, with Amsler Island in background. Environmental Research & Assessment 09 Dec 2016*

The Restricted Zone lies 1 km west of Palmer Station and 1 km southwest of Anvers Island. The zone is 400 m E-W, and approximately 200 m N-S. The zone includes adjacent islets and rocks.

Birds: Confirmed breeding: Southern Giant petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*), Kelp gull (*Larus dominicanus*).

Seals: An important local haul-out site for Southern Elephant seal (*Mirounga leonina*).

Vegetation: Mosses and lichens present, although observations not recorded.

Boundaries

The boundary is a 50 m marine buffer around the main island and the adjacent islets and rocks.

Impacts

KNOWN IMPACTS	None known.
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife. Disturbance to scientific research.

Access requirements

BOAT ACCESS	Specific access points have not been defined.
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement on land within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot.

Special site guidance

- Take care not to disturb breeding birds or Southern Elephant seals.
- Breeding Southern Giant petrels and Kelp gulls are particularly sensitive to human presence. Some nests are inconspicuous among rocks; observe carefully to avoid disturbance.
- Walk slowly and avoid sudden movements when carrying out research in this area.

Key references

Site Map – Map 7

Restricted Zone

Torgersen Island (SW half)

Location
Situated ~1 km west of Palmer Station and ~0.3 km east of Litchfield Island:
64° 04.55'W, 64° 46.39'S

Purpose
A scientific reference area for research on potential impacts of tourism.

Description	**Zone area:** 9.2 ha	*Adélie penguins nesting in the Restricted Zone on Torgersen Island, looking towards Litchfield Island* *Polar Oceans Research Group 13 Jan 2018*

Torgersen Island is roughly circular and approximately 350m across. The island slopes upwards from its rocky shoreline to a summit of 17m, and is bisected by a stony ridge lying in an east-west direction.
Birds: Confirmed breeding: Adélie penguin (*Pygoscelis adeliae*), South Polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*), Brown skua (*Stercorarius lonnbergi*), Wilson's storm petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus*).
Birds: Common visitors: Chinstrap penguin (*Pygoscelis antarctica*), Gentoo penguin (*Pygoscelis papua*).
Seals: Leopard seal (*Hydrurga leptonyx*), Weddell seal (*Leptonychotes weddellii*), Southern Elephant seal (*Mirounga leonina*) and Antarctic Fur seal (*Arctocephalus gazella*) commonly haul out.
Vegetation: A variety of mosses, including *Polytrichum strictum*, *Chorisodontium aciphyllum* and *Sanionia uncinata*. Antarctic hair grass (*Deschampsia antarctica*) is also present.

Boundaries

The Restricted Zone occupies the southwestern half of the island and includes a 50 m buffer extending from the shore into the adjacent marine area.

Impacts

KNOWN IMPACTS	USGS survey mark (TOR1) embedded in rock at summit of island.
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife and trampling of vegetation. Disturbance to scientific research by tourists or other visitors inadvertently entering the Restricted Zone.

Access requirements

BOAT ACCESS	Access the designated landing site situated on the northern coast of the island: 64° 46.29' S, 64° 04.51'W. (Use same access as for Visitor Zone).
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot. Recreational visits are prohibited, and these should be directed to the Torgersen Island Visitor Zone in the NE of the island (see Appendix E)

Special site guidance

- An emergency cache is situated at 64° 04.528' W, 64° 46.304' S on slopes opposite the boat landing site.
- Skua and petrel nests are inconspicuous among rocks; observe carefully to avoid disturbance.
- Walk slowly and avoid sudden movements when carrying out research in this area.

Key references

Site Map – Map 8

Restricted Zone		
Bonaparte Point / Kristie Cove		
Location A promontory situated ~100 m south of Palmer Station: 64° 03'W, 64° 46.67'S		
Purpose Protect sensitive breeding birds and fragile flora. Used as a scientific reference area.		
Description	**Zone area:** 13.7 ha	*View towards Palmer Station from Bonaparte Point. Fragile lichen and moss vegetation are present, as well as sensitive breeding birds. Environmental Research & Assessment 08 Dec 2016*

The Restricted Zone lies due south and opposite Palmer Station in the central part of Bonaparte Point. The zone is 485 m E-W, and approximately 350 m N-S. Within the zone the peninsula ranges from ~50 – 150 m across. The zone includes the marine area of Kristie Cove and Diana Island.

Birds: Confirmed breeding: Southern Giant petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*), Kelp gull (*Larus dominicanus*), South Polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*), Wilson's Storm petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus*).

Seals: Southern Elephant seal (*Mirounga leonina*), Weddell seal (*Leptonychotes weddellii*), Leopard seal (*Hydrurga leptonyx*) and Antarctic Fur seal (*Arctocephalus gazella*) commonly haul out.

Vegetation: A variety of mosses and lichens grow on Bonaparte Point. Antarctic hair grass (*Deschampsia antarctica*) is also present.

Boundaries

The northern boundary of the Restricted Zone follows the coastline of Hero Inlet. The southern boundary encloses Kristie Cove and Diana Island and follows the coastline of a rocky promontory. The western and eastern boundaries are respectively defined as 64° 02.75'W and 64° 03.37'W.

Impacts

KNOWN IMPACTS	None known.
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife and trampling of vegetation. Disturbance to scientific research.

Access requirements

BOAT ACCESS	Access the mooring adjacent to the Restricted Zone on Bonaparte Point, south and opposite Palmer Station.
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot. If it is necessary to approach the mooring from within the Restricted Zone, walk as close to the coastline as possible to avoid South Polar skua nesting territories on the ridge crest.

Special site guidance

- Fragile foliose and fruticose lichens are prolific within the zone, which are easily damaged by trampling.
- Southern Giant petrels breeding the western half of the zone are particularly sensitive to human presence.
- Kelp gulls breed in the northwestern part of the zone and are sensitive to human presence.

• Some nests are inconspicuous among rocks; observe carefully to avoid disturbance. • Walk slowly and avoid sudden movements when carrying out research in this area.
Key references
Site Map – Map 9

Restricted Zone

Shortcut Island / Shortcut Point

South Polar skuas breed on Shortcut Island
Polar Oceans Research Group 13 Mar 2017

Location

Situated ~1 km southeast of Palmer Station: 64° 05.2'W, 64° 45.9'S

Purpose

Protect sensitive breeding birds and fragile flora. Birds in the zone are the subject of long-term scientific study.

Description | **Zone area:** 26.8 ha

The Restricted Zone lies 1 km southeast of Palmer Station and ~1 km SW of Anvers Island. The zone is 350 m by 650 m and includes adjacent islets and rocks.

Birds: Confirmed breeding: Southern Giant petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*) breed across both Shortcut Island and Shortcut Point. Kelp gulls (*Larus dominicanus*) breed on the northern coast of Shortcut Point. South Polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) breed across the area. Antarctic tern (*Sterna vittata*) breed on Shortcut Point.

Seals: Antarctic Fur seal (*Arctocephalus gazella*) haul out on both Shortcut and Shortcut Point.

Vegetation: A variety of mosses and lichens are present. Observations not recorded

Boundaries

The boundary is a 50 m marine buffer around the island and point, and the adjacent islets and rocks. The eastern boundary on Shortcut Point is the glacier margin.

Impacts

KNOWN IMPACTS	None known.
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife and trampling of vegetation. Disturbance to scientific research.

Access requirements

BOAT ACCESS	Access the mooring in a small cove on the northern coast of Shortcut Island. Specific small boat access points to Shortcut Point have not been defined. The narrow channel between Shortcut Point and Shortcut Island may be used by small boats for passage as and when necessary, when boats shall move slowly and quietly with no wake to minimize potential wildlife disturbance.
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement on land within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot. Access to Shortcut Point from the glacier is subject to local ice conditions and advice from Palmer Station.

Special site guidance

- Breeding Southern Giant petrels, Kelp gulls and Antarctic terns are particularly sensitive to human presence. Some nests are inconspicuous among rocks; observe carefully to avoid disturbance.
- Walk slowly and avoid sudden movements when carrying out research in this area.

Key references

Site Map – Map 10

Restricted Zone		
Christine Island		
Location Situated ~2.4 km southeast of Palmer Station: 64° 01.5'W, 64° 47.6'S		
Purpose Protect sensitive breeding birds. Birds in the zone are the subject of long-term scientific study.		
Description	**Zone area:** 30.9 ha	*Brown skuas are being studied on Christine Island Environmental Research & Assessment 09 Dec 2016*

The Restricted Zone lies 2.4 km southeast of Palmer Station and ~1.4 km south of Anvers Island. The zone is 400 m by 1100 m and includes adjacent islets and rocks.

<u>Birds: Confirmed breeding</u>: A small Adélie penguin (*Pygoscelis adeliae*) colony of approx. 10-12 pairs (2016/17). South Polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) breed across the island, and Brown skua (*Stercorarius lonnbergi*) breed at the eastern end of the island.

<u>Seals:</u> Antarctic Fur seal (*Arctocephalus gazella*) and Elephant seal (*Mirounga leonina*) haul out on beaches.

<u>Vegetation</u>: A variety of mosses and lichens are present, including the bright red crustose lichen *Xanthoria* sp. Observations not recorded.

Boundaries

The boundary is a 50 m marine buffer around the island, and includes adjacent islets and rocks.

Impacts

KNOWN IMPACTS	USGS survey mark (CHR1) embedded in rock at the eastern summit of the island (18 m).
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife and trampling of vegetation. Disturbance to scientific research.

Access requirements

BOAT ACCESS	Access the mooring in a small cove on the eastern coast of the island.
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement on land within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot. Access to Shortcut Point from the glacier is subject to local ice conditions and advice from Palmer Station.

Special site guidance

- Skua nests are inconspicuous among rocks; observe carefully to avoid disturbance.
- Walk slowly and avoid sudden movements when carrying out research in this area.

Key references

Site Map – Map 11

Restricted Zone

Hermit Island

View of Anvers Island from above boat landing cove on Hermit Island
Polar Oceans Research Group 24 Feb 2012

Location
Situated ~3 km southeast of Palmer Station: 64° 01.3'W, 64° 48.0'S

Purpose
Protect sensitive breeding birds. Birds in the zone are the subject of long-term scientific study.

Description	**Zone area:** 67.2 ha

The Restricted Zone lies 3 km southeast of Palmer Station and ~2 km south of Anvers Island, and is the largest of the zones in the Arthur Harbor area. The zone is 550 m by 1700 m and includes adjacent islets and rocks.

<u>Birds: Confirmed breeding</u>: Southern Giant petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*) breed on elevated east-facing slopes in the eastern part of the zone. Kelp gulls (*Larus dominicanus*) breed on the eastern coast of the main island, near the small boat landing site. South Polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) and Wilson's Storm petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus*) breed across the area.

<u>Seals:</u> Antarctic Fur seal (*Arctocephalus gazella*) haul out on beaches and lower vegetated slopes.

<u>Vegetation</u>: A variety of mosses and lichens are present. Observations not recorded.

Boundaries

The boundary is a 50 m marine buffer around the island, and includes adjacent islets and rocks.

Impacts

KNOWN IMPACTS	None known.
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife and trampling of vegetation. Disturbance to scientific research.

Access requirements

BOAT ACCESS	Access the mooring in a small cove at the southeastern end of the island.
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement on land within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot.

Special site guidance

- Breeding Southern Giant petrels and Kelp gulls are particularly sensitive to human presence. Some nests are inconspicuous among rocks; observe carefully to avoid disturbance.
- Walk slowly and avoid sudden movements when carrying out research in this area.

Key references

Site Map – Map 12

Restricted Zone

Laggard Island

Antarctic fur seals are common on Laggard Island late season
Polar Oceans Research Group 08 Mar 2019

Location
Situated ~4 km southeast of Palmer Station: 64° 01.3'W, 64° 48.0'S

Purpose
Protect sensitive breeding birds. Birds in the zone are the subject of long-term scientific study.

Description | **Zone area:** 37.8 ha

The Restricted Zone lies 4 km southeast of Palmer Station and ~3 km south of Anvers Island. The zone is 420 m by 1200 m and includes adjacent islets and rocks.

Birds: Confirmed breeding: Southern Giant petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*) breed on elevated slopes in the eastern part of the zone. Kelp gulls (*Larus dominicanus*) breed adjacent to them on the eastern coast of the main island. South Polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) breed across the area.

Seals: Antarctic Fur seal (*Arctocephalus gazella*) haul out on beaches and accessible slopes.

Vegetation: A variety of mosses and lichens are present. Observations not recorded.

Boundaries

The boundary is a 50 m marine buffer around the island, and includes adjacent islets and rocks.

Impacts

KNOWN IMPACTS	None known.
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife and trampling of vegetation. Disturbance to scientific research.

Access requirements

BOAT ACCESS	Access the mooring in at the northeastern end of the island, adjacent to Jacobs Island.
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement on land within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot.

Special site guidance

- Breeding Southern Giant petrels and Kelp gulls are particularly sensitive to human presence. Some nests are inconspicuous among rocks; observe carefully to avoid disturbance.
- Walk slowly and avoid sudden movements when carrying out research in this area.

Key references

Site Map – Map 13

Restricted Zone

Limitrophe Island

Nesting birds are inconspicuous among rocks on Limitrophe Island. Environmental Research & Assessment 09 Dec 2016

Location

Situated ~3 km southeast of Palmer Station: 64° 00.1'W, 64° 47.6'S

Purpose

Protect sensitive breeding birds. Birds in the zone are the subject of long-term scientific study.

Description | **Zone area:** 22.2 ha

The Restricted Zone lies 3 km southeast of Palmer Station and ~1.6 km south of Anvers Island. The zone is 300 m by 900 m and includes adjacent islets and rocks.

<u>Birds: Confirmed breeding</u>: Southern Giant petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*) breed on elevated slopes across the island. South Polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) and Wilson's Storm petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus*) breed across the island.

<u>Seals:</u> Antarctic Fur seal (*Arctocephalus gazella*) haul out on beaches and on accessible slopes. Weddell seal (*Leptonychotes weddellii*) often haul out on beaches and near the landing site.

<u>Vegetation</u>: A variety of mosses and lichens are present. Observations not recorded.

Boundaries

The boundary is a 50 m marine buffer around the island, and includes adjacent islets and rocks.

Impacts

KNOWN IMPACTS	None known.
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife and trampling of vegetation. Disturbance to scientific research.

Access requirements

BOAT ACCESS	Access the mooring at a rocky point on the northern coast of the island.
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement on land within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot.

Special site guidance

- Breeding Southern Giant petrels are particularly sensitive to human presence. Some nests are inconspicuous among rocks; observe carefully to avoid disturbance.
- Walk slowly and avoid sudden movements when carrying out research in this area.

Key references

Site Map – Map 14

Restricted Zone *Stepping Stones* **Location** Situated ~2.9 km east of Palmer Station: 63° 59.6'W, 64° 47.1'S **Purpose** Protect sensitive breeding birds. Birds in the zone are the subject of long-term scientific study.		
Description	**Zone area:** 10.8 ha	*Southern Giant petrels nest among vegetation severely damaged by Antarctic fur seals on Stepping Stones. Environmental Research & Assessment 09 Dec 2016*

The Restricted Zone lies 2.9 km southwest of Palmer Station and ~1.3 km south of Anvers Island. The zone is 450 m by 320 m and includes adjacent islets and rocks.

Birds: Confirmed breeding: Southern Giant petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*) and South Polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) breed across the Stepping Stones. Occasionally a single Kelp gull (*Larus dominicanus*) nest is present.

Seals: Antarctic Fur seal (*Arctocephalus gazella*) haul out across the islands.

Vegetation: Stepping Stones were until recently extremely rich in mosses and lichens, although Antarctic Fur seal activity has largely destroyed cryptogamic vegetation cover across the islands, which has been replaced by large areas of the alga *Prasiola*.

Boundaries

The boundary is a 50 m marine buffer around the island, and includes adjacent islets and rocks.

Impacts

KNOWN IMPACTS	The damage to vegetation by Antarctic Fur seals is substantial and extensive.
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife and to scientific research.

Access requirements

BOAT ACCESS	Access the mooring on the northern coast of the main island. Specific points of access are not defined for the other islands.
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement on land within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot.

Special site guidance

- Breeding Southern Giant petrels are particularly sensitive to human presence. Some nests are inconspicuous among rocks; observe carefully to avoid disturbance.
- Walk slowly and avoid sudden movements when carrying out research in this area.

Key references

Site Map – Map 15

Restricted Zone		
Cormorant Island		
Location Situated ~4.5 km east of Palmer Station: 63° 58'W, 64° 47.6'S		
Purpose Protect sensitive breeding birds and fragile flora. Used as a scientific reference area.		
Description	**Zone area:** 20 ha	*Extensive moss, lichen, grass and pearlwort vegetation is present, as are rich communities of invertebrates and five species of breeding birds. Environmental Research & Assessment 09 Dec 2016*

The Restricted Zone lies 4.5 km east Palmer Station and 850 m south of Anvers Island. The zone is 430 m E-W, and approximately 500 m N-S. The zone includes adjacent islets and rocks.

<u>Birds: Confirmed breeding</u>: Imperial shag (*Leucocarbo atriceps bransfieldensis*), Adélie penguin (*Pygoscelis adeliae*), Southern Giant petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*), South Polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*), Brown skua (*Stercorarius lonnbergi*), Wilson's Storm petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus*) and occasionally Antarctic tern (*Sterna vittata*). The Imperial shag and Adélie colonies have suffered substantial decline over recent decades.
<u>Seals:</u> Antarctic Fur seal (*Arctocephalus gazella*) haul out on beaches and accessible slopes.
<u>Vegetation</u>: A variety of mosses and lichens, Antarctic hair grass (*Deschampsia antarctica*) and the pearlwort *Colobanthus quitensis* are extensive on ledges and island slopes.

Boundaries

The boundary is a 50 m marine buffer around the island and its adjacent islets and rocks.

Impacts

KNOWN IMPACTS	None known.
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife and trampling of vegetation. Disturbance to scientific research.

Access requirements

BOAT ACCESS	Access to the mooring on the northern coast, near Imperial shag nests.
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot.

Special site guidance

- Extensive moss and pearlwort vegetation within the zone is easily damaged by trampling.
- Southern Giant petrels breeding on the higher slopes in the west are particularly sensitive to human presence. Some nests are inconspicuous among rocks; observe carefully to avoid disturbance.
- Walk slowly and avoid sudden movements when carrying out research on the islands where they are present.

Key references

Site Map – Map 16

Restricted Zone	
Dream Island	
Location 9.4 km NW of Palmer Station in Wylie Bay: 64° 13.6'W, 64° 43.5'S	
Purpose Protect sensitive breeding birds. Birds in the zone are the subject of long-term scientific study.	

Description	**Zone area:** 39.7 ha	*Vegetation on Dream Island with penguin colony in middle distance. Polar Oceans Research Group 08 Mar 2019*

The Restricted Zone lies 9.4 km northwest of Palmer Station and ~1 km south of Anvers Island. The zone is 1000 m by 600 m and includes adjacent islets and rocks.

<u>Birds: Confirmed breeding</u>: Adélie penguin (*Pygoscelis adeliae*), Chinstrap penguin (*Pygoscelis antarctica*) breed on the lower slopes in the central part of the island. Gentoo penguin (*Pygoscelis papua*) breed on a small, newly-exposed, island close west of Dream Island. Brown skua (*Stercorarius lonnbergi*) breed on north-facing slopes in the southern half of the island. Kelp gull (*Larus dominicanus*) breed on a promontory on the west side of the island. South Polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) breed across the island. Wilson's Storm petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus*) and occasionally Antarctic tern (*Sterna vittata*) also breed.

<u>Seals:</u> Antarctic Fur seal (*Arctocephalus gazella*) and Southern Elephant seal (*Mirounga leonina*) haul out on the isthmus linking the southern and northern parts of Dream Island and accessible slopes.

<u>Vegetation</u>: Observations not recorded.

Boundaries

The boundary is a 50 m marine buffer around the island, and includes adjacent islets and rocks.

Impacts

KNOWN IMPACTS	USGS survey mark (DRE1) embedded in rock at summit in the south of the island (35 m).
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife and to scientific research.

Access requirements

BOAT ACCESS	Specific points of access are not defined on Dream Island.
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement on land within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot.

Special site guidance

- Skua and Kelp gull nests are inconspicuous among rocks. Kelp gulls are particularly sensitive to human presence; observe carefully to avoid disturbance.
- Walk slowly and avoid sudden movements when carrying out research on the island.

Key references

Site Map – Map 17

Restricted Zone

Joubin Islands

Location

15 km west of Palmer Station:
64° 24.6'W, 64° 46.3'S

Purpose

Protect sensitive breeding birds. Birds in the zone are the subject of long-term scientific study.

Moss vegetation in the Joubin Islands.
Polar Oceans Research Group 21 Feb 2013

Description | **Zone area:** 4019 ha

The Restricted Zone lies ~15 km west of Palmer Station and ~6 km southwest of Anvers Island. The zone is 7.5 km by 6.5 km and includes over 100 small islands within the Joubin Islands group. Birds: Confirmed breeding: Adélie penguin (*Pygoscelis adeliae*) and Gentoo penguin (*Pygoscelis papua*) breed on at least four islands (8, 18, 20, 35). Chinstrap penguin (*P. antarctica*) breed on one island (8). Southern Giant petrel (*Macronectes giganteus*) breed on at least six islands (4, 11, 12, 14, 15 and 17), and probably more. Kelp gull (*Larus dominicanus*) breed on at least Island 18. South Polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) breed across the island group. Imperial shag (*Leucocarbo atriceps bransfieldensis*) breed on a steep north-facing slope on Island 31. Seals: Various seal species haul out on the Joubin Islands. Specific observations not reported.

Vegetation: Mosses and lichens are present across most islands. Antarctic hairgrass (*Deschampsia antarctica*) present on a number of islands, specifically at the southerly end of Island 17 and on NE slopes of Island 18. The largest of the Joubin Islands (assumed to be Hartshorne Island) has a peat bank composed solely of Chorisodontium (Fenton & Lewis Smith 1982). Antarctic Fur seals have since destroyed many sites of rich flora in the region, and the current status is not known. Few other observations on flora at the Joubin Islands have been reported.

Boundaries

The boundary encompasses the island group, and includes islets and rocks.

Impacts

KNOWN IMPACTS	Automatic Weather Station (AWS) located on the NE point of Howard Island at 64° 21.38' W, 64° 47.13' S, installed 25 Feb 2016. Marine debris commonly observed by scientists.
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife and to scientific research.

Access requirements

BOAT ACCESS	Specific points of access are not defined in the Joubin Islands.
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement on land within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot.

Special site guidance

- Breeding Southern Giant petrels are particularly sensitive to human presence. Nests are inconspicuous among rocks; observe carefully to avoid disturbance.
- Walk slowly and avoid sudden movements when carrying out research on the islands where they are present.

Key references

W. Fraser and D. Patterson-Fraser, pers. comms. 2018, 2019.
Fenton, J.H.C. & Lewis Smith, R.I. 1982. Distribution, composition and general characteristics of the moss banks of the maritime Antarctic. *British Antarctic Survey Bulletin* **51**: 215-36.

Site Map – Map 18

Restricted Zone

Rosenthal Islands

Location

22 km northwest of Palmer Station:
64° 15'W, 64° 36'S

Purpose

Protect sensitive breeding birds, marine and terrestrial ecology and pristine condition. Birds in the zone are the subject of long-term scientific study.

Description	**Zone area:** 2592 ha	*Adélie, Gentoo and Chinstrap penguins nest in the Rosenthal Islands. Environmental Research & Assessment 13 Dec 2016*

The Restricted Zone lies ~22 km northwest of Palmer Station on the west coast of Anvers Island, and is approx. 5.5 km across. The Rosenthal Islands group comprises approximately 80 small islands, the largest of which is Gerlache Island, which rises to ~100 m in height and is approximately 2.5 km by 1.2 km in size.

<u>Birds: Confirmed breeding at least 7 species</u>: Adélie penguin (*Pygoscelis adeliae*), Gentoo penguin (*Pygoscelis papua*) and Chinstrap penguin (*Pygoscelis antarctica*) breed in at least 4 locations (201, 202, 203, 205), with a resident total population of ~9000 pairs. Imperial shag (*Leucocarbo atriceps bransfieldensis*) breed at 201, 203 and 205, either amongst penguins or separate. Antarctic terns (*Sterna vittata*) breed at Island 205. Kelp gull (*Larus dominicanus*), and South Polar skua (*Stercorarius maccormicki*) breed across the island group. Wilson's Storm petrel (*Oceanites oceanicus*) and Snowy sheathbill (*Chionis alba*) present, the latter in association with penguin and shag colonies, and both may breed in the island group.
<u>Marine mammals:</u> Prolific wildlife breeding on islands and foraging in local embayment by marine mammals, including seals and whales. Elephant (*Mirounga leonina*), Weddell (*Leptonychotes weddellii*) and Antarctic Fur (*Arctocephalus gazella*) seals haul out on various islands. Specific observations not reported.
<u>Terrestrial ecology</u>: Mosses and lichens are present across a number of islands. A preliminary survey of invertebrates identified two species of Collembola (*Cryptopygus antarcticus* and *Friesea grisea*), four species of mite (*Alaskozetes antarcticus*, *Hydrogamasellus racovitzai*, *Tectopenthalodes villosus* and *Rhagidia* sp.), and the chironomid midge *Belgica antarctica.* Few observations on flora at the Rosenthal Islands have been reported.

Boundaries

The boundary encompasses the island group, and includes islets and rocks.

Impacts

KNOWN IMPACTS	None known. Plastic fishing float washed ashore was removed in Dec 2016.
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife and to scientific research.

Access requirements

BOAT ACCESS	Specific points of access are not defined in the Rosenthal Islands.
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement on land within the Restricted Zone shall be on foot.

Special site guidance

• The Rosenthal Islands have been rarely visited, and are considered to be in an almost pristine condition. Ensure impacts are kept to the absolute minimum.
Key references
W. Fraser and D. Patterson-Fraser, pers. comms. 2018, 2019. Gantz, J.D., Spacht, D.E. & Lee, R.E. 2018. A preliminary survey of the terrestrial arthropods of the Rosenthal Islands, Antarctica. *Polar Research* **37**(1). DOI: 10.1080/17518369.2018.1500266.
Site Map – Map 19

Appendix E

Guidelines for Visitor Zones

The following site within the Area is designated a Visitor Zone:

- Torgersen Island (northwestern half of island).

Visits to Torgersen Island should be undertaken in accordance with the general visitor guidelines outlined in Appendix A and the site-specific guidelines provided below. See also Antarctic Treaty Visitor Site Guide: Torgersen Island, available from the Antarctic Treaty Secretariat at https://www.ats.aq

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">Visitor Zone</td><td rowspan="4"></td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Torgersen Island</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Location
An island situated ~ 1 km west of Palmer Station and ~0.3 km east of Litchfield Island: 64° 4.55' W, 64° 46.39' S</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Purpose
To provide a site suitable for tourism and recreational visits. Torgersen Island is divided into a Visitor Zone and a Restricted Zone. The Visitor Zone is open for general access from 16 January – 30 September, whilst the Restricted Zone is for scientific research only year-round.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Description</td><td>Zone area: 5.7 ha</td><td>Torgersen Island small boat landing site. Emergency cache (yellow drums) at left. ASPA 113 Litchfield Island in distance. Environmental Research & Assessment 09 Dec 2016</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Torgersen Island is roughly circular and approximately 350 m across. The island slopes upwards from its rocky shoreline to a summit of 17 m, and is bisected by a stony ridge lying in an east-west direction.
Birds: Confirmed breeding: Adélie penguin (Pygoscelis adeliae), South Polar skua (Stercorarius maccormicki), Brown skua (Stercorarius lonnbergi), Wilson's storm petrels (Oceanites oceanicus).
Birds: Occasional visitors: Chinstrap penguins (Pygoscelis antarctica), Gentoo penguin (Pygoscelis papua).
Seals: Leopard (Hydrurga leptonyx), Weddell (Leptonychotes weddellii), Southern Elephant (Mirounga leonina) and Antarctic Fur (Arctocephalus gazella) seals commonly haul out.
Vegetation: A variety of mosses grow on Torgersen Island, including Polytrichum strictum, Chorisodontium aciphyllum and Sanionia uncinata. Antarctic hair grass (Deschampsia antarctica) is also present.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Boundaries</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">The Visitor Zone covers the northeastern half of the island.</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Impacts</td></tr>
</table>

KNOWN IMPACTS	Survey benchmark embedded in rock at summit.
POTENTIAL IMPACTS	Disturbance to wildlife and trampling of vegetation. Restricted Zone boundary should be observed to avoid accidental entry and disturbance to scientific research.
Access requirements	
BOAT ACCESS	Small boat landings shall be made at the designated landing site also used to access the Restricted Zone, situated on the northern coast of the island: 64º 46.29' S, 64º 04.51' W.
SURFACE ACCESS	Movement within the Visitor Zone shall be on foot.
Special site guidance	
• Visitor Zone Closed 01 October – 15 January. Open 16 January – 30 September. • Maximum of 40 visitors ashore at any time, exclusive of expedition guides and leaders. • Ships and small boat cruising should avoid disturbing seal and bird colonies and should take into account the 50 m operational limit around all Restricted Zones in the vicinity. • The Restricted Zone should not be entered except in an emergency to access the emergency cache (located at 64° 4.528' W, 64° 46.304' S) on rocks above and ~50 m from small boat landing site.	
Key references	
Antarctic Treaty Visitor Site Guide: Torgersen Island. Available from the Antarctic Treaty Secretariat at https://www.ats.aq	
Site Map – Map 8	

Appendix F

Plant, bird and mammal species recorded within the ASMA

Table F.1: Plant species recorded within the Area (extracted from British Antarctic Survey Plant Database (2007)).

Flowering plants	**Lichens**
Colobanthus quitensis *Deschampsia antarctica*	*Acarospora macrocyclos* *Amandinea petermannii* *Buellia anisomera, B. melanostola, B. perlata, B. russa* *Catillaria corymbosa* *Cetraria aculeata* *Cladonia carneola, C. deformis, C. fimbriata, C. galindezii, C. merochlorophaea var. novochloro, C. pleurota, C. pocillum, C. sarmentosa, C. squamosa* *Coelopogon epiphorellus* *Haematomma erythromma* *Himantormia lugubris* *Lecania brialmontii* *Lecanora polytropa, L. skottsbergii* *Leptogium puberulum* *Massalongia carnosa* *Mastodia tessellata* *Melanelia ushuaiensis* *Ochrolechia frigida* *Parmelia cunninghamii, P. saxatilis* *Physcia caesia, P. dubia* *Physconia muscigena* *Pseudephebe minuscula, P. pubescens* *Psoroma cinnamomeum, P. hypnorum* *Rhizoplaca aspidophora* *Rinodina turfacea* *Sphaerophorus globosus* *Stereocaulon alpinum* *Umbilicaria antarctica, U. decussata* *Usnea antarctica, U. aurantiaco-atra* *Xanthoria candelaria* *Xanthoria elegans*
Liverworts	
Barbilophozia hatcheri *Cephaloziella varians* *Lophozia excisa*	
Mosses	
Andreaea depressinervis, A. gainii var. gainii, A. regularis, *Bartramia patens* *Brachythecium austrosalebrosum* *Bryum archangelicum, B. argenteum, B. boreale, B. pseudotriquetrum* *Ceratodon purpureus* *Chorisodontium aciphyllum* *Dicranoweisia crispula, D. dryptodontoides* *Grimmia reflexidens* *Hymenoloma grimmiaceum* *Kiaeria pumila* *Platydictya jungermannioides* *Pohlia cruda, P. nutans* *Polytrichastrum alpinum* *Polytrichum juniperinum, P. piliferum, P. strictum* *Sanionia uncinata* *Sarconeurum glaciale* *Schistidium antarctici, S. urnulaceum* *Syntrichia magellanica* *Syntrichia princeps, S. sarconeurum* *Warnstorfia laculosa*	

Notes: The number of species recorded within the Area = 83

Table F.2: Bird and mammal species recorded within the Area (Parmelee et al. 1977; W. Fraser pers. comm. 2007).

Common name	Scientific name	Status within Area
Birds		
Chinstrap penguin	*Pygoscelis antarctica*	Confirmed breeder
Adélie penguin	*Pygoscelis adeliae*	Confirmed breeder
Gentoo penguin	*Pygoscelis papua*	Confirmed breeder
Southern Giant petrel	*Macronectes giganteus*	Confirmed breeder
Imperial shag	*Leucocarbo atriceps bransfieldensis*	Confirmed breeder
Kelp gull	*Larus dominicanus*	Confirmed breeder
Wilson's Storm petrel	*Oceanites oceanites*	Confirmed breeder
Snowy sheathbill	*Chionis alba*	Confirmed breeder
South Polar skua	*Stercorarius maccormicki*	Confirmed breeder
Brown skua	*Stercorarius loennbergi*	Confirmed breeder
Antarctic tern	*Sterna vittata*	Confirmed breeder
Southern fulmar	*Fulmarus glacialoides*	Frequent visitor
Antarctic petrel	*Thalassoica antarctica*	Frequent visitor
Cape petrel	*Daption capense*	Frequent visitor
Snow petrel	*Pagadroma nivea*	Frequent visitor
Emperor penguin	*Aptenodytes forsteri*	Occasional visitor
King penguin	*A. patagonicus*	Occasional visitor
Macaroni penguin	*Eudyptes chrysolophus*	Occasional visitor
Rockhopper penguin	*Eudyptes chrysocome*	Occasional visitor
Magellanic penguin	*Spheniscus magellanicus*	Occasional visitor
Black-browed albatross	*Diomedea melanophris*	Occasional visitor
Gray-headed albatross	*D. chrystosoma*	Occasional visitor
Northern giant petrel	*Macronectes halli*	Occasional visitor
Black-bellied storm petrel	*Fregetta tropica*	Occasional visitor
Red phalarope	*Phalaropus fulicarius*	Occasional visitor
South Georgia pintail	*Anas georgica*	Occasional visitor
Black-necked swan	*Cygnus melancoryphus*	Occasional visitor
Sandpiper	(sp. unknown)	Occasional visitor
Cattle egret	*Bubulcus ibis*	Occasional visitor
Arctic tern	*Sterna paradisaea*	Occasional visitor
Seals (no data on breeding or numbers available)		
Weddell seal	*Leptonychotes weddellii*	Frequent visitor
Southern Elephant seal	*Mirounga leonina*	Frequent visitor
Crabeater seal	*Lobodon carcinophagus*	Frequent visitor
Leopard seal	*Leptonyx hydrurga*	Frequent visitor
Antarctic fur seal	*Arctocephalus gazella*	Frequent visitor
Whales and dolphins (no data on breeding or numbers available)		
Fin whale	*Balaenoptera physalus*	Observed
Humpback whale	*Megaptera novaeangliae*	Observed
Sei whale	*Balaenoptera borealis*	Observed
Southern right whale	*Eubalaena australis*	Observed
Minke whale	*Balaenoptera bonaerensis*	Observed
Killer whale	*Orcinus orca*	Observed
Hourglass dolphin	*Lagenorhynchus cruciger*	Observed

Measure 12 (2019)

Revised List of Antarctic Historic Sites and Monuments: the Wreck of Sir Ernest Shackleton's vessel Endurance and C.A. Larsen Multiexpedition cairn

The Representatives,

Recalling the requirements of Article 8 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty to maintain a list of current Historic Sites and Monuments ("HSM") and that such sites shall not be damaged, removed or destroyed;

Recalling:

- Measure 9 (2016), which revised and updated the List of HSM, and subsequent Measures which have added further HSM to the List of HSM;
- Resolution 2 (2018), which recommended non-mandatory Guidelines for assessment and management of Heritage in Antarctica;

Recommend to their Governments the following Measure for approval in accordance with paragraph 2 of Article 8 of Annex V to the Protocol on Environmental Protection to the Antarctic Treaty:

That:

1. the following be added to the List of Historic Sites and Monuments:

"*Endurance*, Wreck of the vessel owned and used by Sir Ernest Shackleton during his 1914-15 Trans-Antarctic Expedition.

Wreck of the vessel Endurance, including all artefacts contained within or formerly contained within the ship, which may be lying on the seabed in or near the wreck within a 150m radius. This includes all fixtures and fittings associated with the ship, including ship's wheel, bell, etc. The designation also includes all items of personal possessions left on the ship by the ship's company at the time of its sinking."

Location: The exact location of the wreck is unknown as the ship floated in the pack ice for some distance.

Location records made by Frank Worsley, Shackleton's skipper and master navigator, give precise coordinates of the location of sinking of the ship but these have not been verified since 1915. We know the wreck is somewhere on the seabed in the Weddell Sea. It is proposed to designate the wreck and all artefacts contained within or formerly contained within the ship, which may be lying on the seabed in or near the wreck.

Original proposing Party: United Kingdom

Party undertaking management: United Kingdom

“C.A. Larsen Multiexpedition cairn.

The site consists of a rock cairn installed in 1892 by Norwegian Capt. Carl Anton Larsen during the first land-exploration of the area around the current location of Argentina's Marambio Station, where the first Antarctic fossil discoveries were made. The cairn used to have an attached wooden pole (2m high and 5cm diameter) of which nothing remains.”

Location: 64°14’13.06"S - 56°35’7.50"W, northeast of the Argentine Station Marambio, Antarctic Peninsula.

Original proposing Parties: Argentina/Norway/Sweden/United Kingdom.

Parties undertaking management: Argentina/Norway/Sweden/United Kingdom; and

2. the revised and updated List of Historic Sites and Monuments be annexed to this Measure.

Revised List of Historic Sites and Monuments

No	Description	Location	Designation/ Amendment
1.	Flag mast erected in December 1965 at the South Geographical Pole by the First Argentine Overland Polar Expedition. Original proposing Party: Argentina Party undertaking management: Argentina	90°S	Rec. VII-9
2.	Rock cairn and plaques at Syowa Station in memory of Shin Fukushima, a member of the 4th Japanese Antarctic Research Expedition, who died in October 1960 while performing official duties. The cairn was erected on 11 January 1961, by his colleagues. Some of his ashes repose in the cairn. Original proposing Party: Japan Party undertaking management: Japan	69°00'S, 39°35'E	Rec. VII-9
3.	Rock cairn and plaque on Proclamation Island, Enderby Land, erected in January 1930 by Sir Douglas Mawson. The cairn and plaque commemorate the landing on Proclamation Island of Sir Douglas Mawson with a party from the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929-31. Original proposing Party: Australia Party undertaking management: Australia	65°51'S, 53°41'E	Rec.VII-9
4.	Pole of Inaccessibility Station building. Station building to which a bust of V.I. Lenin is fixed, together with a plaque in memory of the conquest of the Pole of Inaccessibility by Soviet Antarctic explorers in 1958. As of 2007 the station building was covered by snow. The bust of Lenin is erected on the wooden stand mounted on the building roof at about 1.5 m high above the snow surface. Original proposing Party: Russia Party undertaking management: Russia	82°06'42"S, 55°01'57"E	Rec. VII-9 Measure 11(2012)
5.	Rock cairn and plaque at Cape Bruce, Mac. Robertson Land, erected in February 1931 by Sir Douglas Mawson. The cairn and plaque commemorate the landing on Cape Bruce of Sir Douglas Mawson with a party	67°25'S, 60°47'E	Rec. VII-9

	from the British, Australian and New Zealand Antarctic Research Expedition of 1929-31. Original proposing Party: Australia Party undertaking management: Australia		
6.	Rock cairn at Walkabout Rocks, Vestfold Hills, Princess Elizabeth Land, erected in 1939 by Sir Hubert Wilkins. The cairn houses a canister containing a record of his visit. Original proposing Party: Australia Party undertaking management: Australia	68°22'S, 78°33'E	Rec. VII-9
7.	Ivan Khmara's Stone. Stone with inscribed plaque erected at Buromsky island in memory of Ivan Khmara, driver-mechanic, the member of the 1st Complex Antarctic Expedition of the USSR (1st Soviet Antarctic Expedition) who perished on fast ice in the performance of duties on 21.01.1956. Initially the stone was erected at Mabus Point, Mirny observatory. In 1974, 19th SAE, the stone was moved to Buromsky Island because of construction activity Original proposing Party: Russia Party undertaking management: Russia	66°32’04”S, 92°59’57”E	Rec. VII-9 Measure 11(2012)
8.	Anatoly Shcheglov's Monument. Metal stele with plaque in memory of Anatoly Shcheglov, driver- mechanic who perished in the performance of duties, erected on sledge on the Mirny – Vostok route, at 2 km from Mirny station. Original proposing Party: Russia Party undertaking management: Russia	66º34’43”S, 92º58’23”E	Rec. VII-9 Measure 11(2012)
9.	Buromsky Island Cemetery. Cemetery on Buromsky Island, near Mirny Observatory in which are buried citizens of the USSR (Russian Federation), Czechoslovakia, GDR and Switzerland (members of the Soviet and Russian Antarctic Expeditions) who perished in the performance of their duties. Original proposing Party: Russia Party undertaking management: Russia	66°32’04”S, 93°00’E	Rec. VII-9 Measure 11(2012)
10.	Soviet Oasis Station Observatory. Magnetic observatory building at Dobrowolsky	66°16’30”S, 100°45’03”E	Rec. VII-9

	station (a part of the former Soviet station Oasis transferred to Poland) at Bunger Hills with a plaque in memory of the opening of Oasis station in 1956. Original proposing Party: Russia Party undertaking management: Russia		Measure 11(2012)
11.	Vostok Station Tractor. Heavy tractor ATT 11 at Vostok station which participated in the first traverse to the Earth Geomagnetic Pole, with plaque in memory of the opening of the Station in 1957. Original proposing Party: Russia Party undertaking management: Russia	78°27'48"S, 106°50'06"E	Rec. VII-9 Measure 11(2012)
12.	*Cross and plaque at Cape Denison, George V Land. (Removed from the Antarctic Treaty list of Historic Sites and Monuments subsumed with HSM 13 into HSM 77)*		
13.	*Hut at Cape Denison, George V Land, (Removed from the Antarctic Treaty list of Historic Sites and Monuments subsumed with HSM 12 into HSM 77)*		
14.	Site of ice cave at Inexpressible Island, Terra Nova Bay, constructed in March 1912 by Victor Campbell's Northern Party, British Antarctic Expedition, 1910-13. The party spent the winter of 1912 in this ice cave. A wooden sign, plaque and seal bones remain at the site. Original proposing Party: New Zealand Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/Italy/UK	74°54'S, 163°43'E	Rec. VII-9 Measure 5(1995)
15.	Hut at Cape Royds, Ross Island, built in February 1908 by the British Antarctic Expedition of 1907-09, led by Sir Ernest Shackleton. Restored in January 1961 by the Antarctic Division of New Zealand Department of Scientific and Industrial Research. Site incorporated within ASPA 157 Original proposing Parties: New Zealand/UK Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/UK	77°33'S, 166°10'E	Rec. VII-9
16.	Hut at Cape Evans, Ross Island, built in January 1911 by the British Antarctic Expedition of 1910- 1913, led by Captain Robert F. Scott. Restored in January 1961 by the Antarctic Division of New Zealand	77°38'S, 166°24'E	Rec. VII-9

	Department of Scientific and Industrial Research. Site incorporated within ASPA 155 Original proposing Parties: New Zealand /UK Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/UK		
17.	Cross on Wind Vane Hill, Cape Evans, Ross Island, erected by the Ross Sea Party, led by Captain Aeneas Mackintosh, of Sir Ernest Shackleton's Imperial Trans-Antarctic Expedition of 1914-1916, in memory of three members of the party who died in the vicinity in 1916. Site incorporated within ASPA 155 Original proposing Parties: New Zealand/UK Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/UK	77°38'S, 166°24'E	Rec. VII-9
18.	Hut at Hut Point, Ross Island, built in February 1902 by the British Antarctic Expedition of 1901-04, led by Captain Robert F. Scott. Partially restored in January 1964 by the New Zealand Antarctic Society, with assistance from the United States Government. Site incorporated within ASPA 158. Original proposing Parties: New Zealand/UK Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/UK	77°50'S, 166°37'E	Rec. VII-9
19.	Cross at Hut Point, Ross Island, erected in February 1904 by the British Antarctic Expedition of 1901- 04, in memory of George Vince, a member of the expedition, who died in the vicinity. Original proposing Parties: New Zealand/UK Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/UK	77°50'S, 166°37'E	Rec. VII-9
20.	Cross on Observation Hill, Ross Island, erected in January 1913 by the British Antarctic Expedition of 1910-13, in memory of Captain Robert F. Scott's party	77°51'S, 166°41'E	Rec. VII-9

	which perished on the return journey from the South Pole in March 1912. Original proposing Parties: New Zealand/UK Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/UK		
21.	Remains of stone hut at Cape Crozier, Ross Island, constructed in July 1911 by Edward Wilson's party of the British Antarctic Expedition (1910-13) during the winter journey to collect Emperor penguin eggs. Original proposing Party: New Zealand Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/UK	77°31'S, 169°22'E	Rec. VII-9
22.	Three huts and associated historic relics at Cape Adare. Two were built in February 1899 during the British Antarctic (Southern Cross) Expedition, 1898-1900, led by Carsten E. Borchgrevink. The third was built in February 1911 by Robert F. Scott's Northern Party, led by Victor L.A. Campbell. Scott's Northern Party hut has largely collapsed with only the porch standing in 2002. Site incorporated within ASPA 159. Original proposing Parties: New Zealand/UK Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/UK	71°18'S, 170°12'E	Rec. VII-9
23.	Grave at Cape Adare of Norwegian biologist Nicolai Hanson, a member of the British Antarctic (Southern Cross) Expedition, 1898-1900, led by Carsten E. Borchgrevink. A large boulder marks the head of the grave with the grave itself outlined in white quartz stones. A cross and plaque are attached to the boulder. Original proposing Parties: New Zealand/ UK Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/Norway	71°17'S, 170°13'E	Rec. VII-9
24.	Rock cairn, known as 'Amundsen's cairn', on Mount Betty, Queen Maud Range erected by Roald Amundsen on 6 January 1912, on his way back to Framheim from the South Pole.	85°11'S, 163°45'W	Rec. VII-9

	Original proposing Party: Norway Party undertaking management: Norway		
25.	*De-listed*		
26.	Abandoned installations of Argentine Station 'General San Martin' on Barry Island, Debenham Islands, Marguerite Bay, with cross, flag mast, and monolith built in 1951. Original proposing Party: Argentina Party undertaking management: Argentina	68°08'S, 67°08'W	Rec. VII-9
27.	Cairn with a replica of a lead plaque erected on Megalestris Hill, Petermann Island, in 1909 by the second French expedition led by Jean-Baptiste E. A. Charcot. The original plaque is in the reserves of the Museum National d'Histoire Naturelle (Paris). Original proposing Parties: Argentina/France/UK Parties undertaking management: France /UK	65°10'S, 64°09'W	Rec. VII-9
28.	Rock cairn at Port Charcot, Booth Island, with wooden pillar and plaque inscribed with the names of the first French expedition led by Jean-Baptiste E. A. Charcot which wintered here in 1904 aboard Le Français. Original proposing Party: Argentina Parties undertaking management: Argentina/France	65°03'S, 64°01'W	Rec. VII-9
29.	Lighthouse named 'Primero de Mayo' erected on Lambda Island, Melchior Islands, by Argentina in 1942. This was the first Argentine lighthouse in the Antarctic. Original proposing Party: Argentina Party undertaking management: Argentina	64°18'S, 62°59'W	Rec. VII-9
30.	Shelter at Paradise Harbour erected in 1950 near the Chilean Base 'Gabriel Gonzalez Videla' to honour Gabriel Gonzalez Videla, the first Head of State to visit the Antarctic. The shelter is a representative example of pre-IGY activity and constitutes an important national commemoration. Original proposing Party: Chile Party undertaking management: Chile	64°49'S, 62°51'W	Rec. VII-9

31.	*De-listed*		
32.	Concrete monolith erected in 1947, near Capitán Arturo Prat Base on Greenwich Island, South Shetland Islands. Point of reference for Chilean Antarctic hydrographic surveys. The monolith is representative of an important pre-IGY activity and is currently preserved and maintained by personnel from Prat Base. Original proposing Party: Chile Party undertaking management: Chile	62°28'S, 59°40'W	Rec. VII-9
33.	Shelter and cross with plaque near Capitán Arturo Prat Base (Chile), Greenwich Island, South Shetland Islands. Named in memory of Lieutenant-Commander González Pacheco, who died in 1960 while in charge of the station. The monument commemorates events related to a person whose role and the circumstances of his death have a symbolic value and the potential to educate people about significant human activities in Antarctica. Original proposing Party: Chile Party undertaking management: Chile	62°29'S, 59°40'W	Rec. VII-9
34.	Bust at Capitán Arturo Prat Base (Chile), Greenwich Island, South Shetland Islands, of the Chilean naval hero Arturo Prat, erected in 1947. The monument is representative of pre-IGY activities and has symbolic value in the context of Chilean presence in Antarctica. Original proposing Party: Chile Party undertaking management: Chile	62°50'S, 59°41'W	Rec. VII-9
35.	Wooden cross and statue of the Virgin of Carmen erected in 1947 near Capitán Arturo Prat Base (Chile), Greenwich Island, South Shetland Islands. The monument is representative of pre-IGY activities and has a particularly symbolic and architectural value. Original proposing Party: Chile Party undertaking management: Chile	62°29'S, 59°40'W	Rec. VII-9
36.	Replica of a metal plaque erected by Eduard Dallmann at Potter Cove, King George Island, to commemorate the visit of his German expedition on 1 March, 1874 on board Grönland.	62°14'S, 58°39'W	Rec. VII-9

	Original proposing Parties: Argentina/UK Parties undertaking management: Argentina/Germany		
37.	O'Higgins Historic Site located on Cape Legoupil, Antarctic Peninsula and comprising the following structures of historical value: • "Capitán General Bernardo O´Higgins Riquelme" Bust, erected in 1948 opposite the Base known under the same name. General O´Higgins was the first ruler of Chile to recognise the importance of Antarctica. It has a symbolic meaning in the history of Antarctic exploration since it was during his government that the vessel Dragon landed on the coast of the Antarctic Peninsula in 1820. This monument is also representative of pre-IGY activities in Antarctica. (63°19'14.3" S / 57°53'53.9"W) • Former "Capitán General Bernardo O'Higgins Riquelme" Antarctic Base, unveiled on 18th February, 1948 by the President of the Republic of Chile, Gabriel González Videla, the first President in the world to visit Antarctica. It is considered as a model pioneering base in the modern period of Antarctic exploration. (63°19' S, 57°54'W) • Plaque in memory of Lieutenants Oscar Inostroza Contreras and Sergio Ponce Torrealba, who perished in the Antarctic Continent for the sake of peace and science, on 12th August, 1957. (63°19'15.4" S / 57°53'52.9"W) Virgen del Carmen Grotto, located in the surroundings of the base, built approximately forty years ago. It has served as a place of spiritual withdrawal for the staff of the different Antarctic stations and expeditions. (63°19'15.9" S / 57°54'03.2"W). Original proposing Party: Chile Party undertaking management: Chile	63°19'S, 57°54'W	Rec. VII-9 Measure 11(2012)
38.	Wooden hut on Snow Hill Island built in February 1902 by the main party of the	64°22'S, 56°59'W	Rec. VII-9

	Swedish South Polar Expedition led by Otto Nordenskjöld. Original proposing Parties: Argentina/ UK Parties undertaking management: Argentina/Sweden		
39.	Stone hut at Hope Bay, Trinity Peninsula, built in January 1903 by a party of the Swedish South Polar Expedition. Original proposing Parties: Argentina/UK Parties undertaking management: Argentina/Sweden	63°24'S, 56°59' W	Rec. VII-9
40.	Bust of General San Martin, grotto with a statue of the Virgin of Lujan, and a flag mast at Base 'Esperanza', Hope Bay, erected by Argentina in 1955; together with a graveyard with stele in memory of members of Argentine expeditions who died in the area. Original proposing Party: Argentina Party undertaking management: Argentina	63°24'S, 56°59'W	Rec. VII-9
41.	Stone hut on Paulet Island built in February 1903 by survivors of the wrecked vessel *Antarctic* under Captain Carl A. Larsen, members of the Swedish South Polar Expedition led by Otto Nordenskjöld, together with a grave of a member of the expedition and the rock cairn built by the survivors of the wreck at the highest point of the island to draw the attention of rescue expeditions. Original proposing Parties: Argentina/UK Parties undertaking management: Argentina/Sweden/Norway	63°34'S, 55°45'W	Rec. VII-9 Measure 5 (1997)
42.	Area of Scotia Bay, Laurie Island, South Orkney Island, in which are found: stone hut built in 1903 by the Scottish Antarctic Expedition led by William S. Bruce; the Argentine meteorological hut and magnetic observatory, built in 1905 and known as Moneta House; and a graveyard with twelve graves, the earliest of which dates from 1903. Original proposing Party: Argentina Parties undertaking management: Argentina/UK	60°46'S, 44°40'W	Rec. VII-9

43.	Cross erected in 1955, at a distance of 1,300 metres north-east of the Argentine General Belgrano I Station (Argentina) and subsequently moved to Belgrano II Station (Argentina), Nunatak Bertrab, Confin Coast, Coats Land in 1979. Original proposing Party: Argentina Party undertaking management: Argentina	77°52'S, 34°37'W	Rec. VII-9
44.	Plaque erected at the temporary Indian station 'Dakshin Gangotri', Princess Astrid Kyst, Dronning Maud Land, listing the names of the First Indian Antarctic Expedition which landed nearby on 9 January 1982. Original proposing Party: India Party undertaking management: India	70°45'S, 11°38'E	Rec. XII-7
45.	Plaque on Brabant Island, on Metchnikoff Point, mounted at a height of 70 m on the crest of the moraine separating this point from the glacier and bearing the following inscription: This monument was built by François de Gerlache and other members of the Joint Services Expedition 1983-85 to commemorate the first landing on Brabant Island by the Belgian Antarctic Expedition, 1897-99: Adrien de Gerlache (Belgium) leader, Roald Amundsen (Norway), Henryk Arctowski (Poland), Frederick Cook (USA) and Emile Danco (Belgium) camped nearby from 30 January to 6 February 1898. Original proposing Party: Belgium Party undertaking management: Belgium	64°02'S, 62°34'W	Rec. XIII-16
46.	All the buildings and installations of Port-Martin base, Terre Adélie constructed in 1950 by the 3rd French expedition in Terre Adélie and partly destroyed by fire during the night of 23 to 24 January 1952. Original proposing Party: France Party undertaking management: France	66°49'S, 141°24'E	Rec. XIII-16
47.	Wooden building called 'Base Marret' on the Ile des Pétrels, Terre Adélie, where seven men under the command of Mario Marret overwintered in 1952 following the fire at Port Martin Base. Original proposing Party: France	66°40'S, 140°01'E	Rec. XIII-16

	Party undertaking management: France		
48.	Iron cross on the North-East headland of the Ile des Pétrels, Terre Adélie, dedicated as a memorial to André Prudhomme, head meteorologist in the 3rd International Geophysical Year expedition who disappeared during a blizzard on 7 January 1959. Original proposing Party: France Party undertaking management: France	66°40'S, 140°01'E	Rec. XIII-16
49.	The concrete pillar erected by the First Polish Antarctic Expedition at Dobrolowski Station on the Bunger Hill to measure acceleration due to gravity g = 982,439.4 mgal ±0.4 mgal in relation to Warsaw, according to the Potsdam system, in January 1959. Original proposing Party: Poland Party undertaking management: Poland	66°16'S, 100°45'E	Rec. XIII-16
50.	A brass plaque bearing the Polish Eagle, the national emblem of Poland, the dates 1975 and 1976, and the following text in Polish, English and Russian: In memory of the landing of members of the first Polish Antarctic marine research expedition on the vessels 'Profesor Siedlecki' and 'Tazar' in February 1976. This plaque, south-west of the Chilean and Soviet stations, is mounted on a cliff facing Maxwell Bay, Fildes Peninsula, King George Island. Original proposing Party: Poland Party undertaking management: Poland	62°12'S, 59°01'W	Rec. XIII-16
51.	The grave of Wlodzimierz Puchalski, surmounted by an iron cross, on a hill to the south of Arctowski station on King George Island. W. Puchalski was an artist and a producer of documentary nature films, who died on 19 January 1979 whilst working at the station. Original proposing Party: Poland Party undertaking management: Poland	62°13'S, 58°28'W	Rec. XIII-16
52.	Monolith erected to commemorate the establishment on 20 February 1985 by the Peoples Republic of China of the 'Great	62°13'S, 58°58'W	Rec. XIII-16

	Wall Station' on Fildes Peninsula, King George Island, in the South Shetland Islands. Engraved on the monolith is the following inscription in Chinese: 'Great Wall Station, First Chinese Antarctic Research Expedition, 20 February 1985'. Original proposing Party: China Party undertaking management: China		
53.	Bust of Captain Luis Alberto Pardo, monolith and plaques on Point Wild, Elephant Island, south Shetland Islands, celebrating the rescue of the survivors of the British ship Endurance by the Chilean Navy cutter Yelcho displaying the following words: "Here on August 30 th, 1916, the Chilean Navy cutter Yelcho commanded by Pilot Luis Pardo Villalón rescued the 22 men from the Shackleton Expedition who survived the wreck of the 'Endurance' living for four and one half months in this Island". The Monolith and the plaques have been placed on Elephant Island and their replicas on the Chilean bases Capitan Arturo Prat (62o30'S, 59 o49'W) and President Eduardo Frei (62o12'S, 62 o12'W). Bronze busts of the pilot Luis Pardo Villalon were placed on the three above-mentioned monoliths during the XXIVth Chilean Antarctic Scientific Expedition in 1987-88. Original proposing Party: Chile Party undertaking management: Chile	61°03'S, 54°50'W	Rec. XIV-8 Rec. XV-13
54.	Richard E. Byrd Historic Monument, McMurdo Station, Antarctica. Bronze bust on black marble, 5ft high x 2ft square, on wood platform, bearing inscriptions describing the polar achievements of Richard Evelyn Byrd. Erected at McMurdo Station in 1965. Original proposing Party: USA Party undertaking management: USA	77°51'S, 166°40'E	Rec. XV-12
55.	East Base, Antarctica, Stonington Island. Buildings and artefacts at East Base, Stonington Island and their immediate environs. These structures were erected and	68°11'S, 67°00'W	Rec. XIV-8

	used during two U.S. wintering expeditions: the Antarctic Service Expedition (1939-1941) and the Ronne Antarctic Research Expedition (1947-1948). The size of the historic area is approximately 1,000 metres in the north-south direction (from the beach to Northeast Glacier adjacent to Back Bay) and approximately 500 metres in the east-west direction. Original proposing Party: USA Party undertaking management: USA		
56.	Waterboat Point, Danco Coast, Antarctic Peninsula. The remains and immediate environs of the Waterboat Point hut. It was occupied by the UK two-man expedition of Thomas W. Bagshawe and Maxime C. Lester in 1921-22. Only the base of the boat, foundations of doorposts and an outline of the hut and extension still exist. It is situated close to the Chilean station 'President Gabriel Gonzáles Videla'. Original proposing Party: Chile/UK Parties undertaking management: Chile/UK	64°49'S, 62°51'W	Rec. XVI-11
57.	Commemorative plaque at 'Yankee Bay' (Yankee Harbour), MacFarlane Strait, Greenwich Island, South Shetland Islands. Near a Chilean refuge. Erected to the memory of Captain Andrew MacFarlane, who in 1820 explored the Antarctic Peninsula area in the brigantine Dragon. Original proposing Parties: Chile/UK Parties undertaking management: Chile/UK	62°32'S, 59°45'W	Rec. XVI-11
58.	*De-listed*		
59.	A cairn on Half Moon Beach, Cape Shirreff, Livingston Island, South Shetland Islands and a plaque on 'Cerro Gaviota' opposite San Telmo Islets commemorating the officers, soldiers and seamen aboard the Spanish vessel San Telmo, which sank in September 1819; possibly the first people to live and die in Antarctica. Site incorporated within ASPA 149. Original proposing Parties: Chile/Spain/Peru Parties undertaking management: Chile/Spain/Peru	62°28'S, 60°46'W	Rec. XVI-11

60.	"Wooden pole and cairn (I), and wooden plaque and cairn (II), both located at Penguins Bay, southern coast of Seymour Island (Marambio), James Ross Archipelago. The wooden pole and a cairn (I) were installed in 1902 during the Swedish South Polar Expedition led by Dr. Otto Nordenskjöld. This cairn used to have attached a 4 m high wooden pole – nowadays only 44 cm high –, guy-lines and a flag, and was installed to signal the location of a well stocked deposit, composed of few wooden boxes containing food supplies, notes and letters saved inside bottles. The deposit was to be used in case the Swedish South Polar Expedition was forced to retreat on its way to the south. The wooden plaque (II) was placed on 10 November 1903 by the crew of a rescue mission of the Argentinean Corvette Uruguay in the site where they met the members of the Swedish expedition led by Dr Otto Nordenskjöld. The text of the wooden plaque reads as follows: "10.XI.1903 Uruguay (Argentine Navy) in its journey to give assistance to the Swedish Antarctic expedition." In January 1990, a rock cairn (II) was erected by Argentina in memory of this event in the place where the plaque is located. Original proposing Parties: Argentina/Sweden Parties undertaking management: Argentina/Sweden	(I): 64º 17' 47.2" S, 56º 41' 30.7" W (II): 64 º 16' S, 56º 39' W	Rec. XVII-3 Measure 9 (2016)
61.	'Base A' at Port Lockroy, Goudier Island, off Wiencke Island, Antarctic Peninsula. Of historic importance as an Operation Tabarin base from 1944 and for scientific research, including the first measurements of the ionosphere, and the first recording of an atmospheric whistler, from Antarctica. Port Lockroy was a key monitoring site during the International Geophysical Year of 1957/58. Original Proposing Party: UK Party undertaking management: UK	64°49'S, 63°29'W	Measure 4 (1995)

62.	‘Base F (Wordie House)’ on Winter Island, Argentine Islands. Of historic importance as an example of an early British scientific base. Original proposing Party: UK Parties undertaking management: UK/Ukraine	65°15'S, 64°16'W	Measure 4 (1995
63.	‘Base Y’ on Horseshoe Island, Marguerite Bay, western Graham Land. Noteworthy as a relatively unaltered and completely equipped British scientific base of the late 1950s. ‘Blaiklock’, the refuge hut nearby, is considered an integral part of the base. Original proposing Party: UK Party undertaking management: UK	67°48'S, 67°18'W	Measure 4 (1995)
64.	‘Base E’ on Stonington Island, Marguerite Bay, western Graham Land. Of historical importance in the early period of exploration and later British Antarctic Survey (BAS) history of the 1960s and 1970s. Original proposing Party: UK Party undertaking management: UK	68°11'S, 67°00'W	Measure 4 (1995)
65.	Message post, Svend Foyn Island, Possession Islands. A pole with a box attached was placed on the island on 16 January 1895 during the whaling expedition of Henryk Bull and Captain Leonard Kristensen of the ship Antarctic. It was examined and found intact by the British Antarctic Expedition of 1898-1900 and then sighted from the beach by the USS Edisto in 1956 and USCGS Glacier in 1965. Original proposing Parties: New Zealand/Norway/UK Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/ Norway	71°56'S, 171°05'W	Measure 4 (1995)
66.	Prestrud’s Cairn, Scott Nunataks, Alexandra Mountains, Edward VII Peninsula. The small rock cairn was erected at the foot of the main bluff on the north side of the nunataks by Lieutenant K. Prestrud on 3 December 1911 during the Norwegian Antarctic Expedition of 1910-1912. Original proposing Parties: New Zealand/ Norway/ UK	77°11'S, 154°32'W	Measure 4 (1995)

	Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/Norway		
67.	Rock shelter, ‘Granite House’, Cape Geology, Granite Harbour. This shelter was constructed in 1911 for use as a field kitchen by Griffith Taylor’s second geological excursion during the British Antarctic Expedition of 1910-1913. It was enclosed on three sides with granite boulder walls and used a sledge to support a seal-skin roof. The stone walls of the shelter have partially collapsed. The shelter contains corroded remnants of tins, a seal skin and some cord. The sledge is now located 50 m seaward of the shelter and consists of a few scattered pieces of wood, straps and buckles. Site incorporated within ASPA 154. Original proposing Parties: New Zealand/Norway/UK Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/UK	77°00'S, 162°32'E	Measure 4 (1995)
68.	Site of depot at Hells Gate Moraine, Inexpressible Island, Terra Nova Bay.This emergency depot consisted of a sledge loaded with supplies and equipment which was placed on 25 January 1913 by the British Antarctic Expedition, 1910-1913. The sledge and supplies were removed in 1994 in order to stabilize their deteriorating condition. Original proposing Parties: New Zealand/Norway/UK Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/UK	74°52'S, 163°50'E	Measure 4 (1995)
69.	Message post at Cape Crozier, Ross Island, erected on 22 January 1902 by Captain Robert F. Scott's Discovery Expedition of 1901-04. It was to provide information for the expedition’s relief ships, and held a metal message cylinder, which has since been removed. Site incorporated within ASPA 124 Original proposing Parties: New Zealand/Norway/UK Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/UK	77°27'S, 169°16'E	Measure 4 (1995)

70.	Message post at Cape Wadworth, Coulman Island. A metal cylinder nailed to a red pole 8 m above sea level placed by Captain Robert F. Scott on 15 January 1902. He painted the rocks behind the post red and white to make it more conspicuous. Original proposing Parties: New Zealand/Norway/UK Parties undertaking management: New Zealand/UK	73°19'S, 169°47'E	Measure 4 (1995)
71.	Whalers Bay, Deception Island, South Shetland Islands. The site comprises all pre-1970 remains on the shore of Whalers Bay, including those from the early whaling period (1906-12) initiated by Captain Adolfus Andresen of the Sociedad Ballenera de Magallanes, Chile; the remains of the Norwegian Hektor Whaling Station established in 1912 and all artefacts associated with its operation until 1931; the site of a cemetery with 35 burials and a memorial to ten men lost at sea; and the remains from the period of British scientific and mapping activity (1944-1969). The site also acknowledges and commemorates the historic value of other events that occurred there, from which nothing remains. Original proposing Parties: Chile/ Norway Parties undertaking management: Chile/Norway/UK	62°59'S, 60°34'W	Measure 4 (1995)
72.	Mikkelsen Cairn, Tryne Islands, Vestfold Hills. A rock cairn and a wooden mast erected by the landing party led by Captain Klarius Mikkelsen of the Norwegian whaling ship Thorshavn and including Caroline Mikkelsen, Captain Mikkelsen's wife, the first woman to set foot on East Antarctica. The cairn was discovered by Australian National Antarctic Research Expedition field parties in 1957 and again in 1995. Original proposing Parties: Australia/Norway Parties undertaking management: Australia/Norway	68°22'S 78°24'E	Measure 2 (1996)
73.	Memorial Cross for the 1979 Mount Erebus crash victims, Lewis Bay, Ross Island. A cross of stainless steel which was erected in	77°25'S, 167°27'E	Measure 4 (1997)

	January 1987 on a rocky promontory three kilometers from the Mount Erebus crash site in memory of the 257 people of different nationalities who lost their lives when the aircraft in which they were travelling crashed into the lower slopes of Mount Erebus, Ross Island. The cross was erected as a mark of respect and in remembrance of those who died in the tragedy. Original proposing Party: New Zealand Party undertaking management: New Zealand		
74.	The un-named cove on the south-west coast of Elephant Island, including the foreshore and the intertidal area, in which the wreckage of a large wooden sailing vessel is located. Original proposing Party: UK Party undertaking management: UK	61°14'S, 55°22'W	Measure 2 (1998)
75.	The A Hut of Scott Base, being the only existing Trans Antarctic Expedition 1956/1957 building in Antarctica sited at Pram Point, Ross Island, Ross Sea Region, Antarctica. Original proposing Party: New Zealand Party undertaking management: New Zealand	77°51'S, 166°46'E	Measure 1 (2001)
76.	The ruins of the Base Pedro Aguirre Cerda Station, being a Chilean meteorological and volcanological center situated at Pendulum Cove, Deception Island, Antarctica, that was destroyed by volcanic eruptions in 1967 and 1969. Original proposing Party: Chile Party undertaking management: Chile	62°59'S, 60°40'W	Measure 2 (2001)
77.	Cape Denison, Commonwealth Bay, George V Land, including Boat Harbour and the historic artefacts contained within its waters. This Site is contained within ASMA No. 3, designated by Measure 1 (2004). Part of this site is also contained within ASPA No. 162, designated by Measure 2 (2004). Original proposing Party: Australia Party undertaking management: Australia	67°00'30"S, 142°39'40"	Measure 3 (2004)

78.	Memorial plaque at India Point, Humboldt Mountains, Wohlthat Massif, central Dronning Maud Land erected in memory of three scientists of the Geological Survey of India (GSI) and a communication technician from the Indian Navy - all members of the ninth Indian Expedition to Antarctica, who sacrificed their lives in this mountain camp in an accident on 8th January 1990. Original proposing Party: India Party undertaking management: India.	71°45'08"S, 11°12'30"E	Measure 3 (2004)
79.	Lillie Marleen Hut, Mt. Dockery, Everett Range, Northern Victoria Land. The hut was erected to support the work of the German Antarctic Northern Victoria Land Expedition (GANOVEX I) of 1979/1980. The hut, a bivouac container made of prefabricated fiberglass units insulated with polyurethane foam, was named after the Lillie Glacier and the song "Lillie Marleen". The hut is closely associated with the dramatic sinking of the expedition ship "Gotland II" during GANOVEX II in December 1981. Original proposing Party: Germany Party undertaking management: Germany	71°12'S, 164°31'E	Measure 5 (2005)
80.	Amundsen's Tent. The tent was erected at 90° by the Norwegian group of explorers led by Roald Amundsen on their arrival at the South Pole on 14 December 1911. The tent is currently buried underneath the snow and ice in the vicinity of the South Pole. Original proposing Party: Norway Party undertaking management: Norway	90°S	Measure 5 (2005)
81.	Rocher du Débarquement (Landing Rock), being a small island where Admiral Dumont D'Urville and his crew landed on 21 January 1840 when he discovered Terre Adélie. Original proposing Party: France Party undertaking management: France	66° 36.30'S, 140° 03.85'E	Measure 3 (2006)
82.	Monument to the Antarctic Treaty and Plaque. This Monument is located near the Frei, Bellingshausen and Escudero bases, Fildes Peninsula, King George Island. The plaque at the foot of the monument	62º 12' 01" S; 58º 57' 41" W	Measure 3 (2007) Measure 11 (2011)

	commemorates the signatories of the Antarctic Treaty. This Monument has 4 plaques in the official languages of the Antarctic Treaty. The plaques were installed in February 2011 and read as follows: “This historic monument, dedicated to the memory of the signatories of the Antarctic Treaty, Washington D.C., 1959, is also a reminder of the legacy of the First and Second International Polar Years (1882-1883 and 1932-1933) and of the International Geophysical Year (1957-1958) that preceded the Antarctic Treaty, and recalls the heritage of International Cooperation that led to the International Polar Year 2007-2008.” This monument was designed and built by the American Joseph W. Pearson, who offered it to Chile. It was unveiled in 1999, on the occasion of the 40th anniversary of the signature of the Antarctic Treaty.” Original proposing Party: Chile Party undertaking management: Chile		
83.	Base “W”, Detaille Island, Lallemande Fjord, Loubert Coast. Base “W” is situated on a narrow isthmus at the northern end of Detaille Island, Lallemand Fjord, Loubet Coast. The site consists of a hut and a range of associated structures and outbuildings including a small emergency storage building, bitch and pup pens, anemometer tower and two standard tubular steel radio masts (one to the south west of the main hut and the other to the east). Base “W” was established in 1956 as a British science base primarily for survey, geology and meteorology and to contribute to the IGY in 1957. As a relatively unaltered base from the late 1950s, Base “W” provides an important reminder of the science and living conditions that existed when the Antarctic Treaty was signed 50 years ago. Original proposing Party: United Kingdom Party undertaking management: United Kingdom	66°52’S; 66°48’W	Measure 14 (2009)
84.	Hut at Damoy Point, Dorian Bay, Wiencke Island, Palmer Archipelago. The site consists of a well- preserved hut and the scientific equipment and other artefacts	64° 49’S; 63°31’W	Measure 14 (2009)

	inside it. It is located at Damoy Point on Dorian Bay, Wiencke Island, Palmer Archipelago. The hut was erected in 1973 and used for a number of years as a British summer air facility and transit station for scientific personnel. It was last occupied in 1993. Original proposing Party: United Kingdom Party undertaking management: United Kingdom		
85.	Plaque Commemorating the PM-3A Nuclear Power Plant at McMurdo Station. The plaque is approximately 18 x 24 inches, made of bronze and secured to a large vertical rock at McMurdo Station, the former site of the PM-3A nuclear power reactor. It is approximately half way up the west side of Observation Hill. The plaque text details achievements of PM-3A, Antarctica’s first nuclear power plant. Original proposing Party: United States Party Undertaking Management: United States	77° 51’ S, 166° 41’ E	Measure 15 (2010)
86.	No.1 Building at Great Wall Station. The No.1 Building, built in 1985 with a total floor space of 175 square meters, is located at the centre of the Chinese Antarctic Great Wall Station which is situated in Fildes Peninsula, King George Island, South Shetlands, West Antarctica. The Building marked the commencement of China devoting to Antarctic research in the 1980s, and thus it is of great significance in commemorating China’s Antarctic expedition. Original proposing Party: China Party undertaking management: China	62°13′4″ S, 58°57′44″ W	Measure 12 (2011)
87.	Location of the first permanently occupied German Antarctic research station “Georg Forster” at the Schirmacher Oasis, Dronning Maud Land. The original site is situated by the Schirmacher Oasis and marked by a commemorative bronze plaque with the label in German language: Antarktisstation Georg Forster 70° 46’ 39’’ S 11° 51’ 03’’ E	70°46’39’’ S, 11°51’03’’ E Elevation: 141 meters above sea level	Measure 18 (2013)

	von 1976 bis 1996 The plaque is well preserved and affixed to a rock wall at the southern edge of the location. This Antarctic research station was opened on 21 April 1976 and closed down in 1993. The entire site has been completely cleaned up after the dismantling of the station was successfully terminated on 12 February 1996. The site is located about 1.5 km east of the current Russian Antarctic research station Novolazarevskaya. Original proposing Party: Germany Party undertaking management: Germany		
88.	Professor Kudryashov's Drilling Complex Building. The drilling complex building was constructed in the summer season of 1983-84. Under the leadership of Professor Boris Kudryashov, ancient mainland ice samples were obtained. Original proposing Party: Russian Federation Party undertaking management: Russian Federation	78º28' S, 106º 48' E Height above sea level 3488 m.	Measure 19 (2013)
89.	Terra Nova Expedition 1910-12, Upper "Summit Camp" used during survey of Mount Erebus in December 1912. Camp Site location includes part of a circle of rocks, which were likely used to weight the tent valences. The camp site was used by a science party on Captain Scott's Terra Nova Expedition, who undertook mapping and collected geological specimens on Mount Erebus in December 1912. Original proposing Parties: United Kingdom, New Zealand and United States Parties undertaking management: United Kingdom, New Zealand and United States	77º30.348' S, 167º10.223'E Circa 3,410m above sea level	Measure 20 (2013)
90.	Terra Nova Expedition 1910-12, Lower "Camp E" Site used during survey of Mount Erebus in December 1912. Camp Site location consists of a slightly elevated area of gravel and includes some aligned rocks, which may have been used to weight the tent valences. The camp site was used by a science party on Captain Scott's Terra Nova Expedition, who undertook mapping	77º 30.348' S, 167º 9.246'E Circa 3,410 m above sea level	Measure 21 (2013)

	and collected geological specimens on Mount Erebus in December 1912. Original proposing Parties: United Kingdom, New Zealand and United States Parties undertaking management: United Kingdom, New Zealand and United States		
91.	Lame Dog Hut at the Bulgarian base St. Kliment Ohridski, Livingston Island The Lame Dog Hut was erected in April 1988, and had been the main building of St. Kliment Ohridski base until 1998. It is presently the oldest preserved building on Livingston Island, used as radio shack and post office, and hosting a museum exhibition of associated artefacts from the early Bulgarian science and logistic operations in Antarctica Original proposing Party: Bulgaria Party undertaking management: Bulgaria	62 degrees 38' 29" S, 60 degrees 21' 53" W	Measure 19 (2015)
92.	Oversnow heavy tractor “Kharkovchanka” that was used in Antarctica from 1959 to 2010. The oversnow heavy tractor “Kharkovchanka” was designed and produced at the Malyshev Transport Machine-Building Plant in Kharkov specially for organizing inland sledge-tractor traverses in Antarctica. This was the first non-serial transport vehicle of the Soviet machine- building produced exclusively for operations in Antarctica. This tractor was not used outside Antarctica. Thus, the STT “Kharkovchanka” is a unique historical sample of engineering- technical developments made for exploration of Antarctica. Original proposing Party: the Russian Federation Party undertaking management: the Russian Federation	69°22′41,0″ S, 76°22′59,1″ E.	Measure 19 (2015)
93.	Endurance, Wreck of the vessel owned and used by Sir Ernest Shackleton during his 1914-15 Trans-Antarctic Expedition. Wreck of the vessel Endurance, including all artefacts contained within or formerly	The exact location of the wreck is unknown as the ship floated in the pack ice for some distance.	Measure 12 (2019)

	contained within the ship, which may be lying on the seabed in or near the wreck within a 150m radius. This includes all fixtures and fittings associated with the ship, including ship's wheel, bell, etc. The designation also includes all items of personal possessions left on the ship by the ship's company at the time of its sinking." Location records made by Frank Worsley, Shackleton's skipper and master navigator give precise coordinates of the location of sinking of the ship but these have not been verified since 1915, We know the wreck is somewhere on the seabed in the Weddell Sea. It is proposed to designate the wreck and all artefacts contained within or formerly contained within the ship, which may be lying on the seabed in or near the wreck. Original proposing Party: United Kingdom Party undertaking management: United Kingdom		
94.	C.A. Larsen Multiexpedition cairn. The site consists of a rock cairn installed in 1892 by Norwegian Capt. Carl Anton Larsen during the first land-exploration of the area around the current location of the Argentina's Marambio Station, where the first Antarctic fossil discoveries were made. The cairn used to have an attached wooden pole (2m high and 5cm diameter) of which nothing remains." Location: northeast of the Argentine Station Marambio, Antarctic Peninsula. Original proposing Party: Argentina, Norway, Sweden and United Kingdom. Party undertaking management: Argentina, Norway, Sweden and United Kingdom.	64°14'13.06"S, 56°35'7.50"W	Measure 12 (2019)

CCS0620708530
978-1-5286-1977-6